



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines


Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



HISTORY OF ENGLAND



COLLINS' HISTORICAL SERIES

THE ACADEMIC PROGRESSIVE READERS.

With Home Exercises on Each Lesson.

Edited by CANON RIDGWAY. Illustrated by DALZIEL BROTHERS,

Printed on Superfine Paper, and Bound in Extra Cloth.

	s.	d.
FIRST BOOK, 106 pp., Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	0	7
SECOND BOOK, 144 pp., Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	0	9
THIRD BOOK, 202 pp., Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	0
FOURTH BOOK, 240 pp., Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	3
FIFTH BOOK, 328 pp., Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
SIXTH BOOK, for Boys, 408 pp., Illustrated Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cl., . . .	2	0
SIXTH BOOK, for Girls, 416 pp., Illustrated, Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cl., . . .	2	0
SIXTH BOOK, for Mixed Classes, 552 pp., Illustrated, Post 8vo, cl., . . .	2	6

EXTRA READING BOOKS.

HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. By F. A. LAING. 256 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE—PROSE. From the 14th to the 19th Centuries. Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
EMINENT ENGLISH WRITERS. By W. LAWSON. Fcap. 8vo, cl., . . .	1	6
OUTLINES OF NATURAL HISTORY. By Dr. A. H. Dick. 192 pp., Illustrated, Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	0
OUTLINES OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY. By B. SIMPSON, Lon- don. 192 pp., Illustrated, Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	0
OUTLINES OF DOMESTIC ECONOMY FOR GIRLS. By J. HASSELL, London. 150 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	0
OUTLINES OF POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR SCHOOLS. By Dr. A. H. DICK. 160 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	0
ELOCUTION IN THEORY AND PRACTICE. By J. A. Mair. 256 pp., Extra Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
BIBLE QUESTIONS, with Notes, Illustrative Lessons, &c. By THOMAS MORRISON, M.A. Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	0

HISTORY.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND, for Junior Classes. By L. SCHMITZ, LL.D., London. Map and Illustrations, Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
HISTORY OF SCOTLAND, for Junior Classes, with Map and Illustrations, 192 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	0
HISTORY OF GREECE. By LEON. SCHMITZ, LL.D. Fcap. 8vo, cl., . . .	1	6
HISTORY OF ROME. By L. SCHMITZ, LL.D. Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
HISTORY OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE. By LEON. SCHMITZ, LL.D. Fcap. 8vo, cl., . . .	2	0
HISTORY OF THE ROMAN REPUBLIC. By LEON. SCHMITZ, LL.D. Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
LANDMARKS IN ENGLISH HISTORY. By C. S. DAWE. Fcap. 8vo, cloth, . . .	1	6
OLD TESTAMENT. By C. S. DAWE. Fcap. 8vo, cl., . . .	1	0
NEW TESTAMENT. By C. S. DAWE. Fcap. 8vo, cl., . . .	1	0

William Collins, Sons, & Co.'s Educational Works.

ARITHMETIC.

	s.	d.
FIRST LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC, 36 pp., 18mo,	0	3
SYSTEM OF PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC, 18mo, cloth,	0	9
THE STANDARD ARITHMETIC, Ex. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	1	0
COMPLETE SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, 192 pp., 12mo, cloth,	1	6
ARITHMETIC, for Higher and Middle Class Schools. By HENRY EVERS, LL.D. Post 8vo, cloth. <i>In the Press,</i>	2	6
LONG ADDITION EXERCISES, as Required by Candidates for Civil Service Examinations. By HENRY EVERS, LL.D.,	0	6
ELEMENTS OF ALGEBRA, 48 pp., 12mo, cloth,	0	6
ALGEBRA, to Quadratic Equations. By E. ATKINS. Post 8vo, cl.,	1	0
ELEMENTS AND PRACTICE OF ALGEBRA. By W. L. LONDON, M.A. 277 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	2	6
ALGEBRA, for Middle and Higher Class Schools. By DAVID MUNN. Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	2	6
EUCLID, Books I. to III. By E. ATKINS. Post 8vo, cloth,	1	0
EUCLID'S ELEMENTS, Books I. to VI., 12mo, cloth,	1	6
ELEMENTS OF EUCLID, adapted to Modern Methods of Geometry. By JAMES BRYCE, LL.D., and DAVID MUNN. Post 8vo, cl.,	2	6
MENSURATION, for Junior Classes. By Rev. H. LEWIS. Fcap. 8vo,	1	0
METRIC SYSTEM OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES, 48 pp., cloth,	0	3
BOOKKEEPING, Single and Double Entry. By DR. BRYCE. Post, 8vo, cloth,	1	6

MUSIC.

THE SINGING CLASS BOOK, with Exercises, By O. J. STIMPSON. 168 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	0	0
EXERCISES FROM SINGING CLASS BOOK, 152 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cl.,	0	9
SCHOOL SONGS, 24 Simple Melodies, Old Notation. Fcap. 8vo,	0	3
SCHOOL SONGS, 24 Simple Melodies, Sol-fa Notation, Fcap. 8vo,	0	3

CLASSICAL SERIES.

LATIN PRIMER, Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	0	9
LATIN RUDIMENTS, with Copious Exercises, 12mo, cloth,	2	0
LATIN DELECTUS, with Explanatory Notes and Vocabulary, 12mo,	2	0
CÆSAR, with Imitative Exercises, Notes, and Vocabulary, 12mo,	1	6
SELECTIONS FROM VIRGIL, with Notes, Questions, &c., 12mo,	2	0
RUDIMENTS OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE, 12mo, cloth,	2	0

MODERN LANGUAGES.

FRENCH, by M. CHARDENAL, B.A., High School, Glasgow.

FRENCH PRIMER, for Junior Classes, 96 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	0	9
FIRST FRENCH COURSE, for Beginners, Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	1	6
SECOND FRENCH COURSE, Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	2	0
FRENCH EXERCISES FOR ADVANCED PUPILS, Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	3	6

GERMAN, by DR. JULIUS MAIER, Cheltenham College.

GERMAN PRIMER, for Junior Classes, 96 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	1	0
FIRST GERMAN COURSE, Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	2	0
SECOND GERMAN COURSE, Fcap. 8vo, cloth. <i>In the Press.</i>	2	0



600081987\$



600081987\$



600081987\$



600081987\$

Vertical line of text on the left side of the page.

Collins' School Series.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND

FOR

JUNIOR CLASSES.

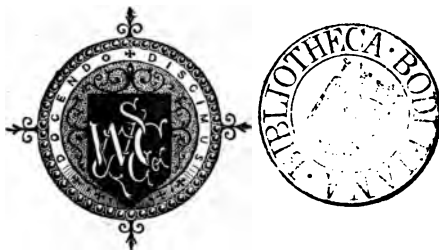
BY

LEONHARD SCHMITZ, LL.D.

NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION,

WITH QUESTIONS, AND NOTES ON CONTEMPORARY EVENTS.

With Historical Map and Illustrations.



LONDON AND GLASGOW:
WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY.

1877.

226. k. 391

PREFACE.

In drawing up these outlines of English History for junior classes, it has been my object to produce a readable and connected narrative of the most important events in the history of our country, without any political, theological, or ecclesiastical bias, which disfigures so many of our school histories, and renders them unsuitable to be put into the hands of the young. For this reason I have confined myself as much as possible to a simple statement of facts, from which the readers, if they are sufficiently thoughtful, or are guided by intelligent teachers, may draw their own lessons and inferences.

In order to make the work as complete as can be desired, sketches have been added on the progress of Literature, Art, Science, Commerce, Manufactures, etc., of the English nation, which, though brief, will give the young student some idea of the grand position that belongs to England in the history of human progress and civilization.

L. S.

LONDON, *March 1873.*

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE NEW EDITION.

The present edition has been carefully revised and in some parts enlarged; but the character of the book remains the same as in the first edition. The full tables of contents at the head of each chapter, the numerous questions at the end, and the chief contemporary events in the history of other countries mentioned at the foot of the pages, will, it is hoped, make the book still more useful and convenient both to teachers and scholars.

L. S.

LONDON, *January 1877.*

[Faint, illegible text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page]

15

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
BRITAIN UNDER THE ROMANS,	9
Questions,	19

CHAPTER II.

PERIOD OF THE HEPTARCHY, DOWN TO THE UNION OF ENGLAND UNDER EGBERT—A.D. 449 to 827,	20
Questions,	29

CHAPTER III.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF EGBERT TO THE NORMAN CONQUEST—A.D. 800 to 1066,	30
Egbert, 800—837.	Edgar, 959—975.
Ethelwulf, 837—858.	Edward the Martyr, 975—978.
Ethelbald, 858—860.	Ethelred II., 978—1016.
Ethelbert, 860—866.	Edmund Ironside, 1016.
Ethelred, 866—871.	Canute the Great, 1017—1035.
Alfred the Great, 871—901.	Harold, 1036—1040.
Edward the Elder, 901—925.	Hardicanute, 1040—1042.
Athelstane, 925—940.	Edward the Confessor, 1042— 1066.
Edmund, 940—946.	Harold II., 1066.
Edred, 946—955.	
Edwy, 955—959.	
Questions,	

CHAPTER IV.

THE EARLY NORMAN KINGS.

	PAGE
1. William the Conqueror, 1066—1087,	58
2. William II., Rufus, 1087—1100,	63
3. Henry I., 1100—1135,	65
4. Stephen, 1135—1154,	68
Questions,	71

CHAPTER V.

THE PLANTAGENET KINGS.

1. Henry II., 1154—1189,	74
2. Richard I., 1189—1199,	81
3. John, 1199-1216,	85
4. Henry III., 1216—1272,	91
5. Edward I., 1272—1307,	97
6. Edward II., 1307—1327,	103
7. Edward III., 1327—1377,	106
8. Richard II., 1377—1399,	113
Questions,	118

CHAPTER VI.

THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

1. Henry IV., 1399—1413,	123
2. Henry V., 1413—1422,	125
3. Henry VI., 1422—1461,	129
Questions,	136

CHAPTER VII.

THE HOUSE OF YORK.

1. Edward IV., 1461—1483,	137
2. Edward V., 1483—1483,	143
3. Richard III., 1483—1485,	144
Questions,	146

CHAPTER VIII.

THE HOUSE OF TUDOR.

	PAGE
1. Henry VII., 1485—1509,	148
2. Henry VIII., 1509—1547,	152
3. Edward VI., 1547—1553,	163
4. Mary, 1553—1558,	166
5. Elizabeth, 1558—1603,	170
Questions,	181

CHAPTER IX.

THE HOUSE OF STUART.

1. James I., 1603—1625,	186
2. Charles I., 1625—1649,	191
3. The Commonwealth, 1649—1660,	204
4. Charles II., 1660—1685,	212
5. James II., 1685—1688,	221
Questions,	227

CHAPTER X.

THE REVOLUTION DYNASTY.

1. William and Mary, 1689—1694,	232
2. William III., 1694—1702,	237
3. Anne, 1702—1714,	239
Questions,	244

CHAPTER XI.

THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK OR HANOVER.

1. George I., 1714—1727,	246
2. George II., 1727—1760,	250
3. George III., 1760—1820,	256
4. George IV., 1820—1830,	271

	PAGE
5. William IV., 1830—1837,	274
6. Victoria, 1837,	277
Questions,	284

SKETCHES OF THE PROGRESS IN LITERATURE, ART, ETC., .	290
GENERAL QUESTIONS,	326
TABLE OF MONARCHS OF ENGLAND,	331
,, AUTHORS OF ENGLAND,	333
,, DISTINGUISHED MEN,	335
INDEX,	337

HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

CHAPTER I.

BRITAIN UNDER THE ROMANS.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. The Phœnicians first visit Britain. | 9. Britain under the administration of Agricola. |
| 2. Cæsar's invasions of Britain. | 10. Britain a Roman province. |
| 3. The Kelts, the earliest known inhabitants of Britain. | 11. The Saxons, Picts, and Scots, and the final withdrawal of the Romans from the island. |
| 4. Their divisions and character. | 12. General view of the Britons under the Romans. |
| 5. Their religion and the Druids. | 13. Christianity adopted by many Britons. |
| 6. First successful invasion of Britain under the Emperor Claudius. | |
| 7. Continued advance of the Romans. | |
| 8. Insurrection of the Britons under Queen Boadicea, and her defeat. | |

1. ENGLAND, called by the Romans **Britannia** (whence Britain), was known to the Phœnicians and their colonies at Carthage in Africa, and Gades (Cadiz) in Spain, at a very remote period. They being the great traders of the ancient world, visited the south-western parts of the country, and especially the Scilly Islands, where they obtained tin, whence those islands were called the **Cassiterides**, that is, tin islands. But the Phœnicians, anxious to secure to themselves the monopoly of this trade, did not communicate their knowledge of the country to others, but rather invented stories calculated to deter them from sailing in the same direction.

2. Britain thus remained a country almost unknown to other nations, except by name, until the year B.C. 55, when **Julius Cæsar**, then engaged in the conquest of Gaul (France), found that his enemies were assisted in

CONTEMPORARY HISTORY AND HISTORICAL NOTES.—2. **Julius Cæsar**, born in B.C. 100, was consul in B.C. 69, and after the expiration of his year of office, undertook the administration of Gaul, the southern part of which (Provence) was already constituted as a Roman province. This brought him into collision with other parts of Gaul, and as these were supported by their kinsmen in Britain;

various ways by the inhabitants of Britain. In order to prevent this, and at the same time to gratify his own ambition to be the first to enter the unknown country, he invaded Britain with a large fleet, sailing from Port Itius, in Gaul, and landing somewhere about Deal. The Britons, who had been warned by their friends in Gaul, offered a brave resistance, killing and wounding many of their enemies with their darts and javelins. The Romans were unable to make any progress, and after a stay of twenty days, Cæsar, fearing the approach of winter, gave up the enterprise and returned to Gaul. But in the following year, B.C. 54, he resolved upon a second expedition. He landed at the same place as before with an army of five legions, and being now better prepared than the previous year, he defeated the Britons in several engagements, though they fought with undaunted valour under their chief, Cassivelaunus. Cæsar even advanced to the northern bank of the Thames, which he crossed somewhere about Coway



COWAY STAKES.

Stakes, took the fortified town of Cassivelaunus, and conquered a great part of the present counties of Middlesex and Essex. The Britons, feeling unable to continue

Cæsar was led also to attempt the subjugation of Britain. Cæsar's work on the conquest of Gaul bears the title *Commentarii de bello Gallico*.

Augustus, the first Roman emperor, reigned from B.C. 80 till A.D. 14. In his reign Jesus Christ was born in Judea.

Caligula, properly called Caius, Caligula being a mere nickname, was the third Roman emperor, and a nephew of his predecessor, Tiberius. He reigned from A.D. 37 to 41.

the conquest, sued for peace, which was granted to them; but they had to give hostages and promise to pay an annual tribute to their conquerors. Cæsar then quitted the country; but as he left no troops or garrisons behind, the promises of submission made by the Britons were disregarded; and as Cæsar was otherwise engaged in Gaul, the Britons were no further molested by the Romans. In the reigns of Augustus and Caligula fresh invasions of Britain were sometimes talked of, but no serious attempt was made for nearly a hundred years, and Cæsar's conquest produced no effect upon Britain.

3. Cæsar himself, in his Memoirs of his Gallic wars, has given us a full account of these two invasions, and from him we receive the first authentic information about the inhabitants of Britain at that time. They were a branch of the great Keltic family, which appears to have been among the first off-shoots of the Aryan race, that came into Europe from the East and occupied a very large portion of it, viz., Southern Germany, Switzerland, the north of Italy, a great part of France, parts of Spain, Belgium, and the British Islands. The Britons had probably immigrated to these islands from the coasts of Gaul and Belgium. Tacitus, a later historian, thinks that the south-western parts of Britain may have been occupied by settlers from Spain, while he is inclined to believe that the northern parts, especially Caledonia (Scotland), were inhabited by a people of Teutonic origin. But on the whole we may safely assume that the great body of the Britons were true Kelts. Those inhabiting Kent and the adjacent districts were more civilised than the rest, owing, no doubt, to their frequent intercourse with their continental kinsmen in Gaul and Belgium.

4. The Britons were divided into a great number of tribes, all of which may be classed under two heads—the **Gael**, in the north, and the **Gymri**, or **Cumri**, in the south

3. Tacitus, the historian, flourished towards the end of the first century after Christe. Among his works, the "Life of Agricola," whose daughter he married, is particularly interesting to the student of British history, as it gives us a detailed account of the admirable manner in which Agricola governed Britain. See No 9.

and south-west. Each tribe had its own chief, or king. The people generally lived in huts or caves, but the towns or places in which the chiefs resided consisted of wooden huts, and were surrounded and protected by trenches and trunks of trees. They used to dye their skins with a blue colour obtained from woad, that they might appear more formidable to their enemies. Their chiefs, as in all other Keltic countries, were fond of finery, especially gold bracelets and collars, and wore mantles woven in checks, like the plaids still used in Scotland. They knew little of agriculture, excepting those who occupied the south-eastern part of the country, and they lived principally on milk and meat, and the produce of the chase. Hides were exported in large quantities from Britain, one of their chief occupations being the breeding of cattle.

5. The religion of the Britons, called **Druidism**, was an exceedingly well-organised system, managed and superintended by Druids, their priests, who were the most powerful and most influential class of the nation. They possessed all the learning and knowledge of divine and human things. But as the art of writing was unknown to them, all knowledge was handed down to their disciples by oral tradition. This body of priests was headed by one chief Druid, chosen by themselves, and to him all owed obedience. The Druids alone knew and administered the laws, and those of Britain appear to have enjoyed a high reputation for learning, for many young men from Gaul and Belgium resorted to Britain for instruction in the mysteries of Druidism. As to the gods worshipped by them, little or nothing is known; they venerated the oak and mistletoe, but do not appear to have worshipped any images. They occasionally offered human sacrifices to their gods, but these mostly consisted of criminals who had been condemned to death. Many gigantic remains, such as those of **Stonehenge**, are supposed to have been parts of Druidical temples, though it is not certain whether they may not have been erected by a race of men who inhabited the country before the

arrival of the Britons. The island of **Mona** (Anglesea) was regarded as a sacred place, and a sort of holy centre of the Druidical religion.



STONEHENGE.

6. During the first hundred years after Cæsar's second expedition, Britain was visited only by peaceful traders from Gaul, who, no doubt, exercised a beneficial influence on the civilization of those islanders with whom they came in contact. Rumours of contemplated invasions occasionally reached them, but nothing serious was undertaken. The mad emperor **Caligula** did indeed march out with an army of twenty thousand men to the coast of Gaul, to conquer, as he said, the ocean and Britain; but when the army was ready for embarkation he ordered the soldiers to collect shells, which he called the spoils of the ocean, and returned to Rome, imagining himself a great conqueror. But three years later events occurred which led to its permanent occupation by the Romans. A treacherous Briton of the name of **Bericus**, who had been expelled by his countrymen, prevailed upon the Emperor **Claudius** to undertake the conquest of Britain. Accordingly, in A.D. 43, four legions, under the command of **Aulus Plautius**, proceeded to Britain. Claudius himself followed soon after, and his lieutenant having been successful in several engagements, the emperor entered **Camalodunum**

6. **Claudius**, the fourth Roman emperor, reigned from A.D. 41 to 54. It was in his reign that the Apostle Paul was tried at Jerusalem by Felix, a man of a low character, but supported by one of Claudius' favourites.

(Rochester) as conqueror, and then returned to Rome, assuming the title of **Britannicus**.

7. The war, however, was continued for nine years, during which **Vespasian** (afterwards emperor), accompanied by his son **Titus**, commanded one legion. He is said to have fought thirty battles, to have taken the Isle of Wight and twenty towns, and to have subdued several British tribes. **Caractacus**, the chief of the **Silures**, made every effort to repel the invaders, but was overcome by the superior military skill of his enemies: his wife and daughters fell into their hands, and his brothers surrendered. In this distress he sought the protection of **Cartismandua**, queen of the **Brigantes**; but hoping to derive more benefit from the friendship of the Romans, she violated the laws of hospitality and delivered him up to his enemies. In A.D. 51, **Caractacus** and his family were carried to Rome in triumph; but his fortitude and noble bearing filled the Romans with such admiration that they allowed him to return to his country.

8. The south-eastern part of Britain was now in the hands of the Romans, and was constituted as a Roman province, which was henceforth governed by imperial legates or lieutenants. Attempts were made to suppress the Druidical religion, and the cruelty, oppression, and extortion of the Roman officials knew no bounds. Such conduct could not but rouse the indignation of the natives. But it was especially the tribe of the **Iceni**, who occupied the country about Ipswich and Norwich, and under their patriotic queen **Boadicea**, widow of **Prasutacus**, fell upon the Romans, and destroyed their settlements at **Camalodunum** (Rochester), **Londinium** (London), and **Verulamium** (St. Alban's). She is said to have slain seventy thousand enemies, including the Britons who had treacherously joined them. The Roman legate, **Suetonius Paulinus**, however, soon after gained a desperate battle, in which eighty thousand Britons are said to have fallen.

8. These things happened in Britain while Nero was Roman emperor, from A.D. 54 to 68. Suetonius Paulinus was recalled soon after his victory, and succeeded by Petronius Turpilianus, whose administration was more peaceful.

Boadicea, in despair, then put an end to her own existence in the year 61 after Christ.

9. Britain was now compelled quietly to submit to its fate, and for a time the Roman governors found it necessary to treat their subjects with more consideration. But this very consideration made the Britons only bolder, and fresh insurrections would have broken out had not the Emperor **Vespasian**, A.D. 71, appointed the able **Petilius Cerialis** to the governorship of Britain, who succeeded in suppressing the spirit of revolt. Cerialis was accompanied by **Julius Agricola**, father-in-law of the historian Tacitus, who had the command of one legion, and in A.D. 77 succeeded Cerialis as governor. His administration lasted till A.D. 85, and during that period he not only subdued all England, but also the south of Scotland as far as the Clyde and Forth, between which rivers he constructed a rampart to protect England against the inroads of the wild and fierce **Caledonians**. These latter he defeated in a great battle at the foot of the Grampians. His administration was less disturbed by attempts at insurrection than that of any of his predecessors; for by the prudence, fairness, and justice of his measures, he conciliated the Britons and rendered the Roman dominion endurable. He did more than any other governor to Romanise the Britons by inducing them to adopt the Latin language and Latin institutions, and to abandon their own religion for that of the Romans. Agricola, moreover, was the first who, by sending a fleet round the north of Scotland, ascertained that Britain was an island, a fact which until then had only been conjectured.

10. When a country had once become a Roman province, it lost all political independence, it ceased to have a history of its own, and we rarely hear of any occurrence

9. After Nero, the last of the family of Augustus, Rome had three emperors during the years A.D. 68 and 69, and the disputes about the succession led to the election of Galba, Otho, and Vitellius—two of whom were killed and one committed suicide. At last **Vespasian**, who was besieging Jerusalem, was proclaimed emperor; and, being a man of great military ability and supported by a powerful party, he succeeded in establishing peace and order in the empire, and reigned from A.D. 69 to 79. In the second year of his reign, Jerusalem was taken and destroyed.

except fruitless attempts to recover its independence, or of attacks upon it by foreign enemies. Such also was the case with Britain. The wild Caledonian tribes of the north, fearing for their own safety, kept up an almost perpetual state of warfare with the Roman provincials. This induced the Emperor Hadrian in A.D. 121 to abandon the rampart constructed by Agricola, and to establish another farther south, between the Tyne and Solway, consisting of a high wall and ditch. Parts of this still exist, and are known under the name of the **Picts' Wall**. But during a later attack of the Caledonians, in the reign of Antoninus Pius, A.D. 144, the line of defence was again removed farther north, and a new rampart was erected along the line of that of Agricola so as to include the south of Scotland within the Roman province. The south of Scotland, however, remained at all times a precarious possession.

11. Another enemy from whom the Roman province of Britain had to suffer much were the **Saxons**, then dwelling in Holstein and about the mouth of the Elbe. They were bold sailors, and in their piratical expeditions during the third century plundered and devastated the coasts of the Roman possessions in Gaul and Britain. In some of the British coast districts they even succeeded in establishing themselves permanently. Britain was thus exposed to very great danger on two sides, and this danger was increased by the appearance in Caledonia of two fierce tribes, the **Picts** and **Scots**, the latter of whom had immigrated into Scotland from the north of Ireland. Hence during the last period of the Roman dominion in Britain we scarcely hear of anything else but of fearful devastations, caused on the one hand by the **Picts** and **Scots**, and on the other by the **Saxon pirates**. At first the

10. **Hadrian** reigned from A.D. 117 to 138, and visited nearly all the provinces of the empire to make himself acquainted with their wants and wishes.

Antoninus Pius reigned from A.D. 138 to 161; under him the empire enjoyed a period of uninterrupted peace.

11. During the period now following, Rome was involved in almost perpetual wars with Teutonic and other tribes advancing from the east into Gaul and Spain, and even threatening Italy itself. In these circumstances it was thought advisable to divide the empire into two parts, the eastern and western, the

Roman government did all it could to protect its distant province, but the attacks made by Teutonic and other barbarians on Italy itself rendered it impossible to afford effectual help to the distressed Britons. While Rome was thus powerless to assist, Britain was occasionally governed by Roman adventurers who set themselves up in the country as emperors, and were actually acknowledged by some, while others rejected them. The country thus fell into a state of utter confusion and anarchy, during which many of the Roman officials were driven out of the island. At last the Emperor Honorius, conscious of his inability to do anything in the matter, informed the Britons that henceforth they must rely upon their own strength. This happened in A.D. 409. Several appeals still continued to be made to Rome for assistance, but in vain. The Roman dominion in Britain thus came to an end, and the Britons might have recovered their freedom and independence had circumstances been more favourable. But as it was, they themselves had become unwarlike and effeminate during the Roman dominion, and were anything but united among themselves, while their enemies in the north and east became daily more daring and dangerous. In addition to all this, Europe was at that time suffering from famine and the plague.

12. If we now turn our attention to the effects produced by the Romans on their British provincials, we cannot deny that they had greatly promoted the progress of civilization, but along with it they had also introduced Roman luxury and vice, and it is probable that in most of the towns even the Latin language was spoken, as, independently of the Roman garrisons, they swarmed with Roman traders and adventurers. Traces of such luxury are still extant in the remains of baths and

latter being assigned to Honorius, A.D. 395; he reigned until A.D. 423. In his reign hordes of the northern barbarians invaded Italy, and even took and sacked Rome. It was in consequence of these disasters that the Roman government was obliged to withdraw its garrisons from Britain and abandon the island to its fate.

12. Among the roads made by the Romans, and of which traces still exist, may be mentioned the *Ermine Street*, leading from London to Lincoln, and the *Watling Street*, from London in a north-western direction.

splendid dwelling-houses. Roads also were made through various parts of the country, some of which can still be traced. Most of the towns which sprang up during the Roman dominion were either colonies, as, for example, Lincoln, or arose out of Roman stationary camps, as is the case with Chester, and all those places whose names end in *caster*, *chester*, or *cester*, which are corruptions of the Latin word *castra*, signifying a camp. Agriculture also and commerce had made considerable progress. But with all this the natives, when forsaken by the Romans, were in a helpless condition, because, as provincials, they had not been allowed the use of arms. The Druidical religion had begun to die out as early as the time of Agricola, and in its place had been introduced the worship of the Roman gods, to whom temples, shrines, and statues were erected in the towns.

13. At the same time Christianity had found many adherents among the Britons as well as among the Romans. It had probably been introduced by missionaries from Asia Minor, who reached Britain through Gaul, as must be inferred from certain differences in the observances and rites from those of the Roman Church. The diffusion of Christianity among the Britons, however, was looked upon with no good feelings by their rulers, and during the persecutions of the Christians under Diocletian, in A.D. 303, terrible scenes were enacted in Britain as elsewhere: the martyrdom of Saint Albanus, of Verulam, belongs to that period. Under Constantius, the successor of Diocletian, the Britons were again allowed to profess the Christian faith, and in the reign of Constantine,

13. Christianity had made considerable progress in the Roman empire as early as the days of Nero, who in A.D. 64, when the greater part of the city was destroyed by a great conflagration, charged the Christians with having caused it, and punished them with cruel tortures. Most absurd notions were spread about their faith and worship, in consequence of which even the best of the emperors treated them with undeserved severity. At last, in A.D. 303, Diocletian commenced a most fearful persecution of the Christians throughout the empire, imagining that thereby he might extinguish the new faith. But not long afterwards, in A.D. 313, the Emperor Constantine (from A.D. 306 to 337) issued an edict in favour of the Christians, and in A.D. 325 the Council of Nicaea defined the Christian orthodoxy. From that time Christianity became the established religion of the empire. When and by whom Christianity was introduced among the Britons is not known.

A.D. 314, British bishops attended the first Council of Arles. After this time British and Roman converts lived in peaceful harmony, so far as their religion was concerned. In consequence of this agriculture and the useful arts made such progress that Britain, through its fertility, was regarded as the granary of the northern provinces of the Roman empire, and British workmen and artisans were often employed in foreign countries to restore buildings which had been destroyed by invading hordes of barbarians. But all this prosperity came to an end by the withdrawal of the Romans from Britain.

QUESTIONS.

1. To what people was Britain first known? and what did they visit it for?
2. In what year did the Romans first invade Britain? What induced Caesar to venture on the undertaking?
3. What were the results of Caesar's invasions?
4. To whom are we indebted for the first authentic account of Britain and its inhabitants?
5. To what great family of nations do the Britons belong? and in what countries of Europe had they settled?
6. Which of the British tribes were the most civilised? and why?
7. Into what two great classes may the Britons be divided? and what parts did they inhabit respectively?
8. How did the Britons live? what did they clothe themselves with? and on what did they principally subsist?
9. What was the religion of the Britons? and who formed the most learned and influential class among them?
10. Where was the sacred centre of the Druidical religion?
11. What Roman emperor first succeeded in establishing a Roman province in Britain? and who had tempted him to undertake the conquest?
12. Say what you know of the brave Caractacus, of Boadicea, and Cartimandua.
13. How did the Romans treat the Britons?
14. Which Roman governor completed the conquest of south Britain? What part remained unconquered?
15. What means were adopted to check the incursions of the northern tribes?
16. What foreign tribes troubled the Roman province of Britain?
17. In what condition was Britain when the Romans withdrew from it? and why was it so?
18. What traces are there still showing that the Romans were once the rulers in the country?
19. What became of the Druidical religion? and by what other forms of worship was it supplanted?
20. How early was Christianity established in Britain? and by whom had it probably been introduced?

CHAPTER II.

PERIOD OF THE HEPTARCHY.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Helplessness of the Britons.</p> <p>2. They seek the assistance of their Teutonic enemies against the Picts and Scots.</p> <p>3. But their supporters in the end turn against them and make themselves masters of the greater part of England.</p> <p>4. The Heptarchy, or the establishment of seven small kingdoms in the parts of Britain conquered by the different Teutonic tribes.</p> <p>5. Struggles between the Britons and Teutons.</p> <p>6. The religion and institutions of the Teutons.</p> <p>7. The Angles, the most gifted of the conquering tribes.</p> | <p>8. Introduction of Christianity among the conquering race.</p> <p>9. First Christian centre at Canterbury.</p> <p>10. Extension of Christianity—Traces of the old Paganism still existing.</p> <p>11. Political institutions of the Heptarchy, and final union of the several kingdoms into one.</p> <p>12. Divisions of the land and the people.</p> <p>13. The Witenagemot and the powers of the king.</p> <p>14. Local governments, and new codes of law.</p> <p>15. Progress made by the Teutonic conquerors in civilization.</p> |
|---|--|

1. AFTER the departure of the Roman legions, the northern portion of Britain was helplessly exposed to the ravages of the Picts and Scots, while the southern and eastern coasts were now, more than ever, infested by pirates who invaded the island no longer for the sole purpose of booty and plunder; many established themselves permanently in the country, and built strongholds in which they collected their booty, and from which they made inroads into the interior. In this manner a warlike German population was gradually formed along the eastern coast, consisting of Saxons, Frisians, and Angles. In these circumstances the valour and patriotism of individual British chiefs was of little avail, especially as they did not heartily co-operate together, and were often engaged in bloody feuds among themselves.

2. Vortigern, one of them who had raised himself above the rest by his bravery and prudence, advised his countrymen to employ one set of their enemies against

1, 2, 3. While these things were going on in Britain, the Roman empire was fast hurrying towards its dissolution. Although it had been divided into two parts with two capitals, Rome and Constantinople, the western half was unable to resist the attacks of the Teutonic invaders, and in A.D. 476, Romulus Augustulus, the last Roman emperor, withdrew into private life, and Italy, Gaul, and Spain were occupied by Teutonic tribes, Gaul being conquered by Burgundians, Franks, and others, while Spain had been overrun first by the Vandals

the other, and to invite Saxon adventurers to assist them against the Picts and Scots. These Saxons were to receive assignments of land for their services, and accordingly, in A.D. 449, Hengist and Horsa are said to have come across the sea with a number of followers, and the Isle of Thanet, near the mouth of the Thames, was ceded to them as the district in which they might establish themselves. The Britons now made the sad experience which many other nations have made, viz., that a nation which cannot defend itself, and relies on the protection of others, becomes in the end the prey of its protectors. The success which these first adventurers met with soon attracted other swarms of Saxons, Angles, Jutes, and Frisians, who demanded to be employed and rewarded like their predecessors. As Vortigern was unable to comply with their request, they commenced war upon their own account against the Britons themselves. These wars, protracted for nearly one hundred and fifty years, gradually drove the Britons out of their own country, while the losses sustained by the German invaders were constantly repaired by new comers from the eastern coast of the German Ocean.

3. In the southern and eastern parts the British tribes were gradually almost extirpated. Wherever the invaders succeeded in establishing themselves, the native population was for the most part annihilated or reduced to slavery, and all the property was seized by the conquerors. During that disastrous period many of the Britons fled

and afterwards by the Visigoths. The Ostrogoths and afterwards the Lombards established themselves in Italy. The Eastern or Greek empire maintained its independence until, in 1453, it was conquered by the Turks. The whole of south-western Europe, including Britain, had thus fallen into the hands of Teutonic conquerors, who were no doubt pushed on to these enterprises by the advance of other tribes from the east.

2. The Saxons, Frisians, and Angles, were Teutonic tribes from the north-western parts of Germany, and the language they spoke accordingly was Low-German. This language was, of course, not understood by the Britons, nor did the Germans understand the Britons, whom they called *Welsh*, a name by which the Teutonic nations designated also the Latin speaking population; its meaning is "unintelligible."

3. During the time of the protracted wars between the Germans and Britons in Britain, other German tribes founded independent kingdoms in France, Italy, and Spain. In 486, Clovis, a Frankish chief, conquered the last remnants of the Romans in Gaul, and founded the Frankish monarchy; and in 489 the Gothic king Theodoric made himself king of Italy, where in 569 the Lombards succeeded in establishing themselves.

to Gaul, where they gave their name to the province of **Lower Brittany**. The horrors of this internecine war were increased by the difference of the religion of the Britons and that of their German invaders, for the latter, being pagans, aimed as much at the extirpation of Christianity as at the destruction of the Keltic population.

4. During these wars those Britons who survived the sword sought and found refuge among the hills of Wales, Cornwall, and Cumberland, while the German conquerors formed a number of independent kingdoms in the fertile plains of England. Their number is commonly said to have been seven, whence they are called by a common name, the **Heptarchy**, though at times there were eight or even nine kingdoms. They were established in the following chronological order:—

The kingdom of the **Jutes**, said to have been established in Kent, A.D. 455, by Hengist, with Canterbury for its capital.

A body of Saxons, under Ella, in 491 founded the kingdom of **Sussex** (South Saxons) at and about Chichester.

In 516 Cerdic founded the kingdom of **Wessex** (West Saxons), with Winchester for its capital.

In 526 the kingdom of **Essex** (East Saxons), was formed on the banks of the Thames, with London for its capital.

In 547 a body of **Angles** under Idda occupied the country between the Humber and the Forth, which was formed into a kingdom under the name of **Northumbria**. This vast district, however, was at first divided into two kingdoms, viz., the **Anglian Bernicia**, and the **Saxon Deira**, both of which were subsequently united under the name of **Northumbria**.

In 571 Offa, the chief of another body of **Angles**, established himself in the country north-east of the Thames, where he formed the kingdom of **East Anglia**, with Norwich for its capital.

4. Cumberland, i. e., the land of the Cymri or Cumri, a name by which the Britons in Wales (the Welsh), still call themselves.
The Jutes came from Jutland, the south-western part of Denmark.

The seventh kingdom was founded in 574 by the Anglian Crida, under the name of **Mercia**, with Lincoln or Leicester for its capital.

5. While the German invaders, commonly called by the general name **Anglo-Saxons**, were thus establishing themselves in the fertile parts of Britain, those Britons who had taken refuge in the west made a gallant stand, defending themselves with the utmost heroism. Many a British chief is renowned in the legends referring to this period, but none has obtained greater fame than **King Arthur**, the greatest hero in the Keltic legends, whose renown was spread all over Europe in popular poetry and legends as the bravest defender of independence and of Christianity.

6. It has already been remarked that all the German tribes which thus occupied the place of the Britons were pagans, worshipping a number of divinities and the principal heavenly bodies. They believed in a future state where, in an imaginary heaven, called **Walhalla**, the brave hoped to continue their favourite pursuits of war, of the chase, and of banqueting. In this belief they cherished a ferocious contempt of their own lives no less than of those of their enemies. They accordingly transferred to their new homes the religion, laws, customs, and institutions of their original country in the north-west of Germany, and founded a number of kingdoms thoroughly Germanic in their constitutions. In their insular position they preserved their national character more pure and more free from foreign influences than any of the other Germanic kingdoms founded in the continental provinces of the Roman empire.

7. When the wars were at an end, and when the

5. The name Anglo-Saxon is scarcely comprehensive enough to embrace the various Teutonic tribes which established themselves in Britain.

The numerous legends about King Arthur and the knights of the round table seem to have been chiefly formed in Brittany, or that part of France to which the Britons fled from their Teutonic conquerors.

6. In France, Spain, and Italy, the Teutonic settlers, coming in contact with the more civilised Romans, in the course of time became Romanised, that is, they adopted the language and customs of the Romans, whence French, Spanish, and Italian, are essentially Latin tongues.

Britons were almost extirpated in the parts of the country occupied by the invaders, the Anglo-Saxons lived in circumstances very favourable to the development of their national character. The Angles, from whom the country ultimately obtained the name of **Anglia**, or England, seem to have been more richly endowed by nature with those qualities which form the groundwork of a great nation than any of the other tribes. Not only were they bold, brave, and enterprising, but eminently practical and docile, whence they soon attained in their new homes a degree of civilization far surpassing that of their brethren of the continent; and as soon as the softening influences of Christianity were brought to bear upon them, most wonderful changes were produced.

8. The bitter national aversion subsisting between the Anglo-Saxons and the independent Britons in the west, indeed, prevented the latter from attempting to convert their enemies to Christianity; and their zeal for the propagation of the Gospel was displayed in other parts of Europe, where no national hatred presented such insurmountable obstacles. Pope Gregory I. who was then zealously carrying on the missionary work among the pagans, met with no great difficulties among the Anglo-Saxons, who, in fact, looked upon the Christianity introduced to them by Roman missionaries almost as a different religion from that of the Britons. Gregory's attention is said to have been directed to the Anglo-Saxons by the overflowing beauty of some Anglo-Saxon boys, who had been made prisoners of war, and were exhibited in Rome for sale. Accordingly, in the year 596, the Roman abbot, **St. Augustine**, in order of the Pope, landed with about 400 monks in Kent, then governed by King Ethelbert, who was married to Bertha, a Christian princess of the house of the Merovingians, and daughter of King Char-

The Angles came from a north-westerly direction, being the latter
 equally, but in that region, there is only a small rise of the English coast
 were first, taken by other tribes, which their name was adopted.
 8. The Angles, who came from the north, were the first of the early
 to see the grandeur of the British, the new founder of the

bert. This lady, being herself a Christian, had often entreated the king to embrace Christianity, and her influence now inclined him to listen to the missionaries, who acted with great prudence and succeeded in persuading the king. Ethelbert then allowed himself to be baptised, and his example was followed by many of his kinsmen and subjects. At Christmas, 597, scarcely a year after Augustine's arrival, ten thousand men of Kent at once became converts to Christianity. The Roman monks facilitated their work by sparing, as much as possible, the national feelings and habits of the converts, the necessity of which had been strongly impressed upon their minds by the Pope.

9. The number of Christians had in a short time increased so much that it was found necessary to establish a religious or ecclesiastical centre, and a metropolitan church and abbey were accordingly founded at **Canterbury**, of which Augustine himself was appointed the first abbot. The Anglo-Saxon church was thus, from its very beginning, closely connected with Rome, and without hesitation acknowledged the primacy of the Roman bishop. Augustine and his associates endeavoured in vain to unite the Anglo-Saxon church with that of the Britons, and to establish harmony between them; but the latter maintained a sort of defensive attitude against the Christianity of their conquerors. As Canterbury was the most ancient seat of Christianity among the Saxons, it afterwards became the see of the archbishops of all England.

10. York was soon after made the see of the archbishop for the north of the island, for the different king-

9. It has already been observed that Christianity had long before this been introduced among the Britons, but not by Roman missionaries, so that they probably did not recognise the supremacy of the bishop of Rome. This would account for the attitude assumed by the Britons towards the Christianity of the Teutons.

10. The English names for the days of the week are all derived from pagan divinities:—*Sunday*=day of the sun; *Monday*=day of the moon; *Tuesday*=day of Tui, the god of war; *Wednesday*=day of Wodan, the chief god of the old Saxons; *Thursday*=day of Thor, the god of thunder; *Friday*=day of Frigga, the goddess of love; *Saturday*=day of Saturn, an ancient Roman divinity. In some of these names we see the influence of the religion of the ancient Romans.

doms of the Heptarchy adopted Christianity, one after the other, without any compulsion being resorted to: example did everything. The customs and outward forms of paganism remained in many instances, and several of the superstitious beliefs, still lingering in country districts, may be traced to the pagan religion of our ancestors. A striking example of this consists in the fact that the names of the days of the week still in use are derived from those of pagan divinities. But the new religion, nevertheless, made a deep and lasting impression upon the nation, and several kings were so much disgusted with the vanities of their position as to withdraw into monasteries or undertake pilgrimages to Rome, where a separate school was founded for the education of young Anglo-Saxons (*Schola Saxonum*), and supported by contributions from their countrymen at home.

11. The Teutonic kingdoms, established in Britain, maintained, on the whole, their independence of one another, though it sometimes happened that one king ruled over several kingdoms, and it also occurred that one king, distinguished above the rest by valour and prudence, was regarded and looked up to as the head of all the other kingdoms. For as the Britons of old had found it necessary to unite against their common foes, so now circumstances led to the same result among the Anglo-Saxons. The continual struggles against the Britons in the west, and the Picts and Scots in the north, rendered it absolutely necessary for the Anglo-Saxon States to unite for purposes of defence. Hence one of the kings generally exercised a sort of supremacy over the rest under the title of **Bretwalda**, which was usually conferred for life on one of the southern kings, but others also were sometimes honoured with this high distinction. The first who obtained it was **Ella**, king of **Sussex**. It

11. Ella became king of Sussex in A.D. 490. The title of **Bretwalda**, apparently signifying "ruler of the Britons," conferred a sort of dictatorship over the other chiefs. The second on whom this dignity was conferred was Ceawlin of Wessex, the third Ethelbert of Kent, under whom Christianity was introduced, the fourth Redwald of East Anglia; the fifth Edwin, the most famous of the Bretwaldas; the sixth Oswy. Thus things went on, until Egbert became king of all England.

would, however, have been unprecedented in history had not jealousy and ambition produced quarrels and wars among so many potentates in one and the same island; such therefore was the case in Britain also, and the several kingdoms had scarcely lasted two hundred and fifty years, when in 827 they were united under **Egbert**, the powerful king of Wessex, who, disdaining the honour of a mere Bretwalda, availed himself of his position, and of the fact of several of the kingdoms having already become dependent on their more powerful neighbours, for bringing the whole country under his own sway. It was, moreover, in his reign that the name of **Anglia** was first applied to England, exclusive of Wales, where the Britons still maintained their independence.

12. When the Angles and Saxons took possession of Britain, a portion of the land, called *folkland*, was set apart for state purposes; another part, called *bockland* (bookland), was assigned to the free warriors as their freehold property; but a large portion was assigned to the chief or king as his domain. As the conquest was made at different times and by different chiefs, there was no uniformity of institutions and laws, but still there are some points more or less common to all the states of the Heptarchy. Everywhere one class of the population was reduced to a state of absolute slavery under the name of *theow*, *esne*, or *thrall*; they consisted of conquered Britons and such Germans as had forfeited their liberty by crime. The free population was divided into *cearls* or *ceorls*, who constituted the great body of the people; and *thanes*, who formed a sort of nobility or gentry, and whose rank was determined by the amount of their landed property. A second and higher class of nobles, bearing the title of *eorl* or *earl*, enjoyed their privileges by the right of birth.

13. The Anglo-Saxon kings, all of whom traced their

12. The greater part of the *slaves* in these Teutonic states consisted of prisoners of war and conquered Britons.

13. The *Witenagemot* may be looked upon as a sort of Parliament of the nobles. This and the other social and political institutions of the Anglo-Saxons were no doubt the same as had existed in their original home on the continent; they were only modified in England according to the altered circumstances.

origin to their supreme god *Wodan*, did not succeed to their thrones by the right of primogeniture, but were always elected from among the members of the royal family; neither did they possess absolute power, being limited in its exercise by the national assembly or council of the wise, called the *Witenagemot*. This council was essentially aristocratic, and was convened and presided over by the king himself; its members consisted of earls, bishops, and abbots, to whom sometimes thanes also were added. They made the laws and voted the taxes, and the king was bound to listen to their advice in making war and peace, as well as in all other government matters. They further formed a high court of justice, before which appeals might be brought against the decisions of inferior courts.

14. The whole country was divided into shires or counties—hundreds—tythes—and townships; and in this arrangement ample scope was left for every community, both large and small, to exercise that self-government which still forms so characteristic a feature of the English

14. By the laws of Ina, marriages between Anglo-Saxons and Britons were legalised; similar connections seem to have become customary from the time of his reign (from 688 to 725) with the Scots, the continental Germans, and the Britons in France, whereby trade and commerce were greatly extended.

During the last two centuries of the Heptarchy in England, great changes had taken place in other parts of the world. In the east a new religion had been introduced by Mahomet, whose followers conquered Syria, Egypt, the north of Africa, and a large portion of Spain, and they would have overrun the rest of Europe, had not Charles Martel checked their progress by the great battle of Tours in 732, and driven them back into Spain. The Mahomedan era begins in 622, the year in which Mahomet fled from Mecca to Medina.

In France the power of the Merovingian kings had slipped out of their hands, and had been usurped by the mayors of the palace, who contrived to make their office hereditary; and in 752, Chilperic III., the last of the Merovingian kings, was deposed, and the mayor of the palace, *Pepin the Short*, was crowned king, and thus became the founder of the Carolingian dynasty. Pepin's son and successor was Charlemagne, who reigned from 771 to 814, and in the year 800 revived the old Roman empire by allowing himself to be crowned emperor at Rome by Pope Leo III. The continental Saxons, who still adhered to their pagan religion, were forced by Charlemagne to adopt Christianity; he extinguished the Lombard kingdom in Italy, and by conquest extended his empire from the Ebro in Spain to the Raab in Hungary.

Winfred, commonly called Boniface, or the apostle of the Germans, born in 680 in England, did more than any other man to introduce and organise Christianity in Germany. In 755 he was murdered while he was pursuing his peaceful work in Friesland. At the time when Egbert was uniting all England under his sceptre, Charlemagne, his friend, was forming his great empire on the continent of Europe, and, like the English king, had to protect the frontiers of his dominions against the roving Normans.

nation. Each county was presided over by an officer called *scirgerifa*, that is, shire-reef or sheriff. We cannot here enter into any detailed description of the constitutions of the several communities, but may observe in general that our most cherished institutions, to which this country owes its greatness and its glory, are legacies of the wisdom of our Anglo-Saxon ancestors. Ethelbert of Kent, under whom Christianity was introduced, was the first who published in the year 600 a code of laws which, though composed in Latin, were entirely based upon the national institutions of the Saxons. One hundred years later Ina, of Wessex, caused a more complete code to be framed, in which the Britons were placed under the protection of the state, and which clearly aimed at a friendly union of the conquerors and the conquered.

15. Owing to the perpetual wars, agriculture at first made but slow progress among the Anglo-Saxons, and extensive forests were for a long time the abode of wild beasts and of robbers. The breeding of cattle, especially swine, was the occupation next in importance; and the produce of these two appear on the whole to have been sufficient for the support of the people, for during this period famine occurred more rarely in England than on the continent. Industry and trade flourished to some extent in the towns, and London is called a great commercial centre of many nations, who visited it both by land and by sea.

QUESTIONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. What tribes made inroads upon Britain after the departure of the Romans? Which of these gained for themselves a firm footing in the country?</p> <p>2. Name one of the bravest of the British chiefs. What advice did he give to his countrymen?</p> <p>3. In what year are the Saxons Hengist and Horsa supposed to have landed in Britain? What island was ceded to them?</p> <p>4. What was the ultimate result of the Saxons coming to Britain? How</p> | <p>long did the wars between them and the Britons continue?</p> <p>5. To what country did many of the Britons flee? To what province in Gaul did they give their name?</p> <p>6. What kingdoms were founded by the Anglo-Saxons in Britain? By what name are they commonly called?</p> <p>7. What was the religion of the Britons? What was their belief as regards a future state of existence?</p> <p>8. From what tribe did Britain afterwards derive the name of England?</p> <p>9. From what source did the Anglo-</p> |
|---|---|

Saxons receive the Christian religion? And when?

10. What Roman abbot came over to England in the year 595? Which Saxon king did he baptise?

11. Which town is the most ancient seat of Christianity in England?

12. What impression did the new religion make upon the nation? What effects had it upon some of the kings? What attitude did the British Christians assume towards the converted Saxons?

13. What obliged the Anglo-Saxon States to unite? By what title was the king who exercised supremacy over the rest distinguished?

14. In what year, and under what king were the several kingdoms ultimately united?

15. By what name were those reduced

to slavery designated? To what classes of the population did they generally belong?

16. By what name was the free population designated? By what name was the higher class of nobles distinguished?

17. To what god did the Anglo-Saxons trace their origin?

18. By what name was the National Assembly designated? Name some of its functions.

19. How was the country divided?

20. In what year, and under what king was the first code of laws published? When, and by whom, was a more complete code framed?

21. What is a *scirgerifa*?

22. What was the state of agriculture, industry, and trade during this period?

CHAPTER III.

FROM THE ACCESSION OF EGBERT TO THE NORMAN CONQUEST, FROM 800 TO 1066.

1. Egbert (800-836) gradually unites all the little kingdoms into one.

2. Ravages of the Normans or Danes.

3. Ethelwulf (836-858) is uninterruptedly engaged in war against them. His journey to Rome.

4. Ethelbald (858-860).

5. Ethelbert and Ethelred (860-871). Wars against the Danes continued.

6. Alfred the Great (871-901). His greatness.

7, 8. His wars with the Danes, and anecdotes about him. The Danes become Christians and unite with the English.

9. Renewed hostilities; but peace restored for a time.

10. Alfred's administration of the kingdom.

11. His pursuits in time of peace.

12. How he employed his time and money.

13. Fresh attacks of the Danes repulsed.

14. Edward the Elder (901-924). Continued struggles with the Danes.

15. Athelstane (924-940). Battle of Brunanburg. Greatness of England under him.

16. Edmund the Elder (940-946). Wars with the Danes continued. His connection with Scotland. Is murdered.

18. Dunstan and the ecclesiastical power.

19. Edred and Edwy (946-959). His indiscretion and misfortunes. Dunstan's flight and return. Fate of Elgiva.

20. Edgar (959-975). The government in the hands of Dunstan. A large fleet is formed.

21. First English conquests in Ireland. Extermination of wild beasts. Prosperity of the kingdom.

22. Edward II. (975-978) is murdered at Corfe Castle.

23. Ethelred II. (978-1016). His bad education. Dunstan manages the government successfully. Normans again infest the coasts.

24. Ethelred invades Normandy, but is defeated, and peace is concluded on disgraceful terms. Conspiracy against Ethelred discovered, and massacre of the Danes.

25. Great distress in consequence of the ravages of the Danes under Sweyn.

26. Canute and Olaf land in England; the English submit from fear; but after

Sweyn's death Ethelred returns and Canute leaves England.

27. Canute, called back by the Danes, settles in England. Flight and death of Ethelred.

28, 29. Edmund (1016). England divided between him and Canute. Edmund is assassinated.

30. Canute, king of all England (1016-1035). His persecution of the relations and friends of Edmund. England a province of Denmark.

31. Afterwards he shows himself a wise and energetic ruler. Goes to Rome, gains the crown of Norway.

32. Scotland and Cumberland submit to him.

33. Hardicanute (1039-1042) is unpopular in England, and Harold elected sole king; but on his death,

34. Hardicanute again unites England with Denmark, but the Danes treat the Saxons with insult.

35. Edward the Confessor (1042-1066), marries Earl Godwin's daughter. Danish influence suppressed. Normans fill the highest places in England.

36. The discontent arising therefrom allayed by Stigau.

37. Scotland becomes a vassal kingdom of England.

38. Harold (1066). Plan of William of Normandy to invade England.

39. Harold's active preparations interrupted by an insurrection in the north. William lands at Pevensey.

40. Battle of Senlac. Harold killed.

41, 42, and 43. Civilization attained by the Anglo-Saxons at the time of the conquest.

1. The honour of having united the several Anglo-Saxon kingdoms under one sceptre belongs to Egbert, who was elected in the year 800 to the throne of Wessex, which had gradually become the most powerful kingdom of the Heptarchy. He had previously spent thirteen years in the dominion of Charlemagne, during which time he may have seen the advantages of uniting several tribes under one head. He was a man of great natural ability; and when in 809 the western Britons once more rose against him, he succeeded in uniting Cornwall with Wessex, and in compelling Wales to keep peace, at least for a time. Mercia, the principal state of the Angles, was then governed by the upstart Beornwulf, but it was in a declining condition; and when Beornwulf presumptuously attacked Wessex he was killed in battle, and Egbert wrested from Mercia the kingdoms of Kent and Sussex. The East Angles also revolted from Mercia and placed themselves under the protection of Egbert. A few years later even Northumbria submitted to him, and thus the whole of the seven kingdoms gradually acknowledged the supremacy of Wessex. The kings themselves were not

1. On Christmas day, 800, Charlemagne was crowned Emperor by the Pope at Rome. This was the beginning of what is called the Holy Roman Empire of the German nation, which lasted until 1806, when the last emperor withdrew to his hereditary dominions of Austria.

In 805, Charlemagne finally subdued the continental Saxons.

always deposed, but became the vassals and tributaries of Egbert, as was the case with Kent, Sussex, and Mercia.

2. The union of the small Anglo-Saxon kingdoms under one energetic chief had become a matter of necessity, as the country began to be more and more threatened by a new enemy, commonly called Northmen (Normans) or Danes. They were Teutons, partly from Scandinavia and partly from the north-west of Germany, and accordingly belonged to the same race as the Anglo-Saxons themselves, but they were pagans, and as ferocious, if not more so, as the Angles and Saxons themselves had been. Egbert had scarcely been king of all England for six years, when they commenced a series of ravaging attacks on various parts, in which they seem to have been assisted by the Britons; and Egbert perceiving this, chastised them in 835, in a great battle in Cornwall, and ordered all the Welsh living in his dominions to quit them in the space of six months. The year after this victory Egbert died, in 836, having founded a kingdom more extensive and more powerful than any that had existed in these islands; and had it not been for the disturbances caused by the inroads of the Danes or Normans, the country might now have entered upon a period of great progress and prosperity. It is commonly believed that after the conquest of Mercia, Egbert, in deference to the predominant race of the Angles, assumed the title of King of **Anglia** or England; but others think that this title did not come into use until the reign of Edmund, the son of Alfred the Great.

3. Egbert was succeeded by his eldest son, **Ethelwulf**, who had to fight against the Danish invaders almost without interruption throughout his reign. He had received a monastic education, which had inspired him with the love of peace and tranquillity, strongly contrasting with the energy and activity of his father. His great

3. During the reign of Ethelwulf, in 843, the empire of Charlemagne was divided by the treaty of Verdun, whereby France became separated for ever from Germany. Louis, a grandson of Charlemagne, received Germany, and Charles France.

desire was to undertake a pilgrimage to Rome, but the necessity of defending his kingdom prevented it. His only daughter was married to the vassal king of Mercia, and the youngest of his five sons was Alfred, who afterwards became king of England, and obtained the surname of the Great. Ethelwulf seems to have been strongly impressed with the honour and dignity conferred by the Pope on Charlemagne, and with a view to obtain the papal sanction and consecration for his own house, he sent, in 853, his son Alfred, then only five years old, with a numerous retinue to Rome, where Pope Leo IV. anointed and crowned him. A few years later Ethelwulf himself, accompanied by Alfred, spent a whole year at Rome, displaying the most lavish liberality towards the clergy, rebuilding the school of the Saxons, which had been destroyed by fire, and promising an annual donation, which subsequently the popes claimed as a tribute, under the name of *Peter's pence*. As a ruler Ethelwulf was feeble, and almost undid the work of his father. For he divided his kingdom with his eldest son Athelstane, to whom he gave Essex, Kent, and Sussex; but the young man died before his father, and the latter, shortly before his death, which took place in 858, again divided his kingdom between his next two sons, Ethelbald and Ethelbert, the former receiving the western part, and Ethelbert Kent and the eastern portions.

4. Ethelbald reigned only two years, and his early death deprived the country of a man who might have been of great service during the struggles that were approaching.

5. Ethelbert now again united the kingdom, and governed it with a firm hand until his death in 866. He was succeeded by Ethelred, whose short reign till 871 was an uninterrupted series of unfortunate wars with the Danes, who in 860 had renewed their inroads and gained a permanent footing in England. They plundered and ravaged the country in a fearful manner, and

5. In 862 a body of Normans under Rurik and his two brothers established a Norman dynasty at Novgorod, which governed Russia until the year 1598.

being pagans they raged with unexampled cruelty against churches and monasteries. East Anglia fell entirely into their hands, and its king, Edmund, suffered at their hands the death of a martyr. Ethelred had to fight many a bloody battle against them, in which he was bravely assisted by his brother Alfred, who succeeded him on the throne in 871 and reigned till 901.

6. This king, who deserves the name of the Great, perhaps more than any man ever entrusted with the government of a nation, was the youngest of Ethelwulf's sons, and the grandson of Egbert. At the time of his accession he was only twenty-two years old, but he had borne the title of king ever since his anointment by the Pope, and during the reign of his elder brothers he had always ranked as the second person in the kingdom. His intellectual superiority and the valour he had displayed against the Danes had won for him the affection of all his subjects. The career he now entered upon, and the great qualities he unfolded, have secured to him a fame and a reputation unequalled by any other ruler. The gratitude of posterity has known no bounds, and has looked upon him as the founder of everything that is good and noble in the institutions of the country, though it is now well known that some of them had existed long before his time, and others originated many years after his death. But he is, and always will be, regarded as the great and good King Alfred, for he delivered his country from the hated yoke of foreign pagans, restored and maintained the laws and institutions of his ancestors, and diffused throughout his dominions a love of letters and learning.

7. Alfred had received a most careful education from his mother Osburga. Before his twentieth year he was seized by a malady, the nature of which is not precisely known, but which throughout his life never entirely left him. The strength of his will and of his mind, however, overcame all physical defects. At the time of his accession, the Danes, strengthened by fresh hosts, advanced as far as Wilton in Wiltshire; and although routed at first by Alfred and his few followers, they rallied and gained

the day. Eight great battles were fought during the first year of his reign, with great losses to both sides, until at last the Danes agreed to evacuate the country with the exception of Mercia. But notwithstanding this arrangement, they continued to murder, ravage, and pillage the country in all directions. Soon all Northumbria fell into their hands, and expeditions were undertaken even as far as the valley of the Clyde, where many Danes settled, exchanging the sword for the plough. In the south they carried on their depredations from the castles of Wareham and Exeter, but there Alfred besieged them and caused a fleet to be built to prevent the landing of fresh adventurers. Soon after, Wessex itself was attacked and plundered, and Alfred was reduced to the greatest straits. But he did not lose heart: accompanied by a few nobles and warriors he spent several months during the winter in Athelney, a marshy island in Somersetshire, where with the greatest difficulty he procured the mere necessaries of life. He found, it is said, a place of safety in the hut of a cowherd, and one day when he was sitting



ALFRED IN THE COWHERD'S HUT.

by the fire, making arrows for his bow, the wife of the herdsman, not knowing who he was, ordered him to attend

to the cakes she happened to be making. Alfred, though sitting close by the fire, allowed the cakes to burn, and meekly bore the reproof for his inattention. Another legend relates that one day, when he was sitting in a hut reading some book, a beggar knocked at the door and received from the king one half of his last loaf of bread, whereupon St. Cuthbert appeared to him in a vision, and promised that he should be restored to his kingdom.

8. At length with the aid of his Somerset nobles he constructed a fort, from which he sallied forth against the enemy, and kept up communication with his friends. He is said once to have entered the camp of the enemy in the disguise of a minstrel, and thus to have obtained accurate information as to their numbers and plans. A course of action was then agreed upon between him and his faithful adherents, and an attack was made upon the Danes, who were driven back to their strongholds, where they were pursued and besieged by Alfred. After a fortnight they promised to evacuate the country, and to give hostages, if a free departure were granted. These terms were accepted, and Guthrum, the chief of the Danes, and many of his principal followers, adopted Christianity. Guthrum, at his baptism, received the name of Athelstane, and was adopted by Alfred. These events occurred in the year 880, and Athelstane withdrew to East Anglia, over which, together with a portion of Mercia, he ruled as a vassal king, recognising Alfred as his sovereign. A treaty was concluded between the sovereign and his vassal, regulating the frontiers and other matters. Christianity now became the recognised religion in both kingdoms, and the foreigners who, owing to the weakness of Alfred's predecessors, could not be expelled from the island, were united with the Saxons by one religion and one law.

9. The Danes, however, found it difficult to give up their former habits, and not only did they occasionally *molest neighbouring districts*, but gave assistance to *some Normans who endeavoured to establish themselves in the country north of the Thames*. Such conduct

obliged Alfred, in 884, again to take up arms and restore the feudal relation between him and Athelstane, who died in 890. His successor renewed the treaty with Alfred. We must not forget that Bernicia and Northumbria also continued to be governed by Danes, but the latter country was recovered by Alfred in the year 894, on the death of its king Guthred.

10. For a series of years England now remained undisturbed, and great as Alfred's activity had been in the defence of his country, it was equally great after his final victory over the Danes, for he now displayed the greatest intelligence and care in restoring what had been destroyed, and in improving what had been saved: ruined castles were rebuilt, towns and roads were repaired, and new ones built, the rights of the clergy were regulated and protected, and the city of London, which had almost been ruined during the wars with the Danes, and by frequent fires, was rebuilt. But what was more important than all this was the creation of a powerful navy to protect the coasts of his dominions—in short, Alfred did all he could to improve the condition of his people, by restoring law and order, and protecting the people against all arbitrary encroachments.

11. His success in these works of organization was so great that the country, which during the late wars had been thrown into fearful disorder, is said to have become in a few years the safest and best organised in all Europe. Christianity had already made a deep impression upon the Anglo-Saxons, and many of the Saxon clergy were noble rivals of those of Rome. But during the Danish wars learning had fallen so low that south of the Thames no one could be found capable of translating a Latin book. To remedy this state of things, the king gathered around him the most distinguished men from foreign countries, as well as from Mercia and other parts of England, where learning had not become quite extinct. In his thirty-sixth year he himself began the study of Latin, and ever after *his favourite occupation was to translate works from that language into Anglo-Saxon, such as the "Consolation"*

tions of Philosophy," by Boethius, the "Ecclesiastical History" of the Venerable Bede, and the historical work of Orosius. He kept up an extensive connection with various Christian churches, and especially with Rome, where he secured great privileges for the school of the Saxons. The education of his subjects was to him a matter of as deep concern as that of his own children. The sons of the nobility were ordered to be instructed in writing, Anglo-Saxon, and Latin, before they were allowed to engage in war and the chase, and the king devoted a portion of his own revenues to the support of the school.

12. All this was accomplished by Alfred in a short period by prudently husbanding his time and means. To measure his time, he used six lamps, each of which burned for four hours, which enabled him to divide the day into equal portions: one for sleep and bodily exercise, one for business of state, and one for study and devotions. In like manner he divided his revenues into two parts: one being devoted to the necessities of the state, and the other to churches, monasteries, and schools.

13. While he was engaged in these quiet and beneficent works, his reign was once more disturbed, in 893, by fresh invasions of Danes. The war in which he was thus involved was continued during four years; but in the end Alfred succeeded in finally driving them off with great loss. The last years of his reign appear to have passed away in peace, for no further events are recorded, though he, no doubt, continued his beneficent activity until his death, which occurred in October 901. This reign may be briefly characterised as that of a sage and of a hero.

14. After Alfred's death the votes of the Witenagemot assigned the succession to his son Edward, surnamed the Elder, who had already distinguished himself in the Dan-

14. Charles the Simple of France, who reigned from 898 to 929, had assigned to the roving Northmen in 911 a large province in France, still called after them Normandy. France was thus freed from their ravages, and they became Christians. They were governed by dukes, who were the vassals of the kings of France. But their restless and enterprising spirit led them afterwards to make conquests in other parts of Europe.

ish wars. This election was indeed opposed by the sons of his uncle Ethelred, but Edward not only maintained his position, but by his energy succeeded in securing the whole of his father's kingdom, although the Northumbrians, availing themselves of the repeated inroads of the Danes, rose in rebellion against him. The struggles against the Danes continually engaged nearly his whole attention, but at the same time he did all he could to secure the coasts by building strongholds; he raised the importance of the towns, and maintained rigorous strictness in the administration of the law. His nearly uninterrupted warlike occupations, as well as probably his own inclinations, prevented his doing much for the advancement of intellectual culture among his people. He died at Farrendon, in Mercia, in 924. His legitimate children being still young at the time of his death, he recommended his natural son Athelstane as his successor, who was accepted by the Witenagemot and reigned till 940.

15. Although the Danes in Northumbria, in order to secure their independence, allied themselves with the Scots, with roving bands of pirates, and the Britons in Wales and Ireland, Athelstane nevertheless conquered them all in 934, in the famous battle of **Brunanburg** in Northumbria. England thus obtained under him a power unequalled by that of any of his predecessors, and his renown was widely spread among continental nations. In the administration of the internal affairs of his kingdom he promoted order and commerce, by raising every merchant who had made two voyages to the rank of a thane.

16. As Athelstane left no children, **Edmund the Elder**, the eldest surviving son of Edward, who had already given signal proofs of personal valour, was readily recognised by the Witenagemot as the lawful successor. At the very beginning of his reign he had to crush an insurrection of the Danes in the north. He took Northumbria from them and gave it to King Malcolm of Scotland, who had to do homage to him, and promise to

protect the north of England against the Danes. Unfortunately, Edmund's career was cut short by an act of violence. A man of the name of Leolf, who had been banished for a crime, made his way into the king's dining-hall and murdered him, in the year 946.

17. As Edmund's children were still young, the Witenagemot conferred the crown on his brother **Edred**, who received the oath of allegiance not only from his English subjects, but even from the princes of Wales and the kings of Cumberland and Scotland. The Northumbrians had to be forced, and their country between York and the Lothians was given to Osulph, in whose family the government remained until the Norman conquest. During the last years of his reign, Edred spent all his energies upon regulating and fortifying the newly-recovered territory. He died in 955 without issue.

18. His reign is marked in history by the rise of ecclesiastical power, through the influence of the pious and learned, but domineering **Dunstan**, abbot of Glastonbury. This man, descended from an old West Saxon family, made upon his contemporaries the impression of a person of superior sanctity. His life was very austere, and he fostered a belief among the people that he had frequent conflicts with the devil. He was skilled in all the arts of the time, and at the age of twenty-two he had been appointed by the king abbot of Glastonbury. He there introduced the rules of the Benedictines, which soon after were adopted in most of the monasteries of England. In the reign of Edmund and Edred he had devoted himself entirely to monastic pursuits, but in that of Edred's successor, **Edwy**, his fiery zeal drove him into the political arena.

19. **Edwy**, or **Edwin**, a son of Edmund, upon the death of Edred, was unanimously chosen by the Witenagemot. He was a young man of great beauty, but he brought upon himself many misfortunes by his thoughtlessness. Even at his coronation he became involved in a dispute *which formed the beginning of a long protracted struggle of the rising power of the monastic orders against the*

state and the secular clergy. Edwy was married to the fair Elgiva, but owing to the near relationship between him and her, the marriage was considered to be contrary to the laws of the church. During the coronation banquet, Edwy left the hall, hastening to his beloved Elgiva. The nobles, offended at his conduct, sent after him the abbot Dunstan, who in a most disrespectful manner forced the king back into the banqueting hall. From this moment the old secular clergy, who hated the Benedictines because they denied the priests the right to marry, sided with the young queen, who had long been annoyed by the ascetic severity of the monks. A plan was formed to overthrow the abbot and expel the Benedictines. The king demanded an account of all the treasures entrusted to the monastery of Glastonbury, and Dunstan had to take refuge at Ghent in Flanders. Edwy closed the establishments of the Benedictines, and by various acts of indiscretion exasperated a large number of his subjects. At the instigation of Dunstan, Mercia and Northumbria revolted, and after a short period of anarchy they proclaimed Edwy's brother Edgar their king, making Dunstan his permanent councillor, and bishop of Worcester and London. Dunstan now returned to England, and the clergy who had hitherto remained faithful to Edwy, under the fear of Dunstan, prevailed upon the king to divorce Elgiva. She was dragged out of the palace and banished to Ireland, her face having been cruelly disfigured with hot irons. When the wounds were healed, and she returned to England, she was seized at Gloucester, and put to death with fiendish tortures. Edwy himself died soon after (959) in the same place, but is supposed to have been murdered by his enemies.

20. By the death of Edwy in 959, the whole kingdom became united under his brother Edgar, who has been called the most fortunate of all the Anglo-Saxon kings. Dunstan was at once made archbishop of Canterbury, and contrived to hold the reigns of government in his own hands. *It must be owned that he employed the power to which he had risen for the good of the country,*

so far as it was compatible with the claims of the church and himself. Wherever it was possible he filled the episcopal sees with Benedictines, for whom Edgar is said to have founded no less than forty monasteries. During the first years of Edgar's reign, his name is scarcely ever mentioned; but notwithstanding his licentious and dissolute mode of life, at which Dunstan cunningly connived, he enjoyed the affections of his people. Scandinavia had already sent forth its surplus population, so that now not much was to be feared from that quarter, and Edgar could therefore direct his attention more especially to those Danes who had permanently settled in England, in the neighbouring islands, and on the east coast of Ireland. For this purpose he kept up a large fleet, which he himself inspected annually, and which so completely secured his dominions that he obtained the name of the Peaceful.

21. Still, however, his reign did not pass away without military undertakings. In one of his expeditions he subdued the Danes in Ireland and took Dublin: the first Anglo-Saxon conquest beyond the sea. In his reign wolves are said to have been exterminated in England, the Britons in Wales being allowed to pay their annual tribute in wolves' heads. It is strange to find that Edgar was not crowned king till 973, many years after his accession; it may have been a contrivance of Dunstan to make the king feel his dependence upon the church. Two years after this solemnity Edgar died, in 975, leaving his kingdom much better organised than it had been before. Trade and commerce also had been much improved by his government.

22. Edgar had been married twice, and his second wife, Elfrida, was bent upon securing the succession to her own son Ethelred, who was only seven years old, but Dunstan

20. The inhabitants of Ireland were a branch of the great Celtic race: they had not been disturbed in their island either by the Romans or by the Anglo-Saxons. Christianity had been introduced among them at a very early period, and they had sent out missionaries, such as St. Columba, who, about 565, converted the Scotch to Christianity. Ireland, which had not been free from foreign invasions, had made more progress in civilization than other Celtic countries, and its church was independent of that of Rome. The Danes began their ravaging incursions into Ireland about the year 800.

induced the Witenagemot to elect Edward II., Edgar's son by his first wife, then a boy of thirteen. The Benedictines and their party supported the choice, while the secular clergy, siding with the widowed queen, attempted to expel the Benedictines and give their monasteries to married priests; but the archbishop fought manfully for the cause he had undertaken, and Elfrida began to despair of her son ever succeeding to the throne. One evening while Edward was hunting in Dorsetshire, he visited his stepmother at Corfe Castle without attendants. While he was sitting on his horse and drinking a cup of mead to refresh himself, he was murdered, in 978, by a hired assassin, in consequence of which he was afterwards regarded by his clerical adherents as a martyr.

23. Elfrida's son, Ethelred II., surnamed the Unready, was now crowned king by Dunstan, who, however, is said to have foretold that his reign would be unfortunate. Dunstan had him educated as if he were intended to become a monk, though the young king had talents of which something better might have been made. As long as Dunstan himself lived, the government was indeed strong enough to resist attacks from without, and to prevent the internal decay of the kingdom; but after his death, in 988, the country felt the loss of the man whose strong hand had kept together the different elements of which the state was composed. Even during the first years swarms of Scandinavians began to infest the English coasts and to enact the same terrible scenes which had been witnessed many years before. Many of these pirates came from Normandy, whose inhabitants were unable entirely to renounce their former piratical habits. It ought to be remembered that in 911 Charles the Simple, in order to stop their ravages, had ceded to these Northmen, or Normans, a whole province of France, which received from them the name of Normandy.

23. In France the Carolingian dynasty became extinct in 987, the last of the race being Louis IV. He was succeeded by Hugo Capet, the founder of the Capetian dynasty. In Germany the Carolingians had become extinct as early as 918.

24. Ethelred indeed tried to retaliate upon Normandy, but suffered so terrible a defeat that only a single messenger escaped to report the disaster to his master. But through the mediation of the Pope, a peace was concluded in 991, in which both the Normans and Ethelred were admonished to turn their arms against the pagans rather than against one another. In the same year an attack was made upon England by the king of Norway, in which he was so successful that Ethelred, on the advice of his clerical councillors, promised to pay the enemy ten thousand pounds of silver, and to supply them with provisions as long as they should stay in the island, on condition of their ceasing to devastate the districts they were occupying. The tribute thus paid to the Danes in this humiliating peace gave rise to a tax on the laity of England, which, under the name of *Danegelt*, or *Danemoney*, continued to be levied for several centuries. But the Danes did not seem willing to leave the country, and even a few years later, the united kings, *Sweyn of Denmark*, and *Olav Trigvason*, thinking themselves sufficiently powerful to conquer all England, appeared with their fleets off the coasts, which they ravaged in a most barbarous manner. They, too, were bought off by sixteen thousand pounds of silver; and in a subsequent attack, in the year 1000, they even received twenty-four thousand pounds. The excellent institutions made by Ethelred's predecessors were partly neglected by him, and were partly insufficient for the exigencies of the time. Ethelred now tried to secure himself by forming connections with the Normans in France, and by marrying Emma, daughter of Richard I., Duke of Normandy. The Danes settled in England, looking with suspicion and fear on this new connection, conspired to murder Ethelred and the leading men of his court. Ethelred, hearing of the plot, gave secret orders to put to death, on an appointed day, all the Danes settled in the towns. This foolish and cruel order was executed on the 13th of November 1002. *But it seems not to have been extended to Northumberland, East Anglia, and the towns of Mercia, for we after-*

wards still meet with great numbers of Danes in those parts.

25. When the news of this massacre reached Sweyn, whose own sister had been murdered, he made a solemn vow to make himself master of England. For several years he devastated the coast districts, until in 1006 he consented to accept thirty-six thousand pounds of silver, promising to observe peace, which promise, however, he never intended to keep. The unspeakable distress which the country was now suffering at last roused the government to make some effort for its defence, and by means of a new tax, called ship-money, a fleet was built larger than any that England had yet seen. But it was all of no avail. The Danes continued their ravages, and while the English, disunited among themselves, were unable to offer any effective resistance, the Witenagemot once more offered to purchase peace for the enormous sum of forty-eight thousand pounds of silver.

26. While this money was being collected, the Danes continued their ravages, and Sweyn, hearing of the success of his warriors in England, now resolved in person to make good his vow. In 1013 he landed with his sons Canute and Olav in the Humber, and as he advanced all the country submitted to him. He then proceeded southward, and the cruelties and devastations which he allowed his soldiers to indulge in seem to have surpassed everything that had yet been experienced in this much-tortured country. The humiliation of the English had reached the lowest point, and it became a common saying that one Dane was a match for ten Saxons. Every one felt that there was no other way of safety except in submission to the invaders.

27. Ethelred, now abandoned by his subjects, fled to Richard II. of Normandy, who received him kindly, though Ethelred had very often ill-used his wife Emma, Richard's sister. Soon after his arrival at Rouen, Ethelred received the news of Sweyn's death, which opened the way for his return to England, where, in 1014, he was enthusiastically received. A war now broke out

between him and Canute, the son of Sweyn; but the latter finding that the most powerful of the Saxon nobles had determined to support Æthelred, Canute returned to his own country and engaged in other enterprises.

28. But the period of peace which now seemed in store for England was but of short duration, for the Danes in Northumbria called back Canute; and as Edric, one of the most powerful English nobles, joined him, Æthelred in despair dismissed the army which his brave son Edmund, surnamed Ironside, had assembled, and shut himself up in London, where he died in 1016, after a long and most unhappy reign.

29. The Witenagemot assembled in London remained faithful to Æthelred's son Edmund, but most of the nobles and ecclesiastical dignitaries, ready to side with any ruler that might secure to them their possessions, joined Canute. Edmund fought several times and successfully against the Danes, but after the loss of one great battle, the chiefs of the two nations induced their kings to come to an understanding, in which the north of England was ceded to Canute, and the south remained to Edmund. Scarcely had this division of the kingdom been made, when Edmund, in November 1016, was assassinated, probably at the instigation of the treacherous Edric.

30. Under the last Saxon kings, whose reign now came to an end for a time, the court had become degenerated, and had displayed so much foolish vanity, licentiousness, and wickedness, as to draw upon itself the contempt of the nation. No wonder, therefore, that Canute was at once declared king of all England by the cowardly and selfish nobles. Edmund's children, who took refuge with King Stephen of Hungary, were set aside, and Canute

30. The Hungarians, or Ugrians, or as they call themselves Magyars, first appeared in Europe in the reign of Charlemagne. Therafter they continually pressed westward, ravaging the countries in the most barbarous manner. But being defeated in two great battles in 933 and 955 by the Germans, they were obliged to give up their predatory incursions. Stephen, who was king of Hungary from 997 to 1038, was their first Christian ruler, and declared his wish to live at peace with his Christian neighbours.

When the Carlovingian dynasty in Germany had become extinct, the imperial dignity became elective, and Germany was governed by a succession of Saxon kings from 919 to 1024.

took and received the usual oath of allegiance, and was crowned in London. He first endeavoured to get rid of all the friends and relations of the late king, and those who did not make their escape were put to death or sent into exile. In order to secure the support of Normandy, where the widowed Emma was residing with her brother, he offered her his hand, promising the succession in England to the children who might be the result of their union. The marriage took place in 1017. But being still doubtful of the fidelity of the Saxon chiefs, especially the faithless Edric, he had many of them put to death, and squandered their property in rewarding his Danish followers. When at length he felt safe in his dominions, he sent the greater portion of his fleet to Denmark, which henceforth he governed conjointly with England.

31. His conduct now became quite altered, for he seems at last to have discovered the means by which alone his power could be permanently established. He vigorously promoted the interests of Christianity in Denmark; he placed the Danes and Saxons in England on a footing of equality; he bestowed especial care upon the administration of justice, and raised the character of the clergy by connecting them more closely with the order of the Benedictines and the Papal see, to which he again paid the long-forgotten *Peter's pence*. By these and similar means he effectually won the affection of the Anglo-Saxons, who had already ceased to look upon him as a foreigner. In short, he felt so secure that he could divide his time between Denmark and England. In 1026 he undertook a pilgrimage to Rome, where he was present at the coronation of Conrad II., Emperor of Germany. He remained there for some time, during which he secured for his subjects several privileges. After this, Canute returned to Denmark. He had always been ambitious to unite with his kingdom the crown of Norway, and having hitherto been unable to gain this end, he now effected it by bribing the nobles of Norway, who proclaimed him king in 1028.

81. Conrad II. was crowned emperor in 1026, but his reign extended from 1024 to 1039. With him commenced a new dynasty of emperors.

But he left this new country to be governed by his natural son Sweyn.

32. In the meantime an ill feeling broke out between Canute and the Duke of Normandy, who wished to secure the English throne to the sons of Emma by Ethelred. Canute averted the threatening danger by making certain concessions to the Saxon princes. Towards the end of his life he had the further satisfaction of receiving the submission of the kingdoms of Scotland and Cumberland. He died in November 1035, and was buried at Winchester. He had been one of the greatest and most powerful rulers in northern Europe, but his fame is tarnished by excessive ambition, and by the cruelty with which he treated his enemies at the commencement of his reign. England had become a province of Denmark, and during Canute's reign the great Saxon families had been more or less broken up and destroyed.

33. Canute's only son by Emma, **Hardicanute**, had been entrusted by his father with the government of Denmark; Sweyn was King of Norway; and his third son, Harold, for whom no provision seems to have been made, was more popular with the Danes in England than Hardicanute, and was elected by the chiefs King of Mercia and Northumbria. At a meeting of the West Saxon Witenagemot, the country south of the Thames was given to Hardicanute, but he had first to secure the kingdom of Denmark, which was invaded by the Norwegians, after they had expelled Sweyn. Emma made a useless attempt to secure the throne of England to her sons by Ethelred. But the elder of them, Edward, afterwards called the Confessor, made himself unpopular through his Norman followers, and being a man without much energy, he soon gave up his claims; the younger, Alfred, was treacherously seized by Earl Godwin: he had his eyes put out, and died soon after in 1036. Upon this **Harold** was recognised as the sole king, but his short reign passed away without any important event, except that the Britons of Wales took up arms against England and were unusually successful.

34. At last Hardicanute, after securing his rule in Denmark, returned to England; but while waiting at Bruges for a favourable opportunity, the news reached him that Harold had suddenly died of apoplexy at Oxford, in March 1039. Hardicanute, therefore, was looked upon by all parties as having the best claims to the throne of England, which was now again to be united to the crown of Denmark. His mother, Emma, now took fearful vengeance on her former opponents. Many of the most distinguished men were put to death. Harold's body was dragged from its tomb and thrown into the Thames. A bitter animosity was thus fostered between the Danes and Saxons, and Hardicanute did not fulfil the expectations which had been entertained of him. He laid a heavy tax on the English to reward the Danes who had brought him back to England, and the Danes treated the Saxons with a haughtiness and insolence as if they had been their slaves. Towards monasteries which had already very large possessions, both Canute and his mother displayed the greatest liberality. Edward (the Confessor), who seemed quite harmless, was invited to come from Normandy and live at the court of England in a manner suitable to his rank. Hardicanute, during the last years of his reign, gave himself up to licentiousness and debauchery. He died of apoplexy during a banquet in June 1042.

35. As Hardicanute left no issue, the Danish dynasty in England came to an end, and the legitimate heir of the English crown, Edward, was proclaimed king. Amid his monastic pursuits he had long since renounced all worldly ambition, and he accepted the crown only with reluctance at the pressing request of the powerful Earl Godwin, who hoped to rule the country under a king who seemed to be wanting in strength and energy. In order to secure this, Godwin induced him to marry his daughter Editha; but the young king, with his monkish notions, did not treat her as his wife, whence he was called the Confessor, which means the Saint. The sons of Godwin obtained influential positions and played into

the hands of their father. The new government, however, soon became popular, as the Danish influence in the affairs of the country was suppressed, and the Danegelt was abolished. At the same time the king offended the national feeling of the Anglo-Saxons by showing much partiality for the Normans, among whom he had spent his early years, and a dislike towards the somewhat rude and coarse manners of his Anglo-Saxon subjects. The Normans were always more inclined to show complete submission to the Papal see than the Anglo-Saxons, who had all along striven to keep their church more or less independent of Rome. Edward, sympathising with the Normans, filled the throne of Canterbury and several other episcopal sees with Normans.

36. Earl Godwin now put himself at the head of those hostile to these measures, but he had to go into exile. When, however, he threatened to attack London, and its citizens were ready to receive him as a friend, Stigand, bishop of Winchester, brought about an understanding, in which the king had to promise to dismiss his Norman followers, both lay and clerical. The national feeling thus gained a decided victory; and when, after Godwin's death, his son Harold succeeded to his place, the king showed an honest desire to secure the English throne to its natural heirs. Amid the applause of the people the king recalled Prince Edward, the son of Edmund Ironside, from Hungary, who, however, died soon after his arrival in London, leaving an only son, Edgar Atheling. Harold, Earl Godwin's son, displayed great energy in the administration of the kingdom.

37. Macbeth, a powerful Scottish chief, had usurped the kingdom of Scotland, murdered the legitimate king Duncan, and driven his son, Malcolm Kenmore, into England. Siward, Duke of Northumberland, was sent by the King of England into Scotland to chastise the usurper. The legitimate king, Malcolm, was restored, and Scotland became a vassal kingdom of England. Harold was repeatedly successful in defeating the rebellious Britons of Wales, but somewhat later he brought

himself, as well as the kingdom, into dangerous perplexities; for having, during a shipwreck, fallen into the hands of a French count, he was ransomed by William, Duke of Normandy, on a solemn promise that, after the death of Edward the Confessor, Harold would assist him in obtaining the throne of England. Edward died the very year after, 1066, having shortly before, at the request of his barons, named Harold, his brother-in-law, as his successor. Edward's body was buried in Westminster Abbey, and his memory has ever been dear to Englishmen, because, though he was a weak monarch, under him the Anglo-Saxon constitution was restored, and because both before and after him the country was ruled by foreigners.

38. Harold was at once acknowledged by the nobles as King of England, for during the reign of Edward the Confessor he had displayed a valour and energy which led the people to entertain the greatest hopes of him. The most influential among the electors, moreover, were his personal friends, who hurried on the election. The only one that had any legitimate title to the succession was Edgar Atheling, the grandson of Edmund Ironside, who, however, was too young, and obtained the earldom of Oxford. The coronation was performed by the Archbishop of York, as Stigand, who had been raised to the archbishopric of Canterbury, had not yet obtained the sanction of the Pope. Harold at once displayed the greatest vigour and energy to secure his position and the good of the country, and no part of the administration was neglected. He had not long enjoyed the new dignity when he received the intelligence that Duke William of Normandy was contemplating an invasion of England, which was said to be sanctioned by the Pope as a war against the perjured usurper. It is further stated that the Pope

38. Ever since the year 1016, the Normans, after conquering the Greeks and Saracens in Italy, established themselves firmly in the south of Italy, and one of their leaders, Roger, conquered nearly the whole of Sicily, of which afterwards the Pope conferred upon his successors the title of king. The French Normans thus established a mighty power in Italy and Sicily. England was soon to be conquered by the same race, and have its Teutonic civilization modified by that of the French Normans.

took this step especially at the instigation of Hildebrand (afterwards Gregory VII.), who by this means hoped to secure to the papacy a greater influence upon England.

39. Harold neglected no means to meet the emergency; but as the enemy did not appear at once, he undertook an expedition against the nobles in the north, who had invited the Norwegians, and had promised their king the northern half of England. Harold, however, defeated them in a great battle at Stamford Bridge on the Derwent. William, before embarking on his undertaking, tried every means to gain his object without having recourse to arms. Harold replied by expelling all the Normans residing in his dominions. William now determined to make good his claims to England by force of arms. He had great difficulty in persuading his friends, and many refused to join him; but, nevertheless, seven hundred ships were got ready, and many knights and mercenaries were attracted from France and other countries by promises of rich rewards. In the month of August 1066, his fleet assembled at St. Valery with sixty thousand warriors. On the 29th of September one portion of the fleet landed at Pevensy and the other at Hastings. Harold, on hearing this, instantly returned from the north to London with his mercenaries, but found it impossible to bring together a sufficient army in so short a time. But he nevertheless rejected all proposals of a division of the country between himself and William.

40. On the 14th of October the Normans advanced to the attack, and for a time victory seemed to be on Harold's side; but William's valour and courage succeeded in staying the flight of his men: the contest was resumed with fresh vigour, and the defeat of the Anglo-Saxons was soon decided. Harold and two of his brothers fell fighting bravely round the standard of England. On the battle-field of Senlac the Papal banner was planted in the place of that of Harold, and William afterwards built on the spot a richly-endowed abbey, called Battle Abbey. Harold left behind him several sons who fled to Ireland, and one daughter who took refuge in Denmark. Harold's

body was buried at Waltham Abbey, which he himself had founded. Thus ended the Anglo-Saxon rule in England, and the country became a province of Normandy as it had before been of Denmark.



41. At the time of the conquest of England by the Normans, the state of intellectual culture among the Saxons was little, if at all, inferior to that of the French Normans, though the latter had undoubtedly the advantage of greater refinement in their manners and in the outward signs of civilization. Agriculture appears to have reached about the same state of perfection as that which existed at the time when the Romans evacuated the island. A class of free peasants continued to exist throughout the Anglo-Saxon period, notwithstanding the frequent inroads and conquests of the Danes; nay, these very Danes, who were closely related to the Saxons in manners and language, and had become completely amalgamated with them through the wise laws of Alfred and Canute, formed a powerful element in the Germanic population, which maintained its character even under the rule of the Normans.

42. The laws of Ina had ordered that the greater part of the large estates should be kept under cultivation; and the Angles have the merit of having first drained the extensive marshes of East Anglia, which thus became the most fertile portion of England. The breeding of cattle always constituted the chief employment among the Anglo-Saxons, but horticulture does not seem to have been neglected. All the regulations respecting the administration of the towns appear to have been the same as those among their countrymen on the continent, and there are in them scarcely any traces of Roman influence. The connection with Rome, both ecclesiastical and literary, which had never entirely ceased since the introduction of Christianity, became indeed more important after the time of Egbert; but the Saxon spirit of independence was ever struggling against the attempts of the papacy to establish its supremacy in England. The influence of Dunstan and the Benedictines seemed to pave the way more and more for this scheme, yet it could never be carried to the point which it had reached in France, even at a very early period. It was reserved for the Norman conquerors to draw England completely into the great ecclesiastical communion with Rome.

43. In regard to the literature of the Anglo-Saxon period, we cannot be surprised to find that many works, both in prose and in verse, were written in the Latin language, which had become the language of the learned ever since the introduction of Christianity by Roman missionaries. These Latin works, however, were mostly theological and historical. The earliest of these Latin writers is *Gildas*, a priest of Alcluyd (Dumbarton on the Clyde), who lived in the 6th century, and wrote a history of the Britons. *Nennius* of Bangor, who flourished in the 7th century, likewise wrote a little history of the Britons. *St. Columba*, the apostle of the Scots, wrote several theological treatises and poems. *Aldhelm* of Malmesbury, who died in 709, not only composed several Latin poems, on theological and ethical subjects, but also *Anglo-Saxon poems*, which, however, are now lost. King

Alfred ranked him among the best Anglo-Saxon poets. By far the most important among those early writers is **Beda**, surnamed *Venerabilis* (the Venerable Bede), a man of most extraordinary learning, considering the time in which he lived. He was born in 673 at Wearmouth, and spent nearly all his life in the monastery of that place, devoting himself to literary pursuits and devotional exercises. He wrote on a great many subjects in upwards of 30 different books, the most celebrated of which is his *Ecclesiastical History of the Anglian Nation*.

44. Among the prose works in the Anglo-Saxon language, the first place is due to the *Laws*, the *Chartres*, and the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, which extends from the middle of the 6th century to the middle of the 12th, having been continued after its first authors by contemporary writers, chiefly monks. Next in importance are the various translations into Anglo-Saxon by **King Alfred the Great**, which have already been mentioned (see p. 37), and to which we may add his translation of Pope Gregory's Pastoral Cure. Other remains of Anglo-Saxon prose are the *Tale of Apollonius of Tyre*, the *Colloquies and Homilies*, and other works by the abbot **Aelfric** of Canterbury. The Anglo-Saxons appear to have been specially fond of ballad and epic poetry, which they seem to have cultivated even before they came into England, but very little of it has come down to our time. Their oldest epic poem is *Beowulf*, probably composed before their immigration into England, and brought over to this country during the second half of the 5th century. Its author is unknown. **Caedmon**, a monk of Whitby, wrote a poetical paraphrase of portions of the Holy Scriptures. He died in 680. There are several other ballads and fragments of them, which are preserved in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. This brief sketch shows that the Anglo-Saxons were by no means wanting in literary culture. The conquest of England by the Normans checked its further development; but in its place there arose, under the influence of the French Normans, that Christian romantic poetry which forms so striking a feature of the Middle Ages.

QUESTIONS.

1. When, and by whom, were the Saxon kingdoms united? Mention how this union was effected. Which was the principal state of the Angles? By whom was it governed? What was the fate of its chief? What became of the kings and nobles when their dominions were united under one sceptre?

2. What new enemy now threatened to attack England? To what common stock did they belong? What was their religion? Who assisted the Normans in their attacks? What was the result? Who is supposed to have first called Britain Anglia?

3. By whom was Egbert succeeded? What was continued during his reign? What sort of disposition did Ethelwulf show? What was his great desire? How was he prevented from carrying it out? Name the children of Ethelwulf, and say what you know of the youngest of them. When Ethelwulf went to Rome, how did he spend his time? What donation did the Popes afterwards claim as a tribute? How did Ethelwulf divide his kingdom? In what year did he die?

4. Who succeeded Ethelwulf? What disposition did the new king show? How long did he reign?

5. What king now came to the throne? In what year did he die? What king succeeded Ethelbert? What was continued during this reign? Who was Edward the Martyr, and why was he called the martyr? Who assisted Ethelred to fight the Danes? When did Alfred the Great come to the throne?

6. Whose son was King Alfred? Since when had he borne the title of king?

7. What sort of education had Alfred received? From whom? Did he enjoy good health? What character did he show? What tribes now advanced as far as Wilton? How did the day end? How many battles followed in quick succession? To what agreement did the Danes at last come? Did the Danes keep their promises? How far did they extend their ravages? Where did Alfred besiege them? When, and for what reason did he cause a fleet to be built? What country was now attacked? To what straits was Alfred reduced? Mention some of the legends about the life he now led.

8. What course did he and his faith-

ful adherents pursue? With what success? What promises did the Danes make? What Danish chief with many of his followers became a Christian? What chief did Alfred adopt, and in what year did these events take place? Over what part of England did Athelstane rule, and what treaty was concluded between him and Alfred?

9. Why was Alfred again obliged to take up arms against the Danes? In what year did Athelstane die? With whom was the treaty which Alfred had made with him renewed? What two countries continued to be governed by Danes, but were afterwards recovered by Alfred?

10. Mention some of the most important services rendered by Alfred to his country in times of peace.

11. What means did King Alfred employ to induce his countrymen to encourage learning? What was his favourite employment in leisure hours? Name some of the works which he translated. What orders did he give as regards the sons of the nobility?

12. How did King Alfred measure his time? How did he divide, and regulate his revenues?

13. In what year did the Danes again disturb the peace? How long did the war last? In what year did Alfred die? How may his reign be characterised?

14. Who was King Alfred's successor? Who opposed the election of Edward the Elder? How did he maintain his position? What people rose in rebellion against him? How was Edward's time chiefly employed? Where, and in what year, did he die? Whom did Edward the Elder recommend as his successor? How long did Athelstane reign?

15. With whom did the Danes in Northumbria ally themselves? In what battle did Athelstane conquer them? How did Athelstane manage the internal affairs of his kingdom?

16. Who came to the throne on the death of Athelstane? What county did Edmund the Elder take from the Britons? To whom did he give it, and upon what conditions? How did Edmund meet with his end?

17. Who was now chosen king? Which countries took their oath of allegiance

to the new king? Which had to be forced into doing so? When did Edred die?

18. By what events is Edred's reign marked in history? Give some account of Dunstan.

19. What king was chosen as Edred's successor? How did the new king bring misfortune upon himself? Whom did Edwy marry? Give an account of what took place at his coronation, and mention to what protracted struggles it gave rise. What party sided with Queen Elgiva? Give their reasons for so doing. What plan was formed by this party? How did Edwy now conduct himself? What counties revolted, instigated by Dunstan? Who was proclaimed king in Mercia and Northumbria? Who was made the new king's chief counsellor? What became of Queen Elgiva? In what year did Edwy die?

20. What king succeeded Edwy, and united the whole kingdom? What did the new king do for his country?

21. What was the first Saxon conquest beyond the sea? When was Edgar crowned? When did he die?

22. Who was now chosen king? At whose suggestion was the new king elected? What party approved of his election? What party was against it? How did Edward meet with his end?

23. Who was now made king? How was he surnamed? Whose son was he? When did Dunstan die? In what way did the nation feel his loss? Give an account of the people who now attacked the English coasts. What province of France had been ceded to this people by Charles the Simple?

24. Through whose mediation, and in what year was peace concluded with the Normans? When was this peace broken? What promises did Ethelred make? Give an account of the tribute paid to the Danes. To what tax did it give rise? What kings attacked England a few years later? How did Ethelred get rid of them? Whom did Ethelred marry? How did the Danes view this marriage? What plot did they form? What steps did Ethelred take?

25. What steps did Sweyn of Denmark take after the massacre of the Danes? When, and upon what conditions, did he cease his attacks upon England?

26. In what year did Sweyn and his sons again land in England? How did the English receive them?

27. Where did Ethelred take refuge? Whose death allowed him to return to England? What war broke out on his return?

28. How, and under what circumstances, did Ethelred die?

29. Between what two kings was England divided? How did Edmund meet with his end?

30. What was now the condition of the nation? Who was unanimously elected king? Why did Canute marry Emma of Normandy? What other nation did he rule besides England?

31. How did Canute win the affections of the Anglo-Saxons? What pilgrimage did Canute make, and at whose coronation was he present? What kingdom did Canute unite under his sceptre with Denmark and England?

32. What other countries submitted to England in this reign? When did Canute die? Say something about his character.

33. Whom had Canute entrusted with the government of Denmark? Who was chosen King of Mercia and Northumbria? To whose share did the country south of the Thames fall? Give an account of the sons of Ethelred and Emma. What was the fate of the youngest of them? How did the last years of Harold's reign pass?

34. When did Harold die? Who succeeded Harold? What feelings did the Danes and Saxons entertain towards each other? Who was invited to spend some time at the English court? When did Hardicanute die?

35. Who succeeded Hardicanute? Did the new king accept the crown willingly? At whose especial persuasion did he do so? How did Edward come by the name of Confessor? How did Edward offend the Anglo-Saxons? What tax did he abolish?

36. For what reason was Earl Godwin sent into exile? Who brought about an understanding between him and the king, and what was the result?

37. What caused Edward to send Siward, Duke of Northumberland, to Scotland? In what relation did Scotland stand to England after this event? Give an account of what had become of Harold in the meantime. Why is Edward's name dear to every Englishman? Whom did he name as his successor?

38. Why was Harold crowned at York? Who was the only one that had laid claim to the throne besides him?

self? What people threatened to invade England, and at whose instigation? For what reason was this invasion contemplated?

39. Who tried to avert the war? In what year did William of Normandy with his followers land in England? And where was the great battle fought?

40. What was the result of this battle? What became of Harold and his brothers? What was the fate of England?

41. What was the state of intellectual culture at this period? What was the state of agriculture? What tribe had become amalgamated with the Saxons?

To what cause was this union owing?

42. Whose laws had ordered that the large estates should be kept cultivated? To what tribe is the merit of having first drained the marshes of East Anglia due? What was the chief employment of the Anglo-Saxons? What people drew England into the great ecclesiastical communion with Rome?

43. Mention some of the learned men during the Anglo-Saxon period who wrote in Latin, and what they wrote upon. Who is the most distinguished among them? Mention the most important works in the Anglo-Saxon tongue, and their authors

CHAPTER IV.

THE EARLY NORMAN KINGS.

1. William I. the Conqueror (1066-1087). Crowned King of England.

2. Difficulties of his position and his cruelty towards the Saxons. All high offices filled with Normans.

3. Attempts of Saxons to recover their independence.

4. Conspiracies of Normandy. New Danish invasion.

5. Domesday Book.

6. War with France and death of William.

7. His character. The New Forest, and forest laws.

8. State of the people, the French language. Connection with Rome. The Witenagemot abolished.

9. William Rufus (1087-1100). Disputes between him and his brothers as to the succession.

10. Lanfranc and Anselm. William's avarice; gains possession of Normandy; is killed by an accident in the New Forest. His dissolute life and unpopularity.

11. Henry I. (1100-1135). Conciliates the Saxon part of the population.

12. Takes his brother Robert prisoner, and compels the king of France to cede Brittany to him.

13. Dispute about the investiture.

14. Suppresses the rebellious spirit in Normandy, and gains all the French possessions of his father. His daughter Matilda, who had been married to Henry V. of Germany, marries the Count of Anjou. Henry dies in Normandy.

15. Character of Henry's reign.

16. Stephen (1155-1154), elected on account of his popularity with all parties.

17. Wars with Scotland and Wales. England weak, seeks the support of foreign mercenaries. The Norman barons strengthen themselves by erecting strong castles.

18. Matilda lands in England. Civil War.

19. Peace restored on the understanding that Henry of Anjou should succeed Stephen. On Stephen's death, the crown of England passes to the house of Anjou, or Plantagenet.

1. WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR—1066-1087.

1. THE terror inspired by the news of Harold's defeat and death for the moment completely paralysed the energy of the Anglo-Saxons, and the vanquished fled in all

directions. Some of the nobles, however, assembled in London, resolved to make a stand, and Stigand, archbishop of Canterbury, at their head proclaimed Edgar Atheling king. William was for some time detained in the south, but when at length he appeared before London, Stigand, with Edgar and all his noble followers, went to meet the conqueror, and tender their submission. William at first seemed to wait for some manifestation of the whole nation; but on the advice of the clergy he hastened his coronation, which was performed on Christmas-day in Westminster Abbey. Both the English and Norman nobility received the new king with general acclamation, and he then took the customary oath, promising to protect the church, to observe the laws, and to prevent acts of violence. He also confirmed the liberties of London and other cities, and left the Saxon nobles undisturbed in their dignities and estates; but those of the nobles who had fallen in the war were distributed among his Norman followers. He also confiscated all the private property of the Anglo-Saxon royal family, as well as of the principal adherents of Harold.

2. The position of the conqueror was indeed most difficult, surrounded as he was by a people who hated and detested him, and were ready at any moment to rise against him. But still things might gradually have settled down in peace, had not William thought it necessary to spend the greater part of his time in Normandy, leaving the administration of England in the hands of Normans, who by their reckless insolence and oppression goaded the people into rebellion. He left England the very year after the conquest, taking with him Edgar and other Saxon nobles to prevent any attempts at raising the legitimate heir to the throne. An insurrection broke out immediately afterwards, and William, hastily returning, began to treat the Saxons with

2. The Lombards, a Teutonic tribe, nearly akin to the Angles and Saxons, established a powerful kingdom in Italy about 568, which lasted till 774. They had gradually adopted Christianity and Italian civilization, and some of the most learned men of later times were descendants of the Lombards.

merciless oppression. Conspiracies were also formed by the sons of Harold, in which the kings of Scotland and Denmark and Edgar Atheling took part. Their scheme was indeed thwarted; but when in 1069 the Danes landed in the Humber, the garrison of York, consisting of 3000 Normans, was put to the sword, and William's dangers seemed to increase. But he again overcame all difficulties. His anger, however, was now roused: the whole country between the Humber and the Tees was laid waste, and a hundred thousand human lives are said to have been sacrificed. There now followed wholesale confiscations, by which he enriched himself and his followers, and many of the noblest Saxons who escaped from the sword took refuge in foreign countries. Nearly the whole of the Anglo-Saxon nobility was exterminated. All high offices of the church were filled with Normans, and Archbishop Stigand was deposed, his place being filled by the learned Lombard Lanfranc.

3. The Anglo-Saxons, however, did not give up all hope. Hereward, a brave Saxon, still believing it possible to deliver his country, fortified himself in what was called the "camp of refuge," in the Isle of Ely, where he was joined by other Saxon nobles. But William forced them to surrender. The sons of Harold, Edwin and Morcar, were put to death, Edgar Atheling who again made his submission was pardoned and allowed to retire into Normandy, while Hereward by his bravery won the admiration of William and received back his estates.

4. England now seemed completely subdued, but William had not only to contend with the conquered people,

4. In the year 1072, Syria and Palestine had fallen into the hands of the Seljuk Turcomans and other Turks, and the ill treatment which Christian pilgrims to the holy places in Palestine had to endure from the rude hordes of the Turks was one of the chief causes that led to the Crusades, the object of which was to rescue the land which had been the cradle of Christianity and its hallowed places from the hands of the infidels. The First Crusade was undertaken in 1096, and lasted till 1099, when Jerusalem was taken by storm by the Crusaders, who founded the kingdom of Jerusalem.

It was in the reign of William the Conqueror that Henry IV. of Germany became involved in a quarrel with Pope Gregory VII. He was excommunicated, and had to humble himself at Canossa before the Pope in 1077. But in 1084 Henry IV. was crowned at Rome by the opposition Pope Clement III., and banished Gregory, who, in 1085, died in exile at Salerno.

but also with the turbulence and lawlessness of his own Normans, who even went so far as to conspire against their own master. The plot, however, was discovered and easily put down. William's eldest son Robert, who had been entrusted with the administration of Normandy, also rose in rebellion against his father, and unwittingly nearly killed him: when he became aware of what he was about to do, he was filled with remorse and contrition, and was pardoned. It may be said that William throughout his reign never felt quite safe. Even during his last years the country was harassed sometimes by the Welsh, and once again by a Danish invasion, in consequence of which the king found it necessary to levy the odious impost of the Danegelt.

5. In the year 1086 the king convened a great diet at Sarum, at which all the freeholders of England had to take the oath of fealty to him, and were confirmed in their possessions. The means for convening this assembly was furnished by a document called *Domesday Book*, which had just then been completed, and which still exists in the Chapter House, in London. It contains an account of the lands in each county, the names of the king's direct feudatories and their sub-feudatories, the number of freemen, the revenues, and generally everything that seemed necessary to obtain a correct registration of the property in the country. The main object of this document was no doubt to ascertain how much revenue the royal treasury might derive from the country. The whole population of England seems at the time to have consisted of about 300,000 heads of families, and all together, perhaps, of two millions of souls. From this document we further see that William introduced into England the feudal system, which had been established in France long before.

6. During the last year of his life he was involved in a war with the King of France, and while he was riding among the burning ruins of Mantes, his horse stumbled and threw him with such violence that he sustained a serious injury; and feeling that his life was coming to

a close, he tried to overcome his fears of death by most ample bequests and presents to monasteries and churches, and by setting free some of those who were still languishing in prisons. He then regulated the affairs of his dominions, assigning to his son Robert Normandy and his other Continental dominions; to William Rufus, his second son, the kingdom of England; while the third son, Henry, received only a legacy of five thousand pounds of silver. At last the king died in consequence of the injury received amid the ruins of Mantes, on the 7th September 1087, and was buried in the church of St. Stephen at Caen.

7. William the Conqueror was one of the most powerful and prudent rulers of his time. Amid the greatest difficulties and dangers he had maintained his position for more than twenty years, among a people who cherished an invincible hatred to him and all his followers. This circumstance must be regarded as some palliation for his tyranny and cruelty towards the vanquished. He was passionately fond of hunting, and as the forests of England did not satisfy him, he created the "New Forest" near his palace at Winchester, for which churches and villages were razed to the ground. For the same reason his forest laws were of the severest kind, and whosoever killed a stag, a deer, or even a hare, was punished by having his eyes put out, while any one might atone for killing a man by a moderate fine.

8. The conquest of England produced vast changes: the native population was reduced to such poverty and wretchedness, that the very name of Saxon became a term of reproach, while most of the Saxon nobles had perished. None of the few remaining were allowed to rise to any position of honour. French, the language of the court, had become that of the church and the courts of law, and the Normans, in their insolent contempt of everything Saxon, would have liked to extinguish the national idiom altogether. But the great body of the people tenaciously clung to the tongue of their forefathers. Had it been otherwise, the English would have become,

like the Normans, a French speaking people. In ecclesiastical matters, England became closely connected with Rome, though William never allowed the church to encroach upon his own prerogatives. The ancient Witenagemot seems to have become extinct, and the councils which he did assemble consisted only of his own personal friends and partizans. Notwithstanding all this, the conquest of England by the Normans cannot be regarded as an unmitigated evil, for it gave to the country a strong government instead of the feeble and degraded dynasty of the Anglo-Saxons, and introduced a class of men who by their very pride and jealousy of the crown, at a later period, became the means of changing a despotic into a constitutional government.

2. WILLIAM RUFUS—1087-1100.

9. How completely the strong and unscrupulous hand of William the Conqueror had broken the spirit of the Saxons is clear from the fact that after his death the interests of Edgar Atheling and those of Harold's sons were entirely ignored, and that the arrangements of the Conqueror were acquiesced in, in spite of ancient usage. William, the Conqueror's second son, surnamed Rufus, that is red-haired, was now twenty-five years old. Provided with his father's letter to Lanfranc, his former tutor, he proceeded to England, and the archbishop, anxious to avoid anything like an election, without delay crowned William Rufus in Westminster Abbey, after exacting from him a promise that he would govern according to law, cherish mercy, protect the church, and follow his advice. Both the Norman nobles and the Saxons without hesitation took the customary oath, but many of the former residing in Normandy conspired to raise their own duke, Robert, to the English throne. William well understood that the Saxons must be his main support against them, and accordingly promised to enact just and mild laws, to abolish unjust taxes, and the like. With the help of the Saxons, who rejoiced at the entire separation of England from Normandy, William not only

repelled the partizans of his brother in England, but by an expedition into Normandy he obtained the cession of a portion of that country, and the two brothers then agreed that, if either of them died without issue, the other should succeed him in his dominions. Henry, the Conqueror's third son, thinking himself injured by this compact, threw himself into the fortress of Mount St. Michael, in which he was besieged by Robert, and soon compelled to take to flight, after which he spent several years in exile.

10. Lanfranc, who had always guided the councils of William Rufus, died in 1089, and from this moment the king's tyrannical disposition and avarice displayed themselves more and more without restraint. Desirous to enrich himself at the expense of the church, he did not fill the vacant see of Canterbury until, after the lapse of four years, a dangerous illness induced him to give the archbishopric to Anselm, a priest highly honoured for his learning and piety. Anselm, already in his sixty-first year, reluctantly accepted the dignity, but once in possession he manfully defended what he considered the rights of the church. Finding that he was struggling in vain against the avarice and arbitrary proceedings of the king, he resolved to go to Rome to solicit the assistance of the Pope. During Anselm's absence the king again usurped the estates and revenues of the archbishop. About the same time he also succeeded in gaining possession of Normandy; for Robert, wishing to take part in the first crusade, mortgaged his duchies of Normandy and Maine for ten thousand merks to his brother William, which sum the latter extorted with violence from churches and monasteries. But his attempt to enlarge his dominions in France proved a failure. He unexpectedly met his death, in 1100, while hunting in the New Forest: an arrow shot by Walter Tyrrel accidentally flew into the king's

10. The principal heroes in this First Crusade (from 1096 to 1099) were Godfrey of Bouillon, Baldwin, Raimond of Toulouse, Robert of Normandy, brother of William Rufus, Boemond of Tarentum, and Tancred of Brindisi. In 1099, the kingdom of Jerusalem was established.

breast and killed him. It was rumoured, however, that he had been murdered, and this was the more readily believed, because he was hated by the people on account of his dissolute life, his luxury, and his oppression of the church and his subjects. He had never been married, but had spent his life surrounded by courtzans.

3. HENRY I.—1100-1135.

11. Henry I., surnamed Beauclerc, that is, the Scholar, immediately took possession of the crown to which he had a legitimate claim by the regulations of his father, though it was contrary to the compact concluded between William and Robert. For this reason Henry thought it advisable to form a strong party for himself by liberal promises to the church, the barons, and the people. After he had taken the usual coronation oath, he secured the goodwill of the clergy by filling the sees which had been vacant for some time, and by recalling Anselm. He then issued a proclamation, promising to all his English subjects to follow the laws of the good king Edward the Confessor, with those alterations made by his father with the advice of his barons. The Saxon portion of his subjects was further conciliated by his marrying Matilda, the niece of Edgar Atheling and daughter of the Scottish king Malcolm.

12. Some of the Norman chiefs, however, not approving of this policy, again tried to raise his brother, duke Robert, to the throne. But the light-headed and good-natured Robert, seeing that the Saxons remained faithful to Henry, contented himself with the recovery of Normandy. Some years later, however, in 1106, he not only lost his duchy, but having become involved in a feud with his brother, he was taken prisoner in the battle of Tenchebray, in Brittany, and remained in captivity for twenty-eight years until his death. Henry vigorously coerced his vassals in France, and even King Louis VI. of France, after a long contest, in the peace of Gisors ceded to him the province of Brittany.

influence of Stephen's brother, who was bishop of Winchester. When at length the Pope also confirmed the election of the clergy and the people, Stephen promised to protect the rights of the church and to observe the laws of the good king Edward the Confessor. Even the barons in Normandy showed themselves little inclined to favour the Count of Anjou, and Stephen thus felt himself pretty secure in his possessions without going across to Normandy.

4. STEPHEN—1135-1154.

17. The reign of Stephen, which lasted for nearly twenty years, was an almost uninterrupted succession of petty wars against Scotland and Wales, and of internal feuds and acts of violence, whereby the country fell into a state of disorder and anarchy. Stephen in these troubles had to rely chiefly upon foreign mercenaries from Flanders and Brittany, whose insolence and violence offended the Norman barons. The king's own weakness and his doubtful right of succession also called forth disturbances in England. A conspiracy of Saxons, to rid themselves of their Norman oppressors, was fortunately frustrated; but the Norman barons, and afterwards the clerical dignitaries also, endeavoured to secure themselves by erecting strong and fortified castles all over the country, which were little better than robbers' dens. From them they frequently sallied forth, plundered and maltreated the Saxon people in the most barbarous and cruel manner.

17. In the reign of Stephen we first hear of the quarrels of the Guelphs and Ghibellines, two parties which distracted the German Empire. In a competition for the imperial crown between Conrad of Franconia and Henry of Saxony (surnamed the Lion), the latter, representing the Guelph interest, was supported by the Pope. The quarrel was fought out chiefly in Italy.

The reign of Stephen also witnessed the Second Crusade, which lasted from 1147 to 1149, and during which the Emperor Conrad and Louis VII. of France in vain besieged Damascus.

A short time before the reign of Stephen two military and religious orders had been established, in 1118 the Knights Templars were instituted at Jerusalem for the protection of the pilgrims to the Holy Land, and in 1124 the Knights Hospitallers for the care of sick pilgrims. They soon after became a military knighthood under the name of Knights of St. John, and spread over every part of Europe. After the loss of Palestine, their headquarters were at first in the island of Cyprus, and afterwards in that of Rhodes.

18. Under these circumstances Matilda of Anjou, supported by her brother Robert of Gloucester, landed in England, 1139, where now she even succeeded in enlisting the support of Stephen's own brother, the bishop of Winchester, and other powerful ecclesiastics whom the king had offended in his endeavours to restrain their lawless conduct. In an unsuccessful battle, near Lincoln in 1141, the king became the prisoner of Robert, and the bishop of Winchester even induced the clergy to recognise Matilda as the lawful sovereign; the English people, however, continued their strong aversion to the House of Anjou. The bishop of Winchester, at this time papal legate in England, indignant at Matilda's refusal to restore the captive king to freedom, now turned against her and caused her to be besieged at Winchester. She escaped, but her brother and champion was taken prisoner. She now consented to an exchange in which both Stephen and Robert were set free. The civil war, however, continued fiercer than ever for five long years, during which Robert recovered Normandy and the western half of England for his sister. In 1147, Matilda's son, Henry of Anjou, and Stephen's son Eustace, began to take part in the struggle, which was carried on with varying success. Stephen himself showed so little ability that even after the death of Robert he was unable to secure his throne.

19. When at length his son Eustace died, the desire of peace after so much bloodshed led the bishop of Win-

19. During the reign of the Norman kings, literature had little chance of being successfully cultivated; but there were imported into England, from France, Italy, and Spain, romances or tales of the wonderful exploits of chivalrous kings and knights, such as Alexander the Great, King Arthur, Charlemagne, the Spanish Cid, and others. History, however, continued to be cultivated in the form of chronicles, some of which display the most extraordinary credulity. Some were written in French and in verse, and others in Latin. The French chronicles were of course written for the use of Normans, but were afterwards translated. Geoffrey of Monmouth (in the 12th century), William of Malmesbury (1067-1141), Henry of Huntingdon (died 1154), and others, wrote their works in Latin. The ancient Anglo-Saxon tongue was in that state of transformation which was little fitted for literary purposes, though it still maintained its vigorous life among the people, until, about two centuries later, it assumed its permanent form. It even then remained essentially Saxon, and the French, which was engrafted upon it, had to obey the laws of the Saxon tongue.

chester and the archbishop of Canterbury to negotiate a treaty, whereby Stephen was recognised by Henry of Anjou and his followers as king of England, while Henry himself was to be his successor. Henry, through his marriage with Eleanor, the divorced wife of Louis VII. of France, had obtained Poitou and Guienne, in addition to his duchy of Normandy and Anjou. Thus the future king of England was at the same time a powerful ruler over a great part of France. The castles erected by the nobles were to be given up to Stephen, but as he had been obliged to dismiss most of his foreign mercenaries, he was unable to effect this object, and he soon after died, in October, 1154. His second son remained in the undisputed possession of the county of Boulogne, which he inherited from his mother, but the crown of England now passed to the House of Anjou, which in history bears the name of Plantagenet, so called from *planta genista* (a kind of Spanish broom), which the founder of the house had worn on his helmet during the crusade.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the effect caused by Harold's defeat upon the nation? Whom did the Anglo-Saxons proclaim king? How did Edgar Atheling and his followers receive the Conqueror? Where was William crowned? How did the nation receive the news of his coronation? What steps did William take after his coronation?

2. What was the position of the Conqueror? Where did William spend the greater part of his time? In whose hands did he leave the administration of England? What was the result? What conspiracies were formed, and by whom? What became of the Norman garrison at York? What part of England did William lay waste? What became of the Anglo-Saxon nobility? What archbishop was deposed? Who filled his place?

3. What brave Saxon tried to save his country? Where did he and other Saxon nobles fortify themselves? Mention what became of them, and what treatment they met with from William.

4. What people gave William trouble

besides those conquered in England? What plot was formed, and with what success? What prince rose in rebellion against William? What part of his dominions had William given him to govern? What caused this prince to be filled with remorse? What people troubled England during the last years of William's reign? What tax was William obliged to levy?

5. Where, and in what year, and for what purpose was a diet convened? What is the Domesday Book? What was the population of England at this time? What do we further learn from this document?

6. What was the last war in which William was engaged? What accident befel him? What was the consequence of it? What sons had he? What did he bequeath to each? When did William die? Where was he buried?

7. What was William's character as a ruler? What was his chief amusement? What forest did he create? Mention what you know of his forest laws.

8. What were the effects of William's reign? To what position was the Saxon nobility reduced? How far was the French language extended? What prevented the English from becoming a French speaking nation? What was the relation of England to the Papacy? What had become of the Witenagemot? What benefit did the Norman conquest confer upon England?

9. Whose interests were ignored after William's death? What did this show? Who was crowned king? In what year? How was the new king surnamed? What does Rufus mean? What promise did the archbishop exact from him? What conspiracy was formed? Upon whom did William Rufus rely as his main support? Whom did William repel in England? What success did he meet with in Normandy? To what agreement did he come with his brother? What prince felt himself injured? Mention what became of him.

10. Who had always guided the councils of William Rufus? When did Lanfranc die? How did William conduct himself after the archbishop's death? Who was made archbishop? What caused Anselm to go to Rome, and with what object did he go? How did the king act during his absence? Of what country did William now gain possession? How did this come about? How did William Rufus meet with his death? In what year? What was rumoured as regards his death?

11. Who succeeded William Rufus? Why did Henry find it necessary to form a strong party for himself? What means did he employ? What archbishop did he recall? What proclamation did he issue? How did he conciliate the Saxon portion of his subjects?

12. Who did not approve of this policy? Whom did some Norman chiefs wish to get the throne? How did Robert act? In what feud did he become engaged later? How did he end his life? What French king ceded Brittany to Henry?

13. What is the right of investiture? What dispute as regards the investiture took place between Anselm and the king? How did this dispute end? In what year was a mutual understanding come to?

14. What obliged King Henry to spend much time in France? What was

the result of his remaining there? Whose succession was sanctioned by the English and Norman barons? What was the fate of King Henry's son? In what year did he die? How did Prince William's death affect his father? Who was Henry's sole remaining child? Who was her first husband? After his death what arrangement was come to as to the succession? How did Henry break the promises he had made regarding his daughter? When, and where did Henry die?

15. How had King Henry won for himself the name of Lion of Justice? Why was he a true Norman?

16. What was the feeling in England regarding the succession of Matilda? What report was spread? Who was the nearest heir to the throne? Who was made king during Theobald's absence in Normandy? How was Stephen's succession viewed? What promises did Stephen make? How did the Norman barons feel towards Stephen?

17. In what year did Stephen come to the throne? How long did he reign? What wars continued during Stephen's reign? On whose assistance did Stephen rely? What caused disturbances in England? What conspiracy was formed? How did the Norman barons, and afterwards the clerical dignitaries try to secure themselves?

18. When did Matilda of Anjou land in England? By whom was she supported? In what battle was the king taken prisoner by Robert of Gloucester? Who were induced to recognise Matilda as sovereign? Who now turned against Matilda? For what reason? Where was she besieged? What became of her brother? To what did Matilda now consent? How long did the civil war continue? What did Robert gain for himself and his sister? Who took part in the struggle in 1147?

19. What treaty was concluded, and by whom? Who was recognised King of England? Who was to be the king's successor? Through what marriage had Henry obtained two provinces in France in addition to Normandy and Anjou? Name them. What was to be given up to Stephen? What prevented it? In what year did Stephen die? To what House did the crown of England pass? What does Plantagenet signify?

CHAPTER V.

THE PLANTAGENET KINGS.

1. Henry II. (1154-1189). His first measures inspired hopes that he would rule according to law.
2. Pope Hadrian admonishes Henry to conquer Ireland. Thomas à Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury.
3. Aims of the Archbishop. The Clarendon Constitutions.
4. Becket, summoned before a council at Northampton, escapes into France, which involved England in war with that country. Becket, appointed papal legate in England, threatens Henry with excommunication.
5. Becket returns to England and excommunicates several bishops. Becket murdered at Canterbury.
6. Henry and the murderers.
7. State of Ireland. Henry is recognised by the King of Ulster, and the greater part of Ireland does homage to the English king.
8. Henry declares his innocence of the murder of à Becket, and promises to abolish the Clarendon Constitutions.
9. Henry makes a pilgrimage to the shrine of à Becket. Troubles in Henry's family. Battle of Alnwick. Scotland does homage to the English king.
10. Henry strengthens the self-government of towns and corporations. At the same time he maintains the administration of the law and makes England respected.
11. Henry's quarrels with his sons, which lead to a humiliating peace with France.
12. General character of Henry's reign.
13. Richard I. (1189-1199). Murder of Jews at his coronation in London and elsewhere.
14. Richard joins the Crusaders, and for that purpose sells lands and honours. The bishop of Ely appointed regent in his absence.
15. Jealousy between Richard and Philip Augustus of France. Arbitrary proceedings of the regent.
16. Proceedings of his brother John. Richard a prisoner of Henry VI. in Germany. Richard, set free by the verdict of the Diet at Worms, returns to England. John is pardoned.
- 17 and 18. Account of Richard's captivity in Germany.
19. General character of Richard's reign.
20. John (1199-1216). Discontent with his succession allayed.
21. John refuses to acknowledge the King of France as his feudal superior. John is charged with the murder of his rebellious nephew Arthur, and refusing again to appear before the French king and to clear himself from the charge, is declared a parriocide. War with France. John has to give up all his possessions in France.
22. Conflict with Pope Innocent III. John offends both the barons and the clergy.
23. Conflict with the papacy continued. John excommunicated. Scotland, Ireland, and Wales again reduced to a state of dependence on England.
24. John deposed and the English crown promised to the King of France. But John submits to the Pope and receives his crown back at the hands of the papal legate.
25. John's attack upon Poitou; he gains some advantages, but is routed in the battle of Bovines, and has to abandon several of his French possessions.
26. Rising of the barons against John. Magna Charta.
27. John endeavours to annul the privileges granted in the Magna Charta. The crown offered to the King of France. War between him and John.
28. Death of John.
29. General character of John's reign.
30. Henry III. (1216-1272). The Earl of Pembroke appointed his guardian and protector of the kingdom. Prince Louis quits England, and a truce is concluded.
31. The Bishop of Winchester contrives to become the young king's guardian. Influx of Frenchmen into England. Opposition of the barons. First beginnings of Parliament.
32. Henry's violation of the Great Charter and extortions. General discontent. Simon de Montfort. Poitou given up to the French.
33. Peace concluded in which all claims on Normandy and Poitou are given up. Henry's extravagance and resistance of the barons. The Oxford statutes. Regular Parliaments.

34. Henry attempts to recover his authority. Civil War. Battle of Lewes, King Henry and his brother taken prisoners.
35. Montfort, all powerful, summons a Parliament to settle the affairs of the kingdom.
36. Renewed hostilities. Battle of Evesham, Montfort killed.
37. The king's authority re-established. The Oxford statutes abolished, and general submission of the barons.
38. General view of Henry's reign.
39. Edward I. (1272-1307). Remains some time abroad before his coronation.
40. Devotes his attention to the internal affairs of the kingdom. The statute of Mortmain.
41. War against and conquest of Wales.
42. Incorporation of Wales with England. Prince of Wales.
43. Administration of justice. All Jews expelled from England.
44. Edward covets Scotland. Affairs of that country. Baliol acknowledges Edward as his feudal superior.
45. Edward involved in war with France; Baliol joins France. Edward takes the field against the Scots. Battle of Dunbar. Warenne is made governor of Scotland. Death of Baliol.
46. War with France continued. William Wallace. Warenne defeated near Stirling. Defeat of the Scots near Falkirk.
47. Peace with France enables Edward to direct all his forces against Scotland. Wallace put to death.
48. Comyn and Bruce. Fresh efforts for independence. Bruce defeated, but continues the war. Death of Edward.
49. General view of the reign of Edward I.
50. Edward II. (1307-1327). Bad influence of Piers de Gaveston on the young king. Gaveston's insolence towards the nobles leads to his banishment. Is recalled. The ordainers and their ordinances.
51. Gaveston taken prisoner and put to death.
52. Bruce recovers Scotland. Battle of Bannockburn, in which the English are defeated. Truce of two years.
53. Hugh de Spenser, another favourite of the king, exasperates the nobles. This leads to a civil war, in which the king is victorious. Bruce recognised as King of Scotland.
54. Queen Isabella and Roger Mortimer. She invades England. Edward takes to flight, and is compelled to abdicate. He is imprisoned and tortured to death.
55. Edward III. (1327-1377). A regency, headed by the Earl of Lancaster, is appointed.
56. Bruce invades England; Scotland becomes entirely independent. Insolence of Mortimer. Kent, the king's uncle, executed. Edward now takes the government into his own hands.
57. Mortimer put to death. Isabella imprisoned for life.
58. Affairs of Scotland, which is supported by France.
59. Edward resolves to conquer France. Two expeditions against France, but Edward has to conclude a truce.
60. Renewal of the war with France. Battle of Crecy.
61. David Bruce invades England, is taken prisoner. Edward besieges Calais, which surrenders after a long siege. Truce with France.
62. The black death. War with France resumed. Victory at Poitiers, where the French king is made prisoner. At last peace is concluded, in which Edward becomes absolute sovereign of some parts of France.
63. The Black Prince interferes in the affairs of Castile. Assumes the title of King of France. Decline of the English power in France. Death of Edward III.
64. General view of his reign.
65. Richard II. (1377-1399). During his minority a regency is appointed, but the government is in the hands of his uncles, the Dukes of Lancaster and Gloucester.
66. England is attacked by the French and Scots. Oppression by taxation. Wat Tyler's rebellion. Demands of the rebels granted, but afterwards revoked.
67. Wars with France and Scotland continued.
68. The king, guided by two favourites, becomes very unpopular. The favourites take to flight. Battle of Otterbourne.
69. Truce with France prolonged.
70. Assassination of the Duke of Gloucester at Calais. The regency done away with, and Richard undertakes the government. The Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk. Insurrection of the former. Richard is forced to abdicate. Death of Richard.
71. General view of his reign. John Wycliffe. Relation of England to the papacy. Geoffrey Chancer.

1. HENRY II.—1514-1189.

1. When Henry II., in consequence of the contract made with Stephen, became his successor, he was only twenty-two years old, but already in possession of very extensive domains in France; the young monarch was endowed by nature with excellent abilities, which he used in the best way to enlarge his powers. When he heard of the death of Stephen he was engaged in quelling some disturbances which had arisen in France against Louis VII., but he immediately proceeded to England to take possession of the kingdom. He was received with enthusiasm, and in December 1154, he was crowned at Westminster by the archbishop of Canterbury, and soon after assembled the great nobles at his court. His first acts at this meeting inspired every one with the best hopes, for he confirmed the liberties of the city of London, and measures were taken to get rid of the remaining foreign mercenaries, and to destroy the castles erected by the nobles for the purpose of oppressing and plundering the surrounding country. Henry further resumed the crown lands which had been given away by his feeble predecessor. These last measures he carried out in person at the head of an army, and his subjects were thereby confirmed in the hope that the king would rule according to the laws of Henry I., and everywhere maintain peace and justice. At another meeting in the following year he caused his nobles to take the oath of allegiance both to himself and his two sons, who, however, did not survive him. For some time Henry II. was engaged in wars against the Welsh and the Scots, who were making inroads in the north of England, but at the close of the campaign he left to the King of Scotland the earldom of Huntingdon.

2. It so happened that a few days before Henry's coronation Hadrian IV., an Englishman, had been raised to the papal throne; he now issued a bull, probably at

2. Hadrian IV. (his real name was Nicholas Breakspere), was raised to the papacy in 1154, which he occupied till 1159.

Henry's own suggestion, by which the King of England was authorised and admonished to conquer Ireland, the object being to connect that island more closely with the see of Rome. But before Henry could engage in this enterprise he had to contend with his brother Geoffrey, who maintained that, by an ordinance of his father, he had a right to all the family possessions in France. Geoffrey, however, was soon obliged to give up his pretensions and to be satisfied with a pension. But the feuds in France continued, Henry endeavouring to secure to himself districts belonging to other members of his family. In these acts of aggrandisement he was supported during the first years of his reign by his chancellor, Thomas à Becket, who, by his adroitness and amiable disposition, had so won the affections of the king that in 1162 he was raised to the archbishopric of Canterbury. The king hoped that Becket, in his high ecclesiastical position, would remain his friend and assist him in his endeavours to establish a proper relation between the secular and ecclesiastical powers.

3. The king was all the more justified in this hope because Becket, the son of a London citizen, was the first Saxon since the Norman conquest who had been raised to such high honours; but Becket, when he had once entered upon his office, steadily pursued but one object—to raise the power of his own order. With this view he at once resigned the office of chancellor in order to be more independent of the court. He led personally a most austere life, and thus surrounded himself with the halo of sanctity. The clergy at that time were notorious for many crimes and misdemeanours, and the king was specially desirous to have such offences tried by lay courts; but Becket maintained that no layman could judge a priest. As, however, a considerable number of English bishops were opposed to this doctrine, Becket declared himself ready to yield. As this, however, was done in a somewhat evasive manner, the king resolved, in 1164, to summon a meeting of his barons and the higher clergy at Clarendon, near Salisbury, in order to

determine what were the ancient customs of the kingdom in ecclesiastical matters. The assembly passed sixteen articles known by the name of the *Clarendon Constitutions*. The chief provisions were that a priest accused of crime should be tried by a secular court, that no priest should quit the country without the king's permission, that the revenues of vacant bishoprics should belong to the king, and that they should be filled up by the clergy convened by the king, subject to his approval. In fact, all provisions of these Constitutions aimed at restricting the privileges of the clergy.

4. Becket was the only one of the bishops present who refused to recognise the validity of the resolutions, though in the end he signed and sealed the document. But no sooner had he left the assembly than he began to repent of what he had done. It was evident that the national customs of the Saxons had come into violent collision with the papal decrees, and several attempts were made to bring about a reconciliation. In October of the same year the king summoned a great council at Northampton, before which Becket was summoned to account for his not having appeared in a suit instituted against him. When, after a long discussion, he was found guilty, he appealed to the Pope and secretly made his escape to France, where he obtained the protection of the king, while Henry in the meantime enjoyed the revenues of the archbishopric. Becket was six years absent from England, and King Louis' protection of him led to a war with France, in which Henry gained some advantages. While in Rome, Becket resigned his dignity of archbishop into the hands of the Pope, who, however, restored it to him, and in addition appointed him papal legate for England. Becket now acted with greater vehemence against Henry: he excommunicated the bishops who were opposed to him, and even threatened the king with an interdict and excommunication. In the meantime negotiations were continued, but when Henry II. refused

4. The king of France here mentioned is Louis VII., surnamed the Younger, who reigned from 1137 till 1179.

a complete reconciliation with Becket, the Pope himself threatened him with interdict.

5. Owing to the mediation of Louis of France, Henry at length consented to Becket returning to his archbishopric, but without any allusion to the Clarendon Constitutions. Becket returned to England in December 1170; but as those who had taken possession of the archbishop's estates refused to give them back, he at once pronounced excommunication against them. Three bishops who were excommunicated now repaired to the king, who was then staying in Normandy, and by informing him of what had happened irritated him so much that he exclaimed, "Is there no one who will rid me of this intriguing priest?" These words were caught up by four courtiers; they secretly hastened across the sea, and the king's messengers sent after them were unable to overtake them. On their arrival at Canterbury they vehemently demanded of the archbishop to recall the sentence pronounced upon the bishops who were faithful to their king. Becket refused gently but firmly, and although his adversaries now threatened violence, he could not be prevailed upon to take to flight. Some monks then dragged him into the church, where, as they thought, he would be safe. With calmness he awaited his enemies, and when they again with threats pressed him to recall his excommunication, he replied: "I fear neither you nor your swords." A blow was then aimed at him, and while commending his spirit to God he received a second blow which broke his skull. The murderers then plundered his palace and rode off. This terrible deed was done on the 29th December 1170, and a little more than two years later Becket was canonised as a saint and martyr.

6. Henry II. knew well that this crime only injured his cause: for three days he shut himself up without taking any food, and then sent an embassy to Rome to clear himself from the suspicion of having been the instigator of the murder. Pope Alexander III. ordered

6. Alexander III., one of the most distinguished Popes, occupied the Holy See from 1159 till 1181, as the successor of Hadrian IV.

an enquiry to be instituted. The murderers were at once excommunicated; but when afterwards they appeared in Rome full of repentance and contrition, they were ordered to do penance by joining the crusaders, and going to the Holy Land.

7. After these events Henry II. turned his attention to Ireland. Ever since the eighth century, Danes and Norwegians had settled in that island, and the natives, disunited among themselves, had facilitated the settling of foreigners among them. Irish kings, however, continued to govern by far the greater part of the country. The Christianity of the Irish had some things peculiar, and was independent of the Roman see. Even in the times of William the Conqueror and Henry I. the Popes had wished to draw Ireland into connection with the Roman church. When the papal bull empowered Henry II. to subdue Ireland, he was engaged by other and more pressing business, but now a favourable opportunity offered itself for carrying out the Pope's design. One of the Irish kings having been expelled, sought the protection of Henry II., and an English adventurer, Earl Richard, surnamed Strongbow, accompanied by others, made conquests in the east of the island, which, in 1171, he surrendered to the English king, but which he received back as tenant in chief of the English crown. In the same year Henry himself landed in Ireland, and all the princes, with the exception of the King of Ulster, recognised him as their superior. The Irish clergy also took the oath of allegiance to the King of England, who, at a synod presided over by a papal legate, caused the rites and customs different from those of the Roman church to be abolished. Although the greater part of Ireland had thus become subject to the English crown, it was manifest that the chiefs of the nation little intended to give up their own authority.

8. After his return from Ireland, Henry II. asserted, upon a solemn oath before the papal legate, that he was innocent of the murder of Becket, and at the same time promised to abolish all the articles of the Clarendon

Constitutions which were not based upon ancient customs, or had originated in his own reign. He obtained, however, one important concession, viz., that without his consent, henceforth no appeal should be made to Rome.

9. After the canonization of Becket in 1173, Henry made a pilgrimage to his tomb for the purpose of showing his sorrow and doing penance. By this public humiliation before the remains of the revered martyr, the king gained great popularity. But troubles now broke out in the royal family. At the instigation of Queen Eleanor, who was offended by the king's infidelities, Henry, the king's eldest son, defied his authority, and caused great disturbances both in England and France; but King Henry, with the assistance of his knights and mercenaries, soon crushed the rebellious spirit, and young Henry was forced to submit to his father. William, surnamed the Lion, king of Scotland, also took part in these feuds, but was conquered and taken prisoner in a battle at Alnwick, and recovered his freedom only by ceding a portion of Scotland and doing homage to the King of England. The Scottish clergy, also, had to acknowledge the supremacy of the English church. The English rebels likewise submitted, and as Henry's sons also returned to obedience and did homage for their possessions in France and Ireland, there now followed some years of peace, during which the king devoted himself to the organization and administration of the internal affairs of his kingdom.

10. His anxiety to maintain peace and justice led him, like his grandfather, Henry I., to regard the Saxon element as the surest foundation of his power, and to introduce truly national institutions. By the Clarendon Constitutions he had saved the independence of the English church; and he now strengthened the self-government of towns, developed the system of trial by jury, secured

9. Eleanor had previously been married to Louis VII. of France, to whom her conduct was anything but satisfactory; and having been divorced on the alleged ground of the near relationship to her husband, she had married Henry two years before his accession to the throne.

10. It seems to have been about this time that London became the capital of England, Winchester having been nearly destroyed during the wars in Stephen's reign. Philip Augustus reigned in France from 1180 to 1204.

the means of defending England against foreign aggression, and especially promoted the interests of cities, and, above all, of London, by the strict administration of justice, and favouring the institutions of corporations and guilds. In short, he employed the time of peace with energy and prudence, to strengthen his own authority, and to gain the respect of both his subjects and of the neighbouring nations. His two daughters were married to foreign kings, and his five sons were placed in pretty independent positions, but they showed little gratitude for the confidence reposed in them by their father.

11. The old jealousy between his two sons, Henry and Richard, led to a series of severe struggles, in which the father sided with Richard. Young Henry died during the war, in 1183. Not long afterwards Richard also quarrelled with his father because he spoiled, and on every occasion showed a preference for, his youngest son John. The king also fell out with Geoffrey, who, however, died in 1186. Henry II. had intended to undertake a crusade, but the faithlessness of his sons, and the interference of King Philip Augustus of France in these disputes, prevented him from carrying out the pledge to fight against the infidels. In the end the French king, with the assistance of Richard and John, the latter of whom now likewise showed a rebellious spirit against his father, compelled King Henry to conclude an inglorious peace. The king, broken-hearted, survived this sorrow only a few days, and none but a natural son, who alone remained faithful to him, was present at his death-bed in 1189. Only two of his legitimate sons, Richard and John, survived him, and they in succession occupied the throne of England after him.

12. Henry II. displayed during his life an unwearied

11. The Third Crusade was undertaken in 1189 and lasted till 1192, because Jerusalem had been taken in 1187 from the Christians by Saladin, the Sultan of Egypt.

12. It was in the reign of Henry II. that the long protracted struggle between the German Emperor and the Republics in the north of Italy was brought to a close by the peace of Constance, 1183. The Third Crusade was undertaken in the year in which Henry II. died, and in the very next year the Emperor Frederick Barbarossa perished in the river Calycadnus.

activity, but was often led away by passion; he vigorously, though not without harshness, controlled the countries subject to his sceptre. His interest for literature was shown by his surrounding himself with the most eminent men of the time, both scholars and poets.

2. RICHARD I.—1189-1199.

13. Richard I., surnamed Cœur de Lion, that is, lion-hearted, was thirty-two years old when his father died; he had already possessed for many years Aquitaine and Poitou. He followed his father's body to the grave with deep repentance for what he had done, and hastened to Rouen to obtain the absolution of his sin. To his younger brother John, he left the possessions entrusted to him by his father; he retained the wisest of his father's counsellors, and released his mother Eleanor from the confinement in which she had been kept by her husband for many a year, entrusting her at the same time with the regency of England. He then hastened to London to receive the crown; his coronation became the unfortunate occasion of a cruel persecution. Several wealthy Jews who had pressed forward in the crowd to see the king were murdered; and as the people, not only of England but of all Europe, were at that time fanatically excited against unbelievers of every description, the example of London was imitated in many other places, where Jews were indiscriminately murdered. Richard's attempts to stop these cruel proceedings were of no avail.

14. Soon after his coronation, the king resolved to undertake a crusade against the Saracens in the Holy Land, and for this purpose he amassed as much money as he could: rights and privileges were openly sold, and whoever gave money obtained lands and honours; even the king of Scotland bought his exemption from doing homage to Richard for the small sum of ten thousand marks. When, on the 12th of December 1190, the king

14. The crusade which Richard joined is the third, from 1189 to 1192. It was also joined by the Emperor Frederick Barbarossa and Philip Augustus, king of France.

set out, he appointed his favourite, William, bishop of Ely, surnamed Longchamp, regent of the kingdom, leaving to him the uncontrolled administration, adding to his dignity of chancellor that of grand justiciary, and procuring him the powers of a papal legate.

15. Richard undertook the crusade in conjunction with Philip Augustus of France, their united forces amounting to one hundred thousand men. But there soon arose between them a feeling of jealousy, each wishing to appear as the first champion of Christendom. On his arrival in Sicily, he further offended the French king by his betrothal with Berengaria of Navarre, whom he took with him to the Holy Land, and married in the isle of Cyprus. Even before he left Sicily he heard of the arbitrary proceedings of William of Ely, which induced him to send commissioners to England to inquire into his conduct. But these commissioners did not even dare to present their letters to the offender. Meanwhile, his brother John, whom he had treated only with too much kindness, thinking it improbable that his bold and audacious brother would ever return, began to aim at the throne for himself. Richard before his departure had recognised his nephew, Arthur, son of his elder brother Geoffrey, as his successor. With the assistance of the barons and the citizens of London, John tried to overthrow the Bishop of Ely, who, by his insolence and arbitrary doings, had drawn upon himself universal hatred. Even Philip Augustus was not foreign to John's scheme, but the queen-mother Eleanor successfully maintained the authority of Richard, and William of Ely took to flight.

16. When, at length, the news arrived that Richard was a prisoner in Germany, John went so far as to declare to the French king that he would not conclude any peace with his brother without the consent of Philip Augustus, in return for which John was to have the kingdom of England and his brother's French possessions.

16. Henry VI. of Germany, the successor of Frederick Barbarossa, reigned from 1190 to 1197.

But the lawful king's authority was again maintained by Eleanor and Archbishop Walter, who had been appointed grand justiciary. The Pope also was induced to threaten the disturbers of peace in England with interdict and excommunication. Meanwhile, Richard, who was still a prisoner of Henry VI. of Germany, consented to do homage to him as the greatest ruler in Christendom and to pay him an annual tribute. But Henry, not satisfied with this, had his captive brought before a Diet at Worms and charged him with several offences and misdemeanours. Richard defended himself manfully, and the German princes condemned the conduct of the emperor, whereupon Richard obtained his liberty for a ransom of one hundred and fifty thousand marks. In order to raise this sum, William of Ely, who, while abroad, had been kindly received by Richard, was sent to England. Several months passed before the money was ready; and in 1194, Richard, having recovered his freedom, returned to England, where he was received in triumph. A few months later he assembled a diet of his barons, in which John was declared to have forfeited all his possessions; but when the latter threw himself at the king's feet, he received a generous pardon through the interference of his mother.

17. A few words must be said about Richard's captivity. He had entered upon what was the Third Crusade, from 1189 to 1192. His first great exploit in the East was the capture of Acre, which had been besieged for two years. On that occasion he had affronted Duke Leopold of Austria, and a few days later Philip Augustus, jealous of Richard's rising fame, returned to France. Richard now, with fearful losses, advanced towards Jerusalem; but finding it impossible single-handed to effect anything, he concluded a peace with Saladin, on condition that Acre, Joppa, and a portion of the sea-coast should be given up to the Christians, and that pilgrims to Jerusalem should not be molested. A further inducement to conclude this peace was afforded him by information about the schemes of his brother John. On his return

home he avoided passing through France; and, being shipwrecked in the Adriatic, he resolved to proceed in disguise through Germany. In the neighbourhood of Vienna he was recognised and arrested by the order of Duke Leopold, who had, however, to deliver him up to the emperor. He was then confined in a castle in the Tyrol, and afterwards placed before the above-mentioned Diet at Worms.

18. The news of his imprisonment had called forth in England the greatest indignation, and even his former enemies felt sympathy with him. On his arrival he was crowned a second time at Winchester; and having pardoned his brother he proceeded to Normandy in 1194 to avenge himself upon the French king. The desultory war in which he thus became engaged, and which is of little interest to us now, lasted until 1199, when a truce was concluded for five years. A few months after this peace Richard ended his career by an inglorious death; for while besieging a castle in Poitou, he was wounded in the shoulder by an arrow, and through the unskilful management of the surgeon the injury proved fatal. He died on the 8th of April 1199. Richard had all along treated his nephew Arthur as his successor, but he had at last been induced by his mother to leave the kingdom to his brother John.

19. The reign of Richard I. was indeed brilliant, but comparatively useless. He was a man of prodigious bodily strength, and delighted in exercising it; he was never more happy than when dashing into the tumult of a battle, or storming a fortified castle. The life in England seems to have been unpleasant to him, for during his whole reign he spent scarcely six months in his own king-

18. In 1198, Pope Innocent III. was elected to the Holy See, which he occupied until 1216, raising the papal power to the highest pitch. It was especially at his instigation that several crusades in rapid succession were undertaken. A fourth was undertaken by Henry VI. of Germany, who made himself master of Sicily in 1194, and proceeding to the East took Beyrout. But his death in 1197 put an end to the crusade. Some years later a body of crusaders took Constantinople, and there established a Latin empire, which, however, was of short duration. The final result of these wild undertakings was that the Holy Land had to be left in the hand of the Mahommedans.

dom, which was given up to disorder, and sorely ground down by his wars and the ransom which had to be paid for his liberation.

3. JOHN—1199-1216.

20. The right of succession was as yet not well regulated in England. The king himself had generally fixed upon a successor, but in the Anglo-Saxon period such an arrangement always had required the sanction of the Witenagemot. Latterly, however, it had become customary for the king to nominate his successor. John's right to the crown was not universally acknowledged, and the barons in the dominions in France maintained that Prince Arthur was the legitimate heir to the English throne. This feeling induced John immediately after his coronation to proceed to Normandy, and Archbishop Hubert of Canterbury prevailed upon the barons to recognise John on condition of his taking an oath to protect the church, abolish bad laws, and to maintain justice throughout his dominions. Philip Augustus of France strengthened Prince Arthur, who was staying at his court, in his opposition to his uncle; but his mother Constance, jealous of the French king's influence over her son, took him away from Paris and persuaded him to make his peace with John.

21. This was done, and Philip Augustus, too, came to an understanding with John, who, however, was to appear before a court of the French king, his feudal superior. But as John refused, he was declared to have forfeited all his feudal possessions. The French king now also made Arthur revoke his acknowledgment of John, and when the young prince commenced open hostilities against him, he had the misfortune of being made his uncle's prisoner. John kept him in close confinement, and in the following year, 1203, the prince suddenly disappeared, the report being that the English king had slain him with his own hand and thrown his body into the Seine. The French king summoned John to answer the charge made against him; but as this summons was again met by a refusal,

John was declared a parricide, and to have forfeited all his French possessions. Philip Augustus now took up arms against him, and in a few years, in 1206, John was compelled to conclude a peace, in which he had to cede Normandy and all his continental possessions to the King of France.

22. John had been driven to conclude this peace, or rather truce, for two years, because he was involved in a disastrous conflict with the ambitious Pope, Innocent III. The archbishopric of Canterbury had become vacant by the death of Hubert, and John charged the monks, who had made their election without his sanction, to proceed to a new election, which was made without consulting the bishops. Pope Innocent III. took advantage of this for the purpose of putting an end to several exceptional privileges belonging to the English church. With this view he caused the monks sent to Rome by the chapter of Canterbury to elect Stephen Langton, an Englishman distinguished for learning, purity of character, and practical wisdom. The Pope indeed asked John to sanction the election, but at the same time declared such sanction to be unnecessary. John, greatly enraged at this assertion, wrote angrily to the Pope, that he would never sanction the appointment of Langton. John neglected no opportunity of showing his contempt of the papal authority by attacking the property of the clergy, and stopping the papal jurisdiction in England. At the same time he offended both his barons and the clergy by imposing exorbitant taxes upon them.

23. The Pope now, in 1208, had recourse to energetic measures, laying England under an interdict. John in retaliation ordered all priests without distinction to be expelled. This measure called forth so many acts of violence that the king himself became frightened, and he now endeavoured to secure the fidelity of his nobles by compelling them to give up their sons to him as hostages. John, however, thought it prudent to enter into negotiations with the Pope, and to allow Langton *to take possession of the archiepiscopal throne. But as*

he nevertheless persisted in his obstinacy in other matters, the sentence of excommunication was pronounced upon him. Fear and terror now made him restless, and he endeavoured to drown his feelings by traversing his own country, watching every hostile movement, and by making war against Scotland and Wales. Scotland again had to acknowledge the feudal supremacy of England; Ireland was divided into counties and had to accept English laws; and Wales was gradually reduced to a state of dependence.

24. But these wars, which lasted till 1211, though successful, had increased the taxes by which both the nobles and the people were oppressed. The discontent became general, and insurrections broke out which only led the king to fresh acts of violence, cruelty, and oppression. The King of France was commissioned by the Pope to carry out the sentence of excommunication. In 1212, John was declared deposed, the English throne was promised to the French king, and the English barons were released from their oath of allegiance. The Pope, anticipating that John would be cowed by these measures, sent his legate, Pandolf, to England, who was to try to make John see his evil ways. The king had already assembled an army of sixty thousand men near Dover to meet his enemies from France. But Pandolf's eloquence made John tremble, and his obstinacy was broken at once. In May 1213, John took an oath to submit to the papal see, and promised to answer all the charges for which he had been excommunicated, and especially to grant a safe return to the bishops and monks of Canterbury, and permit Langton to enter upon his archiepiscopal functions. Lastly, the king had to lay down the crown of England and Ireland into the hands of the papal legate, and to receive it back as the vassal of the Pope.

25. The English nobility keenly felt this humiliation and the dependence of their kingdom upon a foreign

24. In the same year in which John made his submission to the Pope a war against the Albigenses, so-called from the town of Alby on the Tarn, a religious sect, was commenced, and a crusade against them and the Waldenses was encouraged by the Pope Innocent III.

potentate; but Pandolf ordered them with a threat of excommunication to support their king, who had now become quite a different man, against the king of France. The latter was now forbidden, in the name of the Pope, to undertake anything against England. The country might now have enjoyed a period of peace, but John was bent upon making an attack upon Poitou, a plan which he would have carried out at once, had not his own subjects refused to do military service under him. At last, however, having amassed a large treasure and a numerous army, he proceeded to Poitou. The Pope in vain endeavoured to mediate between him and the king of France. John gained, indeed, some advantages; but in the north his army was utterly routed in a great battle at **Bovines**, in consequence of which he was forced to conclude a peace, in which again he ceded to France all the country north of the Loire, and even left several forts in Poitou and Guienne in the hands of the French king.

26. The effects of this defeat were nowhere felt more keenly than in England; scarcely had he returned when the discontented nobles held a meeting, at which they declared upon oath, that, if King John refused to observe the laws and liberties granted to them by Henry I. and the good King Edward, they would rise against him and make war upon him, until he acceded to their demands. The king took refuge in London, but the barons followed him and defiantly demanded the confirmation of the Charter of Henry I.; this happened in the beginning of the year 1215. John asked for time to deliberate, but he employed it in attempts to separate the interests of the clergy from those of the barons. His opponents openly refused to obey him, and appeared with flying banners before Northampton Castle. Their numbers increased from all parts of England, and they formed connections with the King of Scotland and the Britons of Wales. When, at length, the council of the city of London joined them, their plans assumed a more definite *form*. The king, who was at this time at Windsor, sent

word to his barons that he was graciously disposed to grant their requests, asking them to fix upon a time and place for meeting. Delighted with this message, they chose the 15th of June, on which day they were to meet at Runnymede, near Staines. Both parties appeared early in the morning; the nobles all in arms, the king surrounded by the primate and other high ecclesiastical dignitaries. A charter was drawn up consisting of sixty-three articles; it was signed by the king, and is known



KING JOHN SIGNING MAGNA CHARTA.

by the name of the **Magna Charta**. It has ever since formed the foundation of the constitutional liberties of England. The object of the barons was not to create a new law, or a new constitution, but only to obtain a confirmation of ancient liberties and guarantees for their

future observance. This great charter has been ratified no less than thirty-eight times during succeeding reigns.

27. The king for the present assented to everything; he ordered the castles and hostages belonging to the nobles to be restored, the mercenaries to be dismissed, and to appoint twenty-five barons as conservators of the public liberties, to whom the whole country had to swear obedience. But it was evident that he was meditating revenge for what he considered an insult to himself. As he was a vassal of the papal see, he induced the Pope to issue a bull declaring the charter null and void, and threatening excommunication to every one who should obey it. Many of the barons, especially those in London and in the north, still remained in arms and kept up an understanding with the King of France; nay, they went so far as to offer the crown to Prince Louis, son of Philip Augustus. The result was, that Louis landed in England in 1216 and proceeded to London, where the assembled barons did homage to him. He then commenced war with John, who endeavoured to increase his adherents by proclaiming an amnesty.

28. The national spirit, however, was not well disposed to the alliance between the barons and the foreign prince. About the same time Pope Innocent III. died, and John now felt the whole weight of his misfortunes. The barons rejoiced, and every one began to hope that the new Pope would follow a different policy. The king roused himself to a last and desperate move; but while he was traversing the country with his armed bands, ravaging and destroying towns and villages, his career was cut short by death. As he was marching in Lincolnshire by the sea-shore, the tide unexpectedly overtook him, carrying away a great portion of his army and all his baggage. John himself escaped, but his health being already much impaired, he was attacked by a violent fever, and a few days afterwards, on the 19th of October 1216, he died at Newark; his body was conveyed by his mercenaries to Worcester, where it was buried.

29. King John, commonly surnamed Lack-land (be-

cause his father had assigned to him no share in his possessions), was one of the most dissolute men and the most tyrannical ruler: he was alternately brave and cowardly, and sacrificed the independence of his kingdom to his own personal objects. He was guilty of most appalling acts of cruelty; but these very qualities led to the formation of the Magna Charta, which secured for all time the liberty of the English nation. His reign, moreover, was the period during which the Saxons and Normans became blended into one nation, and displayed their national feeling in their opposition to Prince Louis of France.

4. HENRY III.—1216-1272.

30. The Pope was still lord paramount of England, and John had recommended to him his eldest son Henry, then nine years old, as his successor. He was crowned at Gloucester in October 1216, taking the usual coronation oath, and at the same time that of vassal to the Pope for England and Ireland. The marshal of England, the earl of Pembroke, who had shown the most unswerving fidelity to the late king, was appointed his guardian and protector of the kingdom. The Magna Charta was renewed, though with some alterations; and this popular measure increased the partizans of the new king, whose influence was further strengthened by the fact that Prince Louis, who still claimed the crown of England, had offended the feelings of the English. At last, as Louis continued his hostility against the new king, he was excommunicated by the papal legate Guala, and being driven to extremities, concluded a peace with Earl Pembroke, and in 1217 quitted England.

31. When, in 1223, Louis succeeded his father as Louis VIII. of France, he attacked Poitou, forgetting the promise he had made. Henry III. now crossed over to France, but produced no results; he had lost his wise and brave guardian as early as the year 1218, whereupon there arose a dispute about the guardianship, which Peter, the unworthy bishop of Winchester, a native of Poitou,

secured for himself, to the disparagement of the king's faithful councillor, the grand justiciary Hubert de Burgh. This prelate filled all high offices with foreigners, and when, in 1236, Henry married Eleanor, the daughter of the count of Provence, there followed another influx of Frenchmen. This excessive influence of foreigners was vigorously opposed by Richard, earl of Pembroke, the son of the king's late guardian; the king himself also gradually came to see that he was only a tool in the hands of foreigners, and the bishop of Winchester, being at length deprived of his power, spent the remainder of his life in retirement. The English barons, however, still maintained a defiant attitude towards the king, and they, together with the English clergy, held a succession of meetings at which gradually an increasing opposition was formed, which assumed the name of **Parliament**.

32. Notwithstanding his oath, Henry had repeatedly violated the great Charter, in consequence of which a vast amount of discontent arose even among the great mass of his subjects, especially on account of the extortions resorted to by him. While he endeavoured to find support with the Pope, his own brother, Richard of Cornwall, thought it right to censure him for squandering the treasures of England. But the discontented barons soon found a more energetic spokesman in **Simon de Montfort**, who was married to the king's sister, Eleanor, and through his earldom of Leicester, occupied a prominent position among the English barons. The king's relation to the papacy, which led the Popes to become very exacting, absorbed enormous sums of money; and the circumstance that the king at a diet in London again demanded vast sums to enable him once more to try to recover his French possessions, at length led the barons to declare that they would not follow him. Henry nevertheless undertook the campaign into France; but as the English parliament refused the necessary money, and as even the nobles of Poitou did not support him,

32. Pope Honorius III., the successor of Innocent III., was a man of a mild disposition, and did much to reconcile the parties in England.

the king, in 1243, was forced to conclude a truce in which all Poitou was given up to the French.

33. There now followed a period in which nothing of much importance happened, until finally a peace was agreed upon in 1259, in which Henry gave up all claim to both Normandy and Poitou. These foreign enterprises and the profligate conduct of the king himself, constantly obliged him to demand large supplies from his subjects, and even induced him to solicit presents from the nobility. He generally gained his end by making liberal promises, such as to confirm the Charter, to undertake a crusade, etc. But these promises were no sooner made than they were broken. When at length, upon the crown of Sicily being offered to his son, he again demanded exorbitant sums from his subjects, the barons appeared in arms at Westminster, requesting the king to assemble a parliament for the purpose of settling the affairs of the kingdom. This parliament met at Oxford in 1258, and is known under the name of the **Mad Parliament**, from the disorderly manner in which the business was conducted; for the barons appeared fully armed, and the king was little better than their prisoner. It was, however, agreed there that a commission of fifteen barons should be appointed, with Montfort at their head, to draw up a scheme of reform, which the king was obliged to confirm beforehand with an oath. The reforms they made, known as the **Oxford Statutes**, demanded that the great Charter should be confirmed, that all the great offices of state and the castles of the kingdom should be held by natives, that marriages of wards with foreigners should be restrained, and that twenty-four persons should be chosen, twelve by the barons and twelve by the king, who should watch over the faithful administration of the laws, and be responsible to parliament, which was to meet three times in every year. The parliament, moreover, was to be attended by four knights chosen by the freeholders of each county, who were to lay before it any grievances that might come under their notice. These and other measures were calculated to secure

the interests of the people as well as of the barons, though the government was virtually in the hands of the fifteen.

34. For two years the kingdom, on the whole, enjoyed peace and tranquillity; but as the nobles began to quarrel among themselves, and the Pope, Alexander IV., released Henry from the oath to observe the Oxford Statutes, the king thought the time had come to recover his authority. With this view he visited the French king, Louis IX., and induced him to undertake the mediation between himself and his barons. To this arrangement both parties consented. But while Henry was still in France, a civil war was on the point of breaking out in England; it was, however, prevented by negotiation, in which the Oxford Statutes were again confirmed. Louis of France, however, at a council at Amiens, in 1264, gave it as his award that the decrees of Oxford and all the articles depending on them should be annulled; but at the same time he declared that all the earlier statutes, enacted before those of Oxford, should be maintained, and that an amnesty should be proclaimed. The barons, though bound to acquiesce in the verdict of the French king, were dissatisfied, and accordingly made preparations for renewing the war. Several towns, such as Nottingham, were sacked and ravaged by the Royalists, headed by the king himself and his brother Richard. The king's son, Prince Edward, and his cousin Henry also took part in the war. Montfort and his party being in possession of the castle of Kenilworth, laid waste the country far and wide, until at last a great battle was fought near Lewes (May 1264), in which the Royalist army was defeated, and King Henry and his brother, Richard, were taken prisoners.

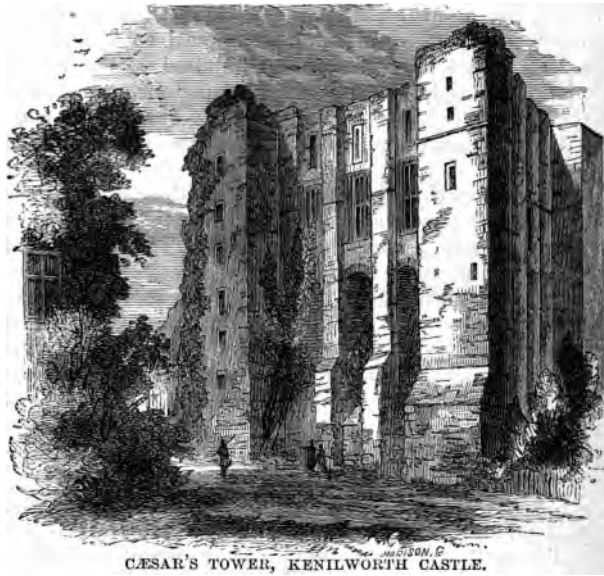
35. Immediately after the battle, Montfort granted a truce to the vanquished, called the **Mise of Lewes**, by which the king and his brother were set free; but Prince Edward and his cousin Henry remained as hostages in

the hands of the victors, while all other matters were to be settled by a parliament. Montfort and his party now had all the power in their own hands, and he at once issued a writ for parliament to meet on the 20th January 1265. This parliament forms an era in our constitutional history, for Montfort, who had always shown a leaning towards the popular element, summoned to it not only the barons and prelates, but one hundred of the higher clergy, two knights from every shire, and two representatives from every city and borough, so that this parliament was at once a representation of the barons and of the people.

36. It seems that the young Earl of Gloucester, jealous of Montfort's power and influence, deserted the cause of the barons and joined the Royalists. Prince Edward also, having escaped from his keepers, collected a force with which he surprised Montfort's son at Kenilworth. He thence proceeded against the elder Montfort, whom he met near **Evesham**, in Worcestershire. A great battle was fought there in August 1265, in which Montfort was among the slain, and the king himself, who had been compelled by Montfort to take his place among the foremost barons, nearly shared his fate, but was saved by his son.

37. Montfort's death was deeply lamented by the people, who honoured him as the champion of their liberties. His followers were one after another forced by Prince Edward to submission, though hostilities still continued for two years. The king's authority was now fully re-established; the Oxford Statutes were abolished, and the property of the rebellious barons was declared to be forfeited. The castle of Kenilworth did not surrender until December 1266, and then Edward granted to the vanquished terms known as the **Dictum of Kenilworth**, whereby they obtained permission to sue for pardon and to recover their estates on payment of certain sums of money. Llewellyn, a prince of Wales, who had sided with the barons, now also obtained a peace, but had to swear fealty to the English king, and to pay 25,000 marks.

38. The remaining period of Henry's reign passed away in peace. In 1270, Prince Edward, with the Earl of Gloucester and other restless spirits, joined Louis IX. in his crusade against the infidels. The prince was still in the East when his father died in November 1272.



CAESAR'S TOWER, KENILWORTH CASTLE.

38. The crusade in which Prince Edward engaged in 1270 was the last; Louis IX. perished of the plague before Tunis; Edward proceeded to Palestine, but concluded a truce on his return to England.

In 1268, **Conradin**, the last descendant of the Hohenstaufen emperors of Germany, was executed at Naples.

In 1273, the election of **Rudolph of Habsburg** to the imperial throne of Germany, put an end to the long interregnum which had prevailed in that country ever since 1257, and formed the beginning of the imperial dynasty of the Habsburgs who still rule in Austria.

About the year 1250, **Roger Bacon** acquired a European reputation, not only by his extensive learning, but also by his giving to the study of philosophy a new direction, in turning it from mere speculation to practical experience and careful observation of the phenomena of nature. A popular ballad literature sprang up in the reign of Henry III., in which the deeds of such men as **Simon de Montfort** were celebrated in a somewhat rough and uncouth Saxon, while the court and nobility still delighted in epics and romances in the French language.

Henry's reign is that of a weak and unscrupulous ruler; he scarcely ever took an oath which he did not violate; his partiality for foreigners, his relation to the papacy, and his wars with France and his own subjects, led him to grind down his people by taxes and imposts. But with all this his reign is one of the most memorable in English history, because in it was laid the foundation of the people's house of representatives, which, with few interruptions, has grown and developed its powers down to the present day. Further, during Henry's long reign, the Saxon and Norman elements of the English population had become completely blended into the English nation.

5. EDWARD I.—1272-1307.

39. Immediately after the death of Henry III., the barons assembled in London, proclaimed Edward king, took the oath of allegiance to him, and invited him speedily to return to England. The kingdom, however, was meanwhile placed under the regency of his cousin, the Earl of Cornwall, the Earl of Gloucester, and the archbishop of York. Edward received the news of his father's death at Naples, but remained a whole year in Italy and France, and thence proceeded to Flanders, where he made some commercial arrangements about the export of English wool and the import of Flemish cloth. He landed at Dover on the 2nd of August 1274, and was crowned at Westminster in December of the same year, when he received the homage of Alexander III. of Scotland and of the nobles of his realm, with the exception of Llewellyn of Wales.

40. During his absence the country had not indeed been disturbed, but many irregularities had crept into the administration, and these he at once rectified, and bestowed all his attention upon the internal affairs of the kingdom. The parliament which he assembled in 1275 passed several measures to establish justice and repress crime. In 1278, at a diet held at Gloucester, an enquiry by a jury was ordered into the royal domains and

revenues, and the barons were required to show what warrant they had for their feudal possessions; the church also had to surrender possessions which had been illegally acquired; and in the following year the famous statute of **Mortmain** was enacted, by which it was forbidden to make over lands to ecclesiastical bodies without the king's permission. The clergy at first offered some resistance; but when the king threatened to deprive them of all their feudal possessions, they yielded. After this, Edward went to France, where, having secured Guienne, he renounced all claim to Normandy.

41. Edward now turned his attention to those parts of the island which still enjoyed political independence. His great scheme was to conquer Wales and Scotland, and to unite them into one compact kingdom. Llewellyn, who had shown no friendly disposition at Edward's coronation, when summoned to appear before the king, refused obedience, in the hope of being able to strengthen himself by forming connections with France. The king and parliament, in 1276, therefore declared him to have forfeited his possessions, and in the following year an army marched into Wales. Llewellyn, being hard pressed, threw himself upon the mercy of the king, and had to accept a most humiliating peace, in which he was permitted to retain only the territory round Snowdon, together with Anglesea, as a fief of the English crown. But neither he nor his people could long endure this humiliation, and even his brother David, who had hitherto served under Edward against his brother, now joined Llewellyn, and the Welsh rose in open rebellion. Edward marched against them with an overwhelming force. Llewellyn was killed in battle, and David, being pursued by the conquerors, was at last betrayed into the hands of his enemies. He was found guilty of high treason, and put to death in a most barbarous manner.

42. Wales was now incorporated with England, and divided into counties and hundreds, whereby peace and self-government were to some extent secured to the *inhabitants* in the same way as in England. While

Edward was staying in the conquered country, a son (afterwards Edward II.) was born to him at Carnarvon in 1284, who, when his elder brother died, received the title of **Prince of Wales**, so that the Welsh had at all events a prince of their own, at least in name. From that time the direct heir to the English crown has always borne the title of Prince of Wales.

43. When the affairs of Wales were settled, Edward again devoted his attention to the internal condition of his kingdom, and then spent three years abroad, arbitrating in a dispute between the kings of France and Aragon concerning the island of Sicily. On his return, in 1289, he discovered so much corruption in the administration of justice, that he found it necessary to depose all the judges except two. The Jews, of whom great numbers had come over with William the Conqueror, had always been objects of popular hatred and persecution, especially since the coronation of Richard I. Many of them had become very wealthy, whereby they excited envy, while the hatred of their religion was fanned by the priests and the superstitions of the age. Edward I., who had always treated them more harshly than his predecessors, in 1290 ordered all the Jews, under penalty of death, to leave the country for ever.

44. In 1286, Edward's attention had been drawn to Scotland, whose king, Alexander III., died in that year, leaving as his only heir a grand-daughter, Margaret, the only child of his own daughter and Eric, king of Norway. She was then only three years old, and during her minority Scotland was governed by six regents. Edward, whose heart seems to have been set upon gaining possession of Scotland, brought about a betrothal between his eldest son and Margaret, called the Maid of Norway; but on her voyage to Scotland she died, and there appeared at once thirteen claimants to the Scottish throne, the

43. The number of Jews expelled on that occasion amounted to 16,517: they were allowed to take their movable property with them, but their houses and lands were confiscated by the king. From that time until the reign of Charles II. no Jews were allowed to live in England.

principal ones being John Baliol, Robert Bruce, and John Hastings, all three descendants of David, earl of Huntingdon, the brother of King Malcolm IV. The Scottish parliament referred the decision of the disputed succession to Edward, who accordingly proceeded with his barons to Norham Castle, on the Tweed, to which place he also summoned the Scottish parliament. When they were assembled, Edward haughtily demanded of them to acknowledge him as their feudal superior until a decision should be arrived at. The Scotch were not a little astonished at such a demand; but, being powerless to resist, it was conceded, and the fortresses of the country were delivered into his hands. The commissioners who were appointed to examine the claims of the competitors decided in favour of Baliol. Edward at once sanctioned their award, in 1292, and made the new king swear fealty to him as his feudal superior.

45. Soon after this, Baliol was summoned to London to answer certain charges brought against him by his subjects. Edward treated him with marked haughtiness, apparently for the purpose of driving him into open rebellion. About the same time Edward became involved in a dispute with the King of France, his superior for the duchy of Guienne; and, as he refused to appear, he was declared to have forfeited his feudal rights over that duchy, 1294. He now prepared for war with France, and Baliol, considering the English king's embarrassments a favourable opportunity for avenging the indignities he had suffered, entered into a close alliance with France, and renounced his allegiance to Edward. As soon as the latter was informed of this, he left the war with France to his lieutenants, and at once marched to the north, where he took Berwick in 1296. The same year a great battle was fought at **Dunbar**, in which the Scotch were defeated by Warenne, earl of Surrey, with

45. France was then governed by Philip IV. (1285-1314), whose daughter Blanche Edward wished to marry; but as Philip took advantage of the negotiations for taking possession of Guienne, Edward was forced into the war with France.

the loss of 20,000 men. Baliol, who made his submission, was sent as a prisoner to London, and the Scottish barons took the oath of allegiance to the conqueror. All the strong places of Scotland were entrusted to Englishmen, and Warenne was made governor of the whole country. Baliol, after being imprisoned in the Tower for two years, withdrew to France, where he died.

46. Scotland now seemed completely conquered; but the reckless tyranny of its rulers soon drove the people again into rebellion. Meanwhile the war in France, which was carried on with little success, obliged Edward to have recourse to heavy demands of money from his people. This exasperated all classes of the population, and he was compelled to sign a compact, in which he renounced the right to tax his subjects at his own will, in 1297. The following year an armistice with France was brought about by the mediation of the Pope, and Edward hurried back to England; for a Scottish knight, named William Wallace, had assembled round his banner many of the discontented Scots, and had gained great renown by his bold and successful exploits. Warenne, who attacked him near Stirling, was utterly routed, and obliged to retreat across the border. Edward now himself took the field against him with an army of 80,000 men. The hostile forces met near **Falkirk**, where the Scots were completely defeated, in 1298, by the skill and valour of their English opponents.

47. Wallace now disappears from the scene of action; but the war was continued under Comyn (a son of Baliol's sister Marjory); for the nation was still bent upon recovering its independence. In 1303, Comyn defeated the English in a battle near Roslin; but, as peace was now finally concluded with France, Edward was enabled to direct all his forces against Scotland, which he traversed in all directions, and everywhere victorious. Comyn and Bruce, who had in the mean time been appointed regents, were in the end forced to surrender at discretion, in 1304. Wallace, who lived in concealment, was treacherously delivered into the king's hands by John

Monteith; and in 1305 he was put to death in London, in the barbarous manner reserved for those guilty of high treason, of which Wallace certainly was innocent, never having sworn allegiance to Edward.

48. Comyn, after the resignation of his uncle Baliol, was the legitimate heir to the throne of Scotland; but there was another competitor, in the person of Robert Bruce, grandson of the Robert Bruce who had claimed the crown with Baliol and Hastings. Both of them had submitted to Edward, and Bruce had been treated by him with special favour; but, fearing or mistrusting the king, Bruce fled from a council held in London to regulate the affairs of the kingdom. On arriving in Scotland, he summoned a meeting of nobles at Dumfries (1306), where it was resolved to make a fresh effort for independence. Bruce having become involved in a quarrel with his rival Comyn, stabbed him with a dagger, and Kirkpatrick, one of his attendants, completed the murder. The bishop of St. Andrews now crowned Bruce as Robert I. of Scotland; but Edward sent a large army, under Aymer de Valence, who defeated Bruce, and compelled him to seek shelter in the western islands. All who were directly or indirectly concerned in the murder of Comyn were put to death. But Bruce, with indomitable perseverance, continued the fight, and gained many a victory. Edward now determined to put an end to this harassing war, and advanced with a strong army as far as Burgh-on-Sands, near Carlisle, where he was seized with a fatal disease, and died in July 1307.

49. The reign of Edward I. was a period of growing prosperity for England: no king before him had done

49. It may be noticed here that Westminster Abbey was completed by Edward I. in 1285.

In 1282 upwards of 8000 Frenchmen were massacred in Sicily, which Charles of Anjou (brother of Louis IX.) had conquered. The butchery was caused by the misconduct of the French towards the natives, and as it took place at the time when the church bells at Palermo called the people to the vespers, the massacre is called the "Sicilian Vespers."

The Teutonic Order of Knights which had been founded in 1190 for the purpose of attending to the sick and wounded during the siege of Acre (in the third crusade), afterwards turned their attention to the conversion of pagan tribes, the Borussii or Prussii on the south-east of the Baltic. This was effected in

so much to improve the laws and enforce their strict observance. He was personally ambitious, bold, and energetic; but his conduct towards Wales, Scotland, and the Jews was treacherous and wantonly cruel. He lacked the generosity which honours valour and bravery even in an enemy.

6. EDWARD II.—1307-1327..

50. The reign of Edward II. is one of the most unfortunate in English history. He himself was weak and obstinate, and sacrificed the peace and happiness of his country to his attachment to unworthy favourites. When he ascended the throne he was twenty-three years old, and had been accustomed from his childhood to the society of Piers de Gaveston, the son of a Gascon knight; but, as it was found that he exercised a bad influence upon the young prince, Edward I., shortly before his death, had banished him from the country. After the father's death, however, Gaveston was recalled, and honours and estates were lavished upon him. When the young king went to France to marry Isabella, daughter of Philip IV., Gaveston, being appointed regent during the king's absence, behaved with intolerable arrogance and insolence towards the nobles, and even invented offensive nicknames for the most illustrious among them. The barons, indignant at such conduct, compelled the king to banish his favourite; but, unwilling to give him up entirely, Edward made him viceroy of Ireland, and during his absence there succeeded in allaying the hatred of some of the nobles against him. After making some concessions to the discontented barons, he ventured, in 1309, to recall

the course of time. The order fixed its seat at Marienburg, built the city of Thorn, colonised the country with Germans, and thus laid the foundation of what has since become the kingdom of Prussia.

Pope Boniface VIII. (1294-1303) renewed the arrogant pretensions of Gregory VII. and Innocent III., but Philip IV. of France made a resolute stand against them. Clement V., a Frenchman, on his election to the papacy (1305), yielded to the demands of the French king, and took up his residence at Avignon, in France. The same Pope abolished, in 1312, the order of the Knights Templars, who had been accused of heresy and other crimes.

In 1320, gunpowder was invented by a German monk of the name of Martin Schwarz.

his favourite once more to his court; but, instead of being more cautious after what he had experienced, Gaveston behaved with even more insolence than before. The nobles, when summoned to a parliament at York, refused to attend. As the king, however, was anxious to raise supplies, he convened, in 1311, another parliament, at which the barons, with their retainers, appeared in arms, and compelled the king to appoint a committee of peers, called the **Ordainers**, who were to draw up a series of ordinances for the proper government of the realm. The principal of these, on the whole wise ordinances, were—that no taxes should be levied except those established by ancient usage; that the great Charter, and all statutes based upon it, should be observed; that parliament should be held once in every year, or twice if necessary; that no war should be entered upon without the sanction of parliament; and that all evil counsellors should be banished. Edward, notwithstanding his great repugnance to these ordinances, was obliged to sanction them.

51. Gaveston, who during these transactions had kept in the background, now withdrew to Flanders. A few months later, however, he rejoined the king at York, and the nobles, finding the king and his favourite incorrigible, now formed a powerful party, under the leadership of Thomas, earl of Lancaster, the king's own cousin. Edward, unable to resist them, placed his friend in the castle of Scarborough, where he was besieged. From want of provisions, Gaveston was obliged to surrender, and, being carried to Warwick Castle, he was executed on Blacklow Hill in 1312. The king at first threatened to avenge the deed, but had to suppress his wrath, and to grant peace and pardon to the barons.

52. Immediately after his accession, Edward II. had advanced a little way into Scotland, but soon gave up the undertaking, and returned to the south. Meanwhile Robert Bruce, after many strange wanderings and adventures, recovered possession of the whole country, with the exception of the castle of Stirling. Edward, after having made peace with his barons, determined to make a great

and final effort against Scotland. He invaded the country with an army of 100,000 men, while the Scotch had scarcely one-third of this number to oppose him. A fierce battle was fought in 1314, at **Bannockburn**, near Stirling, in which Bruce, by his skill and prudence, completely defeated the English, who are said to have lost 30,000 men. Edward after this meditated a fresh expedition into Scotland; but, finding that Lancaster and his party refused to join him, he concluded with Bruce a truce for two years.

53. Eight years after the death of Gaveston, another favourite of the king, Hugh de Spenser, imitating the example of his predecessor, provoked the indignation of the nobles, who, at a meeting at Westminster, passed an ordinance banishing both Spenser and his father, 1321. The king, exasperated at this proceeding, assembled an army and marched against Lancaster, who was drawing together a large force in the North, and entered into an alliance with Scotland. The royal army gained a decisive victory at **Boroughbridge**. Lancaster was taken prisoner, hurriedly tried, and beheaded at Pontefract in 1322. Many of his followers were likewise put to death, while others made their escape to the Continent. The Spensers, who were now recalled, received some of the forfeited estates of the nobles. A fresh attempt was then made against Scotland. But it ended in a truce being concluded for thirteen years, whereby Bruce was virtually recognised as king of Scotland.

54. The last act of this pitiable reign is the saddest of all. When Charles IV. of France, after his accession, summoned Edward to do homage to him for Guienne and settle some differences about that duchy, he sent his wife **Isabella**, 1325. On her arrival in Paris she formed connections with some of the followers of Lancaster, who had taken refuge there, but more especially with young

54. Charles IV. of France ascended the throne in 1322 and reigned till 1328.

It was in the reign of Edward II., in the year 1315, that the Swiss gained the victory over Duke Leopold of Austria, in the famous battle of Morgarten, by which the foundation was laid of Swiss independence, which was finally acknowledged in 1389.

Roger Mortimer, who became her paramour. Both she and the exiled nobles were actuated by their common hatred of the Spensers. Wishing to obtain possession of her eldest son Edward (afterwards Edward III.), she requested the king to send him over, because her brother, the French king, wished to invest him with the duchy of Guienne, which might otherwise be lost. Edward did as he was desired; but when he asked her to return, she went to Flanders, and without the king's permission, betrothed her son to Philippa, the daughter of the count of Holland and Hainault. With the assistance of the count she levied an army, and accompanied by the king's own brothers and the exiled nobles, landed in Suffolk. The unpopularity of the king became at once apparent, for the queen met with little opposition in her progress. Edward fled to Wales while his son was made guardian of the kingdom. The two Spensers were taken and put to an ignominious death. The king tried to escape to Ireland, but was overtaken at Neath Abbey, in Glamorganshire, and conveyed to the castle of Kenilworth. A Parliament was summoned by the queen, at which a series of charges was brought against the king, and a deputation was sent to him compelling him to sign his own abdication, while his son was appointed king in his stead. The government, however, was virtually in the hands of the queen and her paramour, Mortimer. The unhappy king was dragged successively to the castles of Corve, Bristol, and Berkeley. In this last place he was committed to the charge of two jailors, who treated him with the greatest insults and cruelty; and as they could not get rid of him in this way, they murdered him by introducing a red-hot iron, through a horn, into his bowels. His screams revealed what was going on, but no one dared to interfere. This horrible murder was perpetrated on the 21st September 1327.

7. EDWARD III., 1327—1377.

55. When on the deposition of his father, Edward was crowned king, he was only fourteen years old; a regency

was therefore appointed consisting of a council of twelve, headed by Henry, earl of Lancaster, a brother of the one who had been executed at Pontefract, for the sentence which had condemned him was annulled, and all the enemies of the Spencers had their rights and possessions restored to them. The young king, however, was in the power of his mother, Isabella, and her paramour, Mortimer.

56. The violent deposition of Edward II. and the appointment of a boy-king, induced Bruce, of Scotland, in violation of the existing truce, to invade and ravage England, and he advanced as far as the Tyne. Notwithstanding his youth, Edward marched with an army against him; but Bruce, avoiding a pitched battle, retreated, and on the advice of his mother, Edward, in 1328, concluded a peace in which the Scotch king was relieved of all his feudal duties towards England, and became a perfectly independent sovereign. This peace was strengthened by the betrothal of David, heir to the Scotch crown, who was then only five years old, with Edward's sister, Isabella, a child of seven years. Such a peace was of course distasteful to the English nation, and the earls of Lancaster, Kent, and Norfolk, believing that it had been brought about chiefly by Mortimer, formed the determination to overthrow the unworthy favourite. But he not only forced them to submission, but even ventured to bring a charge of high treason against Kent, who was the young king's uncle. The nobles were servile enough to find him guilty, and Isabella and Mortimer ordered him to be executed, in 1330. Mortimer now even went so far as to assume all the pomp and state of a king. All this was too much for the bold and manly spirit of Edward, who had already shown signs of unwillingness to submit to the dictates of the unworthy couple. The execution of his uncle had roused his deepest indignation, and on the advice of some nobles, he resolved to assume the reins of government himself.

57. Isabella and Mortimer were living at the time in the castle of Nottingham, where they were strongly pro-

tected by mercenaries. Into this castle the king and his followers penetrated by a subterraneous passage. Mortimer was arrested and carried as a prisoner to London, where he was tried for high treason and executed. The queen was henceforth kept in captivity for life in Rising Castle, where the king, who, after all, could not forget that she was his mother, paid her occasional visits.

58. Edward now really began to govern his kingdom, the improvement of which engaged his thoughtful attention. At the same time he felt a strong desire to recover his feudal superiority over Scotland, for which a favourable opportunity now seemed to present itself. Bruce had died in 1329, and had been succeeded by his son, David IV. A few years later some English nobles complained that their estates in Scotland had not been restored to them, and instigated Edward Baliol, son of John Baliol, to assert his right to the crown. The English king at first secretly favoured the scheme, and when Baliol, in a war with his own countrymen, was obliged to take refuge in England, he was openly aided by Edward, to whom he promised to accept Scotland as a fief of the English crown. Douglas, who had in the meantime been appointed regent, was defeated and slain near Berwick in 1333. This triumph of his English supporters established Baliol on the throne of Scotland; but when it was found out that he had ceded to England some of the southern counties, he was obliged to flee from his exasperated subjects, and his rival recovered a great part of the country. A regular border warfare was now continued for several years, during which the Scots received large supplies from France. This circumstance furnished Edward with an opportunity of carrying out a plan which he had been harbouring for some time—a plan which involved England during a whole century in a series of disastrous wars with France.

59. Charles IV., of France, had died in 1328 without leaving male issue, and as by the salic law females were excluded from the succession, Philip VI., of Valois, was

chosen king. Edward III. had hoped to obtain the crown of France for himself, because his mother was a daughter of Philip IV. But his claims were invalid, for as the salic law excluded females, it, of necessity, also excluded the descendants of females. As Edward at first was unable to make good his claim by force of arms, he consented to do homage to Philip VI. for the duchy of Guienne; but when France openly supported Bruce and his adherents, Edward declared his determination to conquer France, and add another crown to that of England. The claim of Edward was supported by the Emperor of Germany, the King of Bohemia, and other continental potentates, and having, by heavy taxes, raised a powerful force, he sailed in 1338 to Flanders; but as some of his supporters fell off, and the French king avoided any decisive engagement, this first campaign, which had cost enormous sums, had no results. A second expedition, in 1340, was more successful, for a large French fleet was defeated off Sluys with immense loss, and Edward might now have carried the war into France, but want of means obliged him to conclude a truce for two years.

60. On his return to England, he found that his heavy and arbitrary exactions had created great discontent, and the parliament in 1341 carried a measure making the great officers of state responsible to parliament. In the same year a war of succession broke out in Brittany, where the brave Countess de Montfort, while her husband was a prisoner in Paris, manfully defended his cause. Edward hastened to her assistance, because her husband had done homage to him as King of France. This led to a renewal of the war between Edward and the French, which, with some interruptions, continued until 1345, when the Earl of Derby gained a brilliant victory over the enemy, though the hostile forces were at least six times as numerous as the English. In the following year Edward himself went to France and took several towns in Normandy, while Philip, with a very

60. The Emperor of Germany was Louis of Bavaria, who reigned from 1314 to 1347.

numerous but ill-disciplined army, was in the neighbourhood of Amiens. Edward, well prepared and accompanied by his son, Edward, commonly called the Black Prince, from the colour of his armour, fought and won the famous battle of Crecy in August 1346. While the battle was raging, and the young prince was hard pressed, a messenger asked the king to send reinforcements. Edward at once asked, "Is my son dead or wounded?" and when the answer was "No," the king told the messenger to return and tell the prince that he must win his spurs on that day, and that no help would be sent while he was alive. The flower of the French nobility fell on that day, twelve hundred knights and thirty thousand ordinary troops covered the field of battle.

61. Immediately after this terrible battle Edward proceeded to invest Calais, and no effort of Philip to relieve it was of any avail. While these things were going on in France, David Bruce, at the instigation of Philip, had invaded England with fifty thousand men, and was ravaging the country in a most ruthless manner. He advanced to the neighbourhood of Durham, but Edward's queen, Philippa, sent out a force under the command of Percy, who defeated the Scotch at Neville's Cross in 1346, and took the king prisoner. David was conveyed to London, but set free the next year, on payment of one hundred thousand marks. Meanwhile, Edward continued the siege of Calais, and it was not till after a heroic defence of eleven months that the place surrendered at discretion in August 1346. There is a beautiful story connected with this surrender. To save the lives of their fellow-citizens, six burgesses appeared before Edward with halters round their necks offering to die, if he would spare the lives of the other citizens. Edward, induced by the entreaties of his wife, though with great reluctance, pardoned them; a truce was then concluded with France, which, with some interruptions, lasted till 1355. During this interval Philip VI. died, and was succeeded by his son John.

62. The year 1349 is memorable for a terrible plague,

called the Black Death, which, originating in China and India, caused most fearful ravages all over Europe; in London alone upwards of fifty thousand persons died of it. This fearful scourge seems to have induced the belligerents to suspend their hostilities; but after the expiration of the truce, the Black Prince invaded and ravaged the south of France, while his father advanced with an army from Calais. But the latter was soon obliged to return in order to drive back the Scotch, who were again devastating the north of England. The Black Prince met King John and his army of sixty thousand men near Poitiers in 1356, and by his extraordinary valour and prudence gained a decisive victory. John himself was taken prisoner, but treated with marked respect and courtesy. A truce was then made for two years, and John was conveyed to London, where he was treated with the same respectful deference, but had to agree to a humiliating peace, which caused great excitement in France. Fresh negotiations were commenced, and some acts of hostility were committed, until, in 1360, the Treaty of Bretigny was concluded, in which Edward III. gave up his claim to the French crown, Normandy, Anjou, Maine, and Tourraine, but became the absolute sovereign of Guienne, Gascony, Poitou, and some other districts, together with the town of Calais. As the French estates refused to ratify this treaty, John, with excellent good faith, delivered himself up as a prisoner to the English, and died soon after in London. His son and successor, Charles V., paid no regard to the arrangements of his father.

63. The Black Prince, who was keeping his court at Bordeaux in great state, out of mere spite against the French king, supported a detestable tyrant, Pedro the Cruel, against his brother Henry, the two disputing the succession in Castile. Prince Edward succeeded in establishing Pedro on the throne; but having to levy for this purpose heavy taxes on his subjects, they tried to obtain

62. King John reigned in France from 1350 to 1364, and was succeeded by Charles V., who reigned from 1364 to 1380.

redress by appealing to King Charles. The latter, disregarding the treaty of Bretigny, acted the part of feudal superior to the prince, and, as the latter refused to acknowledge him as such, hostilities broke out, and the prince assumed the title of King of France, 1369. From this time the power of the English in France declined; for after a few years all their possessions in France were lost, except Calais, Bayonne, Bordeaux, and a few less important places. Meanwhile the Black Prince, disabled by disease, after committing an act of the grossest cruelty at Limoges, returned to England, where he died in 1376. King Edward survived his son only one year, having previously declared in parliament that he appointed his grandson Richard his successor. He died at Sheen (Richmond) in June 1377.

64. Edward III. was a ruler of great ability and personal virtue; but towards the end of his life he gave himself up to sensual pleasures, and lost much of his popularity. His foreign wars procured him great renown, but produced scarcely any good and permanent result. While he was obliged to make heavy demands upon his people, they availed themselves of these opportunities for getting their ancient rights confirmed or acquiring new ones. Trade and industry made great progress during his reign. Foreign artizans, especially Flemish weavers, were encouraged to settle in England, where they enjoyed the king's special protection.

63. The Black Prince, after recovering the revolted town of Limoges, ordered 3000 of its inhabitants to be put to death, and he would have caused a still greater carnage, had not the bravery of the garrison induced him to put a stop to it.

In the year 1338, the electoral princes of the German empire, assembled at Rense on the Rhine, declared the papal sanction unnecessary in the election of an emperor, and in 1356 the rights and number of the electors were regulated by the "Golden Bull." By this instrument seven electors were appointed, the archbishops of Mainz, Köln, and Trier, the King of Bohemia, the Count Palatine of the Rhine, the Duke of Saxony, and the Margrave of Brandenburg.

In 1348 the university of Prague was founded.

In 1362 the city of Adrianople was taken by the Turks, and the sultan made it his capital. Not long after, the sultan formed for himself a bodyguard called the Janissaries, who in the course of time acquired such power that, like the Roman Prætorians, they made and unmade sultans, and even put them to death. They were finally abolished in 1826.

8. RICHARD II.—1377-1399

65. Richard, the son of the Black Prince, and grandson of Edward III., was only eleven years old at the death of his grandfather. On his arrival in London he was received with enthusiasm, owing partly to the renown of his father, and partly to his own handsome appearance. The country had been left weakened and in debt by Edward III., and, the truce with France having come to an end, England was threatened both from that quarter and from Scotland. In these circumstances a council was appointed by parliament to govern the kingdom; but the real power was usurped by two ambitious uncles of the young king, the duke of Lancaster, who was very unpopular, and the duke of Gloucester.

66. The French at once commenced ravaging the English coasts, and the Scotch renewed their border raids. The funds necessary to repel these enemies had to be raised by oppressive taxation, and in 1380 a poll-tax of one shilling was imposed upon all persons above the age of fifteen. The manner in which one of the collectors behaved towards the daughter of one Walter, a tiler of Dartford (commonly called Wat Tyler), exasperated the father so much, that he slew the offender on the spot. The tax itself, which fell heaviest on the poor, had already excited great discontent; and when the Dartford outrage became known, the people rose in arms, making Wat Tyler their leader, and the rebellion spread to all the south-eastern counties. Soon a large army of the malcontents marched upon London in 1381. It assembled on Blackheath, where a priest called John Ball proclaimed the equality of all men, asking his hearers—

“When Adam delved, and Eve span,
Who was then a gentleman?”

The populace of London applauded the rebels, broke open the prisons, destroyed the palace of the Duke of Lancaster, and murdered not only the gentlemen they could seize, but even the Flemish artizans and traders, *

whose prosperity excited the jealousy of the mob. The king met the rebels in person. As Wat Tyler was speaking to the king, and significantly playing with his dagger, the mayor of London, fearing for his sovereign's life, stabbed Wat Tyler, who was finally dispatched by one of Richard's attendants. This act might have led to very serious consequences; but they were avoided by the king granting the demands of the insurgents. These were—the abolition of villeinage, or slavery; fixed rents, in place of compulsory service; the free exercise of trades; and a general pardon. Richard not only promised to comply, but declared that he would be their leader. The rebels were then induced to disperse, but the king at once assembled a large force, and ordered a great many of the insurgents to be executed. When the insurrection was completely crushed, the king got parliament to annul the concessions he had made. Richard thus at once displayed courage, weakness, and dishonesty, and parliament justly charged him with having caused the insurrection by mismanagement and by oppressing the poor.

67. The war against France was carried on in the meantime without any noteworthy results. The Scotch were punished for their inroads by Richard himself taking the field against them with a large force, burning Edinburgh, Perth, and several other places, while the Scotch retreated before him without offering any resistance.

68. As the king advanced in age his conduct did not show that firmness and decision which had been expected of him, and he allowed himself to be guided by two insolent favourites—Michael de la Pole, a foreigner, whom he created Earl of Suffolk and chancellor, and Robert de Vere, whom he made Marquis of Dublin. This step rendered the king so unpopular that, under the influence of the Duke of Gloucester, parliament obliged him to give up Suffolk, and appoint a regency, with Gloucester at its head. Richard, mortified at this, privately consulted the judges, who gave it as their opinion that the regency was illegal, and that those who had forced him to sanction it were guilty of high treason.

When Gloucester was informed of this, he had the judges seized, arraigned them for high treason, and had two of them executed. The two favourites made their escape in 1388. In the same year a battle was fought against the Scotch at Otterbourne, which is celebrated in the ballad of Chevy Chase.

69. In May 1389, Richard openly declared that he was now old enough to manage the affairs of the kingdom. He took the reigns of government into his own hands, but did not enter upon any violence against Gloucester; and for a time the troubles of the kingdom were somewhat lulled by the return to England of John of Gaunt (*i.e.*, Ghent, in Belgium), the fourth son of Edward III., who had been engaged in a contest for the the crown of Castile. Richard's first wife, Anne of Bohemia, died in 1394. The truce with France, which had been renewed from time to time, was now prolonged for twenty-five years, and Richard confirmed the peaceful relation by marrying Isabella, daughter of the French king, a child only seven years old.

70. He now resolved to show that he really was sovereign, and ordered the arrest of Gloucester, who seems to have been intriguing to recover his influence. He was carried to Calais, where he was secretly assassinated in 1397. Several other great nobles also were executed or banished. In these proceedings the king was supported by his uncles, the dukes of York and Lancaster. The parliament, having done away with the council of regency, submissively ratified all his acts. His power now seemed to be firmly established. However, things turned out very differently. Two great nobles, Henry, Earl of Derby, and the Earl of Nottingham, who had formerly been among the king's opponents, had become reconciled to him; and Richard, professing to be perfectly satisfied with their conduct, created the former Duke of Hereford and the latter Duke of Norfolk. Neither, however, trusted the king; and Norfolk once expressed his feeling of insecurity to Hereford, who himself repeated the words to the king, though, when charged

with it, he denied having done so. The dispute of the two dukes was to be decided by single combat, in which God was supposed to give the victory to the righteous. But when the combatants were ready the king stepped in, forbade the fight, and banished Norfolk for life and Hereford for ten years. Richard thus got rid of his most dreaded opponents, and now wielded almost absolute power. Hereford, by his father's death, became Duke of Lancaster, but was not allowed to take possession of his father's estates. Just at this time Richard had gone to Ireland to chastise a party of Irish who had murdered his cousin Roger, earl of March, the presumptive heir to the English crown. Hereford, hearing of the king's absence, and knowing the prevalent discontent, landed with a small force in Yorkshire. He was at once joined by the earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland, and soon found himself at the head of an army of 60,000 men. When at length he was also joined by his uncle, the Duke of York, who acted as regent in Richard's absence, he was in reality master of the situation. When Richard heard of these things he hastened back from Ireland, but was taken prisoner, forced to abdicate, and lodged in the Tower. Parliament assembled at Westminster in 1399, and declared him to have forfeited the crown, and Lancaster in an elaborate speech set forth his claims to it. The parliament, which was wholly on Lancaster's side, readily supported them, and Henry of Lancaster ascended the throne. The same parliament also annulled all the acts of Richard, and ordered him to be imprisoned in a safe place. Early in the year 1400 the news came to London that he had suddenly expired in the castle of Pontefract. Whether he died a natural death or was got rid of by assassination is uncertain. Some maintain that he escaped, and lived for many years afterwards in Scotland.

71. Richard left no children. He was a man of an excitable temperament, and was in turns indolent and violent. When he had his own way, he became a despot, *and, if he had had the power, he might have destroyed*

the liberties which his subjects had gained in the course of centuries. His reign, however, is memorable as the period in which John Wicliffe, a priest of Oxford, proclaimed the fundamental principles of the Reformation. Believing that Christianity ought to be based solely upon the Scriptures, he translated them into English. After much persecution, he ended his life peacefully at Luttrell, 1385. The influence of the papacy in England had been considerably diminished even in the reign of Edward III., parliament having declared null and void the homage exacted by the Pope from King John. In the reign of Richard II., moreover, there was passed the famous statute out-lawing all persons who procured at Rome any translations, excommunications, bulls, or other instruments which touched the king, his crown, and realm. During this reign also a fuller development of the English language took place by Wicliffe's translation of the Bible, and by the appearance of the poems by Geoffrey Chaucer. During the Plantagenet period we find the House of Commons already established, and exercising great power by the side of the House of Lords.

The reign of the Plantagenet kings was an almost uninterrupted contest against the arrogance of the papacy, and this contest was going on not only in England, but in France and Germany. The papacy itself was divided, and from 1378 to 1415 there were two popes, one residing at Rome and the other at Avignon.

During the reign of Richard II., the independence of the Swiss confederation became firmly established in 1385 by the battle of Sempach and the defeat of the Austrians.

Wicliffe and John Huss of Prague became the forerunners of the Reformation. The latter, born in 1369, adopted the doctrines of Wicliffe, and after much persecution, was condemned by the council of Constance and burnt at the stake in 1415.

English literature made great progress during the Plantagenet period, though many works still continued to be written in Latin or French. The English language passed through that stage which is commonly called old English, a period extending from Henry III. to Edward III., that is, from about 1216 to about 1327, when the period of middle English commenced. The chief English writers of the Plantagenet period are:—Robert of Gloucester, who wrote a rhymed history of England from the mythical landing of Brut to Edward I. He lived from 1230 to 1285. Robert Manning, or de Brunne, who compiled a chronicle similar to that of Robert of Gloucester. Among the poets we may mention John Gower (1300-1400), and, above all, Geoffrey Chaucer (1328-1400), the father of English poetry. John Mandeville (1300-1372), said to be the oldest English prose writer, wrote an account of his travels. Contemporary with these was William Langland (about 1362), who wrote a poem called "The Vision of Piers Plowman," a satire on the corruptions of his time; and the Scotchman John Barbour (1320-1395), a priest of Aberdeen, who wrote a poem on Robert Bruce.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was Henry II. engaged at the time of Stephen's death? Mention some of his first acts after his coronation. What lands did he resume? What did the nation hope from Henry II.? What wars was Henry engaged in? What did he leave to the King of Scotland?

2. Who was Hadrian IV.? What bull did Hadrian issue? What was the object of the bull? Who was Geoffrey? What claims did Geoffrey make? How did Henry satisfy him? In what acts of aggrandisement was Henry engaged in France? Mention what you know of Thomas à Becket. In what year was he made archbishop? What did King Henry hope from Thomas à Becket?

3. Why did the king hope to have Becket's assistance? What was Becket's object? What office did he resign? What kind of life did he lead? What was the character of the clergy? What was the king's desire as regards the clergy? What did Becket maintain? What meeting was summoned at Clarendon, and for what purpose? What were the Clarendon Constitutions?

4. How did Becket act at the meeting at Clarendon? Before what council was Becket summoned, and for what purpose? What was the verdict passed on Becket? To what country did he escape, and whose protection had he? What gave rise to the war between France and England? What benefit did Becket receive from the Pope? How did Becket act towards Henry and the bishops opposed to himself? Why did the Pope threaten Henry with interdiction?

5. In what year did Becket return to his archbishopric, and through whose mediation? What bishops did Becket excommunicate, and for what reason? What words did Henry use when the three bishops informed him of their excommunication? What course did Henry's courtiers take? Relate what you know of Becket's end, and in what year was he murdered? How was his death regarded two years later?

6. What course did Henry pursue on hearing of Becket's death? What sentence was passed on Becket's murderers, and what penance was demanded of them?

7. What country engaged the thoughts of Henry II.? What foreigners had

settled in Ireland? What position did Ireland hold as regards the Roman see? What bull did the Pope issue as regards Ireland? What opportunity offered itself to Henry of carrying out the Pope's design upon Ireland? In what year did Henry II. land in Ireland? What advantages did he gain there?

8. What solemn oath did Henry II. take before the papal legate, and what did he promise? What important concessions did Henry obtain?

9. What pilgrimage did Henry II. make? What effect had this pilgrimage upon his subjects? What family troubles came upon Henry? What disturbances did Henry's eldest son cause? What Scottish king took part in the disturbances? Where was he taken prisoner? On what condition was the Scottish king liberated? What course did the English rebels and Henry's sons take? How did Henry II. employ his time during the years of peace which followed?

10. What part of the people did Henry II. regard as the sure foundation of his power? Through what constitution had the independence of the English church been saved? Mention some of the most important advantages gained in England through Henry II. Mention something about his children.

11. What gave rise to a series of severe struggles? Whose part did Henry II. take? Which of Henry's sons died, and in what year? What quarrels continued in Henry's family? What prevented Henry from undertaking a crusade? By whom was Henry II. forced to conclude an inglorious peace? In what year did Henry die? Say what you know of his last days? Which of Henry's sons survived him?

12. Say something of Henry's character.

13. What provinces in France did Richard I. possess when his father died? How did Richard conduct himself upon the death of his father? What did he leave to his brother John? What queen did he release from prison? Whom did Richard I. appoint regent of England? What cruel persecution commenced from the time of Richard's coronation? Say what you know of it.

14. What crusade was Richard determined to undertake? Mention the

means employed to raise money for the crusade. What king bought exemption from doing homage to Richard? In what year did Richard start for the crusade? Whom did Richard appoint as regent during his absence?

15. In conjunction with what king did Richard I. undertake the crusade? Did Richard and Philip Augustus get on amicably together? How did King Richard give particular cause for offence to Philip Augustus? What accounts did King Richard receive of the administration of William of Ely, and what steps did he take? How did Prince John conduct himself during King Richard's absence from England? What prince had King Richard recognised as his successor? How was the bishop of Ely regarded in England? Who tried to overthrow him? What queen maintained King Richard's authority?

16. To what arrangement did John come with the King of France on hearing of Richard's captivity? Who maintained the authority of the lawful king of England? What threats did the Pope make? Whose prisoner was Richard? Before what diet was Richard summoned by the emperor, Henry VI., and what was he charged with? How was Henry VI. conduct regarded, and for what reason was Richard set at liberty? In what year did Richard return to England? What sentence was passed upon John at the diet which Richard assembled? At whose interference did Richard pardon his brother?

17. In what year had Richard entered upon his crusade? Mention his first great exploit. With whom did Richard conclude a peace, and on what conditions? Relate how Richard was taken prisoner?

18. In what war was Richard engaged upon his return to England? In what year was a truce concluded, and for how long? Mention what caused Richard's death, and in what year? Whom did Richard appoint his successor at the time of his death?

19. Say what you know of King Richard's character? What was the state of England during his reign?

20. Whose consent was required during the Anglo-Saxon period to the election of a king, and what had latterly been the custom? Who maintained Prince Arthur's claims? What induced King John to proceed to Normandy immediately after his coronation? What king strengthened Prince Arthur's

opposition to King John, and who persuaded him to make peace with his uncle?

21. Why was King John declared to have forfeited his feudal possessions in France? How did Prince Arthur become King John's prisoner? What became of Prince Arthur, and who was reported to have slain him? Who summoned King John to answer the charge of murder, and what war followed? In what year was John compelled to conclude a peace with the French, and what French territories was he obliged to give up?

22. Why was John obliged to conclude a truce with France? Mention what you know of the conflict between King John and Pope Innocent III. How did the Pope offend King John? How did King John conduct himself towards the barons and the clergy?

23. What measures did the Pope take against England, and in what year? What orders did John issue against the priests? What sentence was passed upon King John by the Pope? How did this sentence affect John? With what countries did John engage in war? What advantages did England gain from these wars?

24. Up to what year did the wars with Scotland and Wales last? In what way did England suffer from these wars? Mention what happened to John in 1212? What king was to mount the English throne? Whom did the Pope send to England, and with what result? What oath did King John take in 1213, and what promises did he make?

25. What effect did these concessions have upon the English nobility? What country was forbidden by the Pope to undertake anything against England? What French provinces did John invade? At what battle was King John's army routed? Mention which provinces in France John was compelled to cede to the French king?

26. How was the news of King John's defeat received in England? What meeting was held by the nobles? What oath did they take? In what year did this happen? What did John ask of the nobles? Did they grant the king's request? What message did King John send to his nobles? Where was the meeting between the king and the barons? Mention what you know of the Magna Charta?

27. What orders did the king issue after the signing of the Magna Charta?

What did King John induce the Pope to do? What was the effect produced upon the barons? To whom did the barons offer the crown of England? What was the result? How did King John try to increase his adherents?

28. What was the national feeling as regards the alliance between the barons and a foreign prince? What Pope died? What misfortunes overtook John and caused his death? In what year did he die?

29. Mention something about King John's character? What advantages were gained by England during his reign?

30. Who was lord paramount of England? Who was crowned as King John's successor, and in what year?

31. What caused Henry to go to France? What good man died in the year 1218? What dispute followed? Who secured for himself the guardianship of King Henry? What course of action did he adopt? Whom did King Henry marry, and what was the result? Who opposed the influx of foreigners? Say what you know about the origin of Parliament.

32. What caused discontent in the nation? Who was Simon de Montfort? What caused the barons to refuse to follow Henry to France? What was the result of the campaign in France?

33. In what year was peace concluded, and what did Henry III. lose by it? How did Henry generally gain his ends? What caused the barons to rise in arms at Westminster? What did the barons demand of the king? Say what you know of the Mad Parliament. What agreement was come to by the parliament? What are the Oxford Statutes? What did the reforms demand?

34. From what oath did the Pope release King Henry? With what object did King Henry visit Louis IX. of France? How was civil war prevented in England? What did King Louis declare at the council at Amiens? How did the English barons receive the French king's verdict, and what was the result? What English princes took part in the wars? Where was a great battle fought, and in what year? Which party was victorious, and who were taken prisoners?

35. What is the Mise of Lewes? Which prisoners were released, and which were kept as hostages? In whose hands was all the power? In what year did Montfort issue a writ for a parliament

to assemble? How does this parliament form an era in our history?

36. What prince escaped from prison? Where did Prince Edward with his army meet the elder Montfort? What battle was fought, and in what year? Who was slain?

37. How was Montfort's death viewed by the nation? How long did hostilities continue? What became of the Oxford Statutes? Say what you know of the Dictum of Kenilworth. Who was Llewellyn, and what was he obliged to do?

38. By whom was a crusade made in 1270? In what year did Henry III. die? Say what you know of his character. Why is Henry III. reign one of the most memorable in English history?

39. Where was Prince Edward at the time of his father's death? How did he spend the first year after his father's death, and when was he crowned?

40. What do you know of the Diet held at Gloucester in 1278? What was the statute of Mortmain?

41. What was King Edward's great scheme? What prince refused obedience to him, and with what object? In what year was an army marched into Wales? What advantages did England gain in Wales? Who was Prince David, and what part did he take in the war? What was the fate of Llewellyn and David?

42. What became of Wales? What prince was born at Carnarvon, and in what year? What title did this prince afterwards receive?

43. How did King Edward employ his time when the affairs of Wales were settled? How were the Jews viewed in England? Say what you know of them. What order was enacted against the Jews by Edward I., and in what year?

44. What Scotch king died in 1286? Say what you know of Alexander's grand-daughter. What was King Edward's wish as regards Scotland? Name the principal claimants to the Scottish throne. To whom was the dispute regarding the Scottish succession referred? What did King Edward demand from the Scottish parliament, and what was the result? Who was elected King of Scotland, and in what year?

45. Why was Baliol summoned to London, and how was he treated by King Edward? What was the cause of the war with France? What course did

Baliol take? What town did Edward take from the Scotch, and in what year? Say what you know of the battle of Dunbar. What became of Baliol? Who was appointed governor of Scotland?

46. What caused the Scotch to rise in rebellion? What compact was signed by Edward I. in 1297, and what obliged him to sign it? Say what you know of William Wallace? When was the battle of Falkirk fought, and which side was successful?

47. Who was Comyn? When was the battle of Roelin fought, and which side was successful? Who were appointed regents of Scotland? What success did the English meet with in Scotland? What was the fate of William Wallace?

48. Who was the legitimate heir to the Scotch throne? Who was Robert Bruce? What meeting was held at Dumfries, and what was resolved upon at this meeting? What was the fate of Comyn? Who was crowned King of Scotland? Into what country did King Edward send an army? How, and where did Edward I. meet with his end? In what year did he die?

49. Say something about the character of Edward I., and what he did for England?

50. Why was the reign of Edward II. one of the most unfortunate in English history? Who was Piers Gaveston? Who banished him from England, and when was he recalled? During what time was Gaveston appointed regent of England, and how did he conduct himself? Who was made viceroy of Ireland? When was Gaveston recalled to England, and how did he conduct himself? Say what you know of the Ordinances. Name the principal ordinances.

51. What caused the nobles to form a party under the leadership of Thomas, earl of Lancaster? Where was Gaveston besieged? What became of him? How did Edward II. act towards the barons after Gaveston's death?

52. Who had recovered possession of Scotland? Who won the battle of Bannockburn? Why was Edward compelled to conclude a truce with Bruce?

53. Say what you know of King Edward's new favourite. What ordinance was passed against Spenser? What steps did King Edward take? Where was a great battle fought, and which party was victorious? What was the

fate of Lancaster? Who were recalled from banishment? What was the result of the fresh attempt made against Scotland?

54. For what purpose did Edward II. send his wife to France? What led to the queen to form connections with the exiled followers of Lancaster? Why did Queen Isabella ask for her eldest son to be sent to France? To whom did the queen betroth her son? By whom was Queen Isabella assisted to levy an army? Where did the queen's army land in England, and with what result to King Edward? Who was made guardian of England? What became of the Spencers? Who was Edward II. imprisoned? What paper was he compelled to sign? Who virtually governed the kingdom? What was the fate of Edward II.? In what year was he murdered?

55. How old was Edward III. at the time of his father's death? By whom was the regency headed?

56. What induced Bruce of Scotland to invade England? In what year was peace concluded between England and Scotland, and what advantages did Scotland gain by it? To whom was the Scotch heir betrothed? Who determined to overthrow Mortimer, and with what success? How did Mortimer conduct himself? What did Edward resolve to do?

57. What was the fate of Mortimer? How did Queen Isabella spend the rest of her life?

58. Mention the favourable opportunity offered to Edward for recovering his feudal superiority over Scotland. Who instigated Edward Baliol to assert his right to the Scotch throne? What did Baliol promise Edward III. in return for his aid? Who was Douglas, and what was his fate? Who was made King of Scotland? What obliged Baliol to flee from his subjects? What country sent supplies to Scotland? What scheme did Edward harbour against France?

59. What King of France died in 1328? What was the law in France regarding the succession? What is the Salic law? Who was chosen King of France? What claims did Edward lay to the French throne, and were his claims valid? What determined Edward to conquer France? What potentates favoured his claims? In what year did King Edward sail to Flanders, and with what result? What was the result of the second expedition?

60. How did England regard Edward's arbitrary exactions? What measure was carried by parliament, and in what year? What was the cause of the war in Brittany? What led to the war with France? Till what year did the war with France last, and what brilliant victory was gained in this year? What prince accompanied King Edward to France? What famous battle was won by the English, and in what year? Mention what you know of the battle of Crecy.

61. What town in France was besieged by the English? By whom was England invaded? Where were the Scotch defeated, and in what year? What king was taken prisoner, and upon what conditions did he obtain his freedom? How long did Calais hold out against the English, and in what year did it surrender? Give an account of the story in connection with the surrender of Calais. What truce was concluded? What king died during this interval?

62. For what event is the year 1349 memorable? Say what you know of the battle of Poitiers? What king was taken prisoner by the English, and how was he treated? In what year was the treaty of Bretigny concluded, and what were its conditions? Why did King John give himself up as prisoner, and where did he die? Name King John's successor.

63. Where was the Black Prince holding his court? For what purpose did the Black Prince levy heavy taxes on his subjects? What caused hostilities to break out afresh between France and England? What possessions did the English retain in France? In what year did the Black Prince die? How long did Edward III. survive his son, and whom did he appoint his successor?

64. Say something about the character of Edward III. What advantages did the people gain when Edward III. made heavy demands upon them? What was the state of trade and industry? What people were encouraged to settle in England?

65. Whose son was Richard II., and how old was he when he came to the throne? In what state had the country been left at the time of Edward's death? What countries threatened to invade England? What council was appointed? By whom was the real power usurped?

66. Say what you know of the poll-tax, and why was it raised? Why did

the people rise in rebellion, and whom did they make their leader? Where did the rebels assemble? Say what you know of John Ball? How did the rebels conduct themselves in London? Why did the mayor of London stab Wat Tyler? What were the demands of the insurgents, and what did King Richard promise? What concessions were annulled by parliament? What character did Richard display?

67. What wars were being continued? What was the result of the war in Scotland?

68. What made the king unpopular? What regency was Richard II. obliged to appoint? Why were the judges arraigned for high treason, and what was their fate? What became of the king's favourites? What battle was fought in 1388?

69. What did Richard declare in 1389? What prince returned to England, and what was the effect upon the kingdom? In what year did Richard's wife die? What truce was prolonged, and for how long? Whom did Richard II. marry?

70. What was the fate of Gloucester? What council was done away with, and how did the parliament act? What nobles were created dukes of Hereford and Norfolk? Say what you know of the dispute between the dukes of Hereford and Norfolk, and how was their dispute to be decided? What steps did Richard II. take to get rid of his dreaded opponents? Who became Duke of Lancaster? Why did Richard II. go to Ireland? What steps did Hereford take during the king's absence, and by whom was he joined? What was Richard forced to do, and where was he lodged? What did parliament declare, and in what year? Who laid claim to the throne, and with what success? Say what you know of the end of Richard II.

71. Say something about the character of Richard II. Say what you know of John Wicliffe. What influence had the papacy in England during the reign of Richard II., and what did parliament declare null and void? What famous statute was passed in the reign of Richard II.? By whom was the Bible translated, and what effect had it upon the English language? What great poets lived during this time? What position did the House of Commons take during the Plantagenet period?

CHAPTER VI.

THE HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Henry IV. (1399-1413). Disputed succession. Insurrections.</p> <p>2. The Percy's ally themselves with Owen Glendower. Battle of Shrewsbury.</p> <p>3. Renewal of the rebellion and its failure.</p> <p>4. Last years of Henry's life.</p> <p>5. Henry V. (1413-1422). Persecution of the Lollards.</p> <p>6. Henry plans the conquest of France. Battle of Agincourt.</p> <p>7. Treaty of Troyes.</p> <p>8. War against the Dauphin. Henry's illness and death.</p> <p>9. Henry VI. (1422-1461). The regency and war with Charles VII. of France.</p> <p>10. The war continued. The Duke of Gloucester and the bishop of Winchester. Siege of Orleans.</p> | <p>11. Joan d'Arc, the maid of Orleans, captured by the English and burnt at Rouen as a witch.</p> <p>12. England's power in France declines, and Charles VII. restored to his throne. Calais, the only town in France left to the English.</p> <p>13. Condition of England during the French war.</p> <p>14. The Earl of Suffolk.</p> <p>15. Rebellion of Jack Cade.</p> <p>16. Battle of St. Alban's. The Earl of Warwick takes up arms against the king, and makes him prisoner. The Duke of York receives the administration of the kingdom, with the right of the succession.</p> <p>17. Edward, the eldest son of York, goes to London and asserts his claims to the crown.</p> |
|--|---|

1. HENRY IV.—1399-1413.

1. Henry IV. may with justice be called a usurper, for the rightful heir to the throne was Edmund, earl of March, great-grandson of Lionel, the second son of Edward III. Although, therefore, the people in London rejoiced at his accession, still the justice of his claims was not universally recognised either at home or abroad. In England a conspiracy of several nobles was formed against him, but the treachery of the Earl of Rutland saved the king, who ordered the other conspirators to be executed. Charles VI. of France, indignant at the deposition of Richard, his son-in-law, was likewise assuming a hostile attitude; but war was averted, though the coasts of England were ravaged by the French for some time. A really formidable insurrection broke out in Wales, headed by Owen Glendower, who had been attached to Richard II., and for that reason had been deprived of a portion of his estates. This man, who claimed to be descended from the ancient kings of Wales,

1. Charles VI. of France reigned from 1380 to 1422.

roused the spirit of his countrymen, and placing himself at their head, defeated the forces sent against him, and made Edward Mortimer, uncle of the Earl of March, his prisoner. Henry made an unsuccessful attempt to retrieve this disaster, though he was probably glad to get rid of Mortimer, who had married a daughter of the Earl of Northumberland. When the latter wished to ransom his son-in-law, the king refused his permission. These things happened during the first two years after Henry's accession.

2. Meanwhile, Henry Percy, called Hotspur, a son of the Earl of Northumberland, had gained a victory over the Scotch, whose leader, Douglas, with many other nobles, fell into his hands in 1402. The king forbade Hotspur to receive a ransom for them, and thereby exasperated that powerful family against himself. The three Percys, the Earl of Northumberland, the Earl of Worcester, and Hotspur, together with Scrope, archbishop of York, now formed an alliance with Owen Glendower against the king. Douglas and his friends were then liberated on condition of their joining the confederates against Henry. While on their march to Wales with twelve thousand men they fell in with King Henry near **Shrewsbury**, where a most bloody battle was fought. Hotspur was killed, and Worcester and Douglas were made prisoners, whereupon their army dispersed, 1403. Worcester was beheaded on the spot, but Douglas was spared, and Northumberland, who had not been able to take part in the battle, was pardoned. Owen Glendower, however, held out, being assisted by French auxiliaries, and the war against him was continued for many years.

3. Two years later, 1405, Northumberland and his followers renewed the rebellion, hoping to gain the English crown for the Earl of March; but the enterprise failed; Northumberland fled into Scotland, while Archbishop Scrope and others were beheaded. In a third attempt, in 1407, Northumberland was slain in Yorkshire, near Tadcaster. In 1405, Prince James, son of *Robert III.* of Scotland, while on a voyage to France,

had been intercepted by Henry, and was kept as a prisoner at Windsor for nearly twenty years.

4. Towards the end of his reign, Henry became involved in a war with France, in which his second son, the Duke of Clarence, laid waste some provinces of that country. But he stopped his ravages on the receipt of nine thousand crowns. During the last years of his life the king suffered much from disease, and perhaps also from remorse at the crimes he had committed for the purpose of securing his crown. He died in London in 1413, leaving four sons and two daughters. Henry's position throughout his reign was one of great difficulty, but he maintained it with great ability, though not without much cruelty; for he unrelentingly ordered his vanquished enemies to be executed; and his persecution of the sect called Lollards was the first in which in England heretics were burned alive. His religious notions were of a very narrow and bigoted kind, and he was more concerned about the worldly prosperity of the church than of that of his own subjects.

2. HENRY V.—1413-1422.

5. When Henry V. ascended the throne he was twenty-six years old. In his early years he had greatly distinguished himself in the war against Owen Glendower and the Percys; but this period of activity was followed

4. The Lollards was the name given to the disciples and followers of Wicliffe, who traversed the country and preached the new doctrines in open air meetings. Wicliffe was expelled from the University of Oxford, but was allowed to live in peace as rector of Lutterworth until his death. The name Lollards is probably derived from the Low German word *lullen*, to sing in a somewhat subdued tone, alluding to the singing of religious hymns. The first of the sect of the Lollards who was burnt at the stake was William Sawtre, chaplain of St. Oswald's, London.

5. While the Lollards were persecuted in England, a great council was assembled at Constance which put an end to the schism in the church, and by which John Huss and Jerome of Prague were condemned for heresy and burnt alive, 1415. Six years before this, in consequence of the dissensions in the University of Prague, that of Leipzig had been founded.

It was in the reign of Henry IV. that the Mongol Tartars, under Tamerlane, overran India and established themselves at Delhi as their capital in 1402. This Mongol dynasty maintained itself till 1803.

In 1402, the Turks were besieging Constantinople, but as the Mongols who had ravished Persia were advancing westward, the Sultan was obliged to return to Asia Minor, where he became their prisoner.

by one of indolence and profligacy, caused, it is said, by the jealousy of his father. When, however, he was called to the throne, he at once became an altered man, and dismissed his disorderly companions. On the whole, his first acts were characterised by justice and generosity, for he released the Earl of March from his confinement, and restored to Hotspur's son, Henry, his estates and his rank. He was, however, shrewd enough to perceive that his right to wear the crown rested on a very feeble foundation, and that he must, above all, secure the support of the clergy. This he gained by persecuting the heretical Lollards, of whom he had shown a bitter hatred even before. Their chief protector, Sir John Oldcastle (commonly called Lord Cobham), who had been a faithful servant of Henry IV., was locked up in the Tower, but having escaped into Wales, he assembled a large number of followers, and the report being spread that a body of them had conspired to seize the king, Henry, upon this mere rumour, had a large number arrested, and about forty were executed in 1414. Cobham himself found safety in flight, but four years later he was captured and condemned as a heretic and a traitor.

6. After these things all Henry's thoughts seem to have been absorbed by the one desire to conquer France, the disturbed state of which seemed to afford him a favourable opportunity. King Charles VI. being found incompetent to govern his kingdom, his brother, Duke of Orleans, and John, duke of Burgundy, were disputing about the regency. Henry of England secretly fostered the dispute, and entered into negotiations with the Duke of Burgundy. Having further allied himself with the Emperor of Germany, the King of Aragon, and other princes, he assembled a large force at Southampton for the purpose of invading France. When the expedition was on the point of starting, Henry heard of the discovery of a formidable conspiracy, whose object it was to depose

6. It should be noticed that until very recent times the kings of England also called themselves kings of France, and Henry V. was very near making good his claim to this title,

him and raise the Earl of March to the throne. The leaders were arrested, hastily tried, and executed, 1415. After the short delay caused by the proceedings, he landed with his army of about thirty thousand men at Harfleur, which was taken after a siege of five weeks. But, owing to the heat of the summer, diseases broke out among his troops, which reduced them to half their original number, so that further undertakings became impossible. But Henry, undaunted, determined to force his way by land to Calais. When he arrived at the banks of the Somme, he found the French army drawn up on the plain of **Agincourt**, which arrested his progress towards Calais. The enemy's forces were four times more numerous than the English, yet in the battle which ensued (October 1415), the English, with indomitable courage and steadiness, completely routed the French. The victory was decisive: the French lost ten thousand men, and among them the flower of their nobility; while the prisoners amounted to fourteen thousand, among whom were the Dukes of Orleans and Bourbon, and other distinguished nobles. The English loss is said to have been very small, but the Duke of York and the Earl of Suffolk were among the slain. Henry, without trying to follow up his victory, proceeded to Calais, and thence to England, where he was received in triumph amid the greatest rejoicings, and easily prevailed upon parliament to vote large sums of money.

7. Meanwhile, the feuds between the Dukes of Orleans and Burgundy continued, and the latter formed an alliance with Henry, who, in 1417, set out on a fresh expedition to conquer France. He landed in Normandy, took and sacked Caen, and then proceeded to Rouen, which surrendered in 1418 after a protracted siege. Henry demanded of Burgundy the surrender of all the provinces ceded to the English in the treaty of Bretigny,

7. In 1417, Frederic VI. of Nürnberg became Margrave of Brandenburg, with which the dignity of Elector was combined. He belonged to the family of Hohenzollern, and from him are descended the sovereigns of Prussia and the present Emperor of Germany.

and the full sovereignty over all his recent conquests. While these negotiations were still going on, the Dukes of Burgundy and Orleans, in sight of their common danger, became reconciled, and the negotiations were broken off. When the two dukes met at Montereau to devise a plan of action against the English, Burgundy was assassinated. Thereupon Queen Isabella with her son, Charles the Dauphin, sought Henry's protection; and a few months later, 1420, the treaty of Troyes was concluded, of which the chief articles were, that Henry should marry Catharine, the daughter of Charles VI. and Isabella, that Charles should retain the title of King of France, but that the government of the kingdom should be left to Henry, and that on Charles' death the French crown should belong to Henry and his heirs for ever. France was thus at his feet, and he at once went to Paris, where the treaty obtained the sanction of the parliament.

8. After celebrating his marriage, Henry returned to England with his bride, being now the acknowledged king of both France and England. While he was here enjoying the height of his popularity, he was informed that his brother, the Duke of Clarence, had been defeated and slain at Beaugé, in Anjou, by the Dauphin, supported by Scotch auxiliaries, 1421. Henry accordingly hastened to France, taking with him James of Scotland, hoping thereby to draw the Scotch auxiliaries to his side. The plan succeeded to some extent; but those Scotchmen who remained faithful to their previous engagement, when taken prisoners, were treated as rebels, which exasperated their countrymen not a little. The war with the Dauphin was continued, and Henry meant to have headed an army against him, but he was suffering from a malady which now assumed a serious aspect. It was therefore necessary to carry him to Vincennes, where, on feeling his end approaching, he assembled his friends, requesting them to take care of his infant son, who had been born to him in 1421 at Windsor. He died August 31, 1422. Henry was an energetic ruler, but unprincipled in his ambition,

and cruel towards those whom he believed to be dangerous to himself. He is often blamed for his persecution of the Lollards, but, independently of his personal motives, he acted in this matter according to the general spirit of the age, and the indiscreet conduct of the Lollards themselves contributed not a little to provoke it. Popular freedom made some progress in his reign, for the petitions of parliament (what we now call bills) up to this time had often been altered by the king; henceforth he was obliged either to reject them or to accept them in the form in which they were brought before him.

3. HENRY VI.—1422-1461.

9. As, at the time of his father's death, Henry VI. was scarcely nine months old, a regency had to be appointed both for France and for England. In the former country it was offered to, but declined by, the Duke of Burgundy, and the Duke of Bedford, brother of Henry V., undertook it, and caused his nephew to be proclaimed King of France, while the Dauphin, Charles VII., maintained himself in the south, and took the title of king, as his father had died a few weeks after Henry V. A war between the regent and the French king was the natural result. In England the Duke of Gloucester, a younger brother of Bedford, was appointed protector of the kingdom, but his actions were controlled by a council of state appointed by parliament.

10. Charles VII. had to rely mainly on the national feeling of the French, which was not favourable to English rule, and on his Scotch auxiliaries. The royal party was defeated in two successive campaigns, in the latter of which, in 1424, about five thousand French were slain. But the importance of these victories was much diminished by the conduct of the Duke of Gloucester, who had married Jacqueline, countess of Hainault; she had left her former husband, a cousin of the Duke of Burgundy, and the latter naturally opposed her and her

new husband when they claimed the estates of the discarded husband. Gloucester, leaving his wife at Mantes, returned to England, and here became involved in a quarrel with Beaufort, bishop of Winchester, to whom the education of the young King of England had been entrusted. The affair became so serious that Bedford, in 1425, was obliged to come to England for the purpose of effecting a reconciliation. Bedford on this occasion, as well as in the dispute about Hainault, behaved most honourably, but still Burgundy could no longer heartily support the English cause. Charles VII., neglecting his opportunities, was attacked by the English in the south, which had always supported him. Bedford began the campaign, in 1428, by laying siege to Orleans, which was conducted by the Earl of Suffolk. While this was going on, the English were victorious in some skirmishes outside the town, and it became evident that Orleans would not hold out much longer. Charles was even meditating a retreat, when the city was saved by one of the most marvellous events recorded in history.

11. A peasant girl, **Joan d'Arc** (commonly called Joan of Arc), of the village of Domremy in Lorraine, had conceived the idea that she was destined by Providence to free her king and country from the hated foreigners. She sought an interview with the king and at once recognised him in a crowd of surrounding courtiers, though she had never seen him before. She told him that she had been sent by God to aid him and inform him that he should be crowned in the ancient city of Rheims. The king consulted his spiritual advisers, and as they saw no wrong in his availing himself of her services, she was dressed in the armour of a knight, and being assisted by able officers, she managed to enter the city through the midst of the besiegers in 1429. Her appearance acted like magic on the spirit of the inhabitants, and several successful sallies were made. The English, on the other hand, were struck with terror, believing her to be a sorceress, and about a week after her arrival the siege was raised. The French now gained

several victories, and Joan persuaded the king to proceed to Rheims. The march with twelve thousand men was successfully accomplished, and Charles was crowned at Rheims in the ancient fashion, amid the jubilant acclamations of the people. The Maid of Orleans, as she was called, now considering her mission to be accomplished, wished to return home, but the king refused to part with so valuable an ally. The war was continued, but the French avoided any decisive engagements. At last, in a sally from Compiegne, 1430, the maid was taken prisoner by the Duke of Burgundy, who delivered her up to Bedford. She was tried for sorcery by the bishop of Beauvais, who was entirely devoted to the English interest. She was accordingly found guilty, and burned alive as a witch in the market-place at Rouen, in 1431, and her ashes were thrown into the Seine.

12. From this moment fortune forsook the English; the war still lingered on for some time, until, in 1432, events occurred which gave a new turn to affairs. The alliance between Burgundy and the English had been lukewarm ever since Gloucester's marriage with Jacqueline. The Duchess of Bedford, a sister of Burgundy, died, and her husband, a few months later, married Jacquetta of Luxemburg, of which country Burgundy was the lord superior. As his consent to the marriage had not been asked, he felt annoyed, and resolved to support the legitimate king, Charles VII. After some negotiations, a congress was held at Arras, 1435, at which the English refused the offer to hold Normandy and Aquitaine as fiefs from the French crown; but, as

12. In 1438, Duke Albrecht of Austria acquired by marriage the crowns of Bohemia and Hungary, and was elected emperor. The imperial dignity thenceforth remained in the family of Hapsburg, until, in 1806, when many of the German princes deserted the emperor, he withdrew from Germany and assumed the title of Emperor of Austria, which was his hereditary possession.

In 1448, the last Greek Emperor of Constantinople ascended the throne, which he lost in 1453, when Constantinople was taken by the Turks, who thus established themselves in the fairest part of Europe. Many learned Greeks took refuge in the West with their literary treasures, which caused the revival of letters, and thus paved the way for the Protestant Reformation.

In 1450, John Gutenberg invented the art of printing. This important art was introduced into England by William Caxton in 1474.

Bedford died in the same year, the treaty was signed. The death of the able regent of France was a severe blow to Henry. His successor was Richard, duke of York. As the disputes between Gloucester and the bishop of Winchester prevented reinforcements being sent to France, Charles, in 1436, was enabled to enter Paris, and the restoration to his ancestral throne was now complete. The war, however, still went on until 1444, when a truce was concluded which lasted till 1450. During this truce, the Earl of Suffolk negotiated a marriage between Henry and Margaret of Anjou, a niece of the French king. Notwithstanding this marriage the French invaded Normandy and conquered the whole of it. Cherbourg and Bayonne also fell into their hands, and one place after another was lost until, in 1453, nothing was left to the English but Calais.

13. If we now turn our attention to the state of England during these French wars, we find that the country was suffering from the jealousy and quarrels between the Protector and the bishop of Winchester, which had been kept somewhat in check so long as Bedford was alive. The bishop, who had in the meantime become cardinal, had gained the upper hand, and even went so far as to accuse the wife of his rival of sorcery and treason, for which she was sent as a prisoner to the Isle of Man. Gloucester, who felt this blow most keenly, took his revenge two years later by bringing the charge of treason against the cardinal. The latter, however, answered it by producing a general pardon from the king. Queen Margaret, an ambitious and imperious woman, completely governed her husband, and exerted all her influence in favour of the cardinal and the Earl of Suffolk. The latter, dreading Gloucester as a dangerous opponent, caused the parliament, in 1447, to accuse him of treason. He was found guilty and thrown into prison, where, after a few days, he was found dead in his bed. Two months later the cardinal also died, and was succeeded, as minister, by Suffolk, now the principal *favourite* of the queen.

14. The house of Lancaster had now lost its chief supports, and the king himself had neither inclination nor capacity to govern. Suffolk was universally hated, because he was believed to be the cause of the loss of the French possessions, and to be concerned in the sudden death of Gloucester. But no one detested him more than the Duke of York, who was beginning to think of claiming the English crown, as Henry VI. was as yet without issue. At a parliament held in 1450, the Commons brought several accusations against Suffolk, and even the court itself was obliged to consent to his being banished for five years. But the indignation against him was irrepressible, and while he was crossing over to Calais he was murdered by a common seaman, who was never tried or punished for it.

15. Soon after this, news reached England of another defeat in France, and the indignation at the mismanagement of the war, which had cost so much blood and money, at last manifested itself in an open rebellion in Kent, which was headed by an Irishman, **Jack Cade**, who pretended to be a descendant of Mortimer. At the head of twenty thousand men he entered London, and put to death many men of rank and eminence, who were regarded as the cause of the people's losses and sufferings. The rebels demanded that the Duke of York, who was very popular on account of his mild disposition, his courage, and ability, should be entrusted with the management of affairs. But as Jack Cade by his arbitrary proceedings excited the alarm of the Londoners, they obliged him and his followers to depart, and the promise of a general amnesty induced them to disperse. But notwithstanding this promise, Cade was put to death in Sussex. The Duke of York, knowing the weakness of the government, came across from Ireland with four thousand of his vassals, when the plan of appointing him as successor to Henry was already talked of. Soon after the suppression of the rebellion, the Duke of Somerset, the great-grandson of John of Gaunt, who had just lost Normandy, returned to England, and a feud broke out between him and York.

16. When, in October 1452, a son was born to Henry, while the king was suffering from a severe malady, Somerset was arrested, and parliament declared York protector of the kingdom. When the king recovered, he reinstated Somerset and dismissed York; the latter then took up arms and met the Duke of Somerset near **St. Albans**, in 1455, where a great battle was fought, in which Somerset was killed and King Henry wounded. But Henry pardoned the victor and made him regent, as he was again attacked by his malady. On his recovery York again retired from his functions, and Henry, perceiving the ill-feeling subsisting between the houses of Somerset and York, resolved to bring about a reconciliation. A meeting took place in London, at which the Earl of Warwick, governor of Calais, was also present; and a reconciliation was effected. No sooner had Warwick returned to Calais than he committed an outrage for which he was called to account by the king. An attempt was made to assassinate Warwick, who was an active partizan of York; and as the queen was suspected of having planned the deed, York again prepared for war. The queen, with a numerous army, met him near Ludlow, 1459; that of York was only one-fourth of that of the queen, and being, moreover, deserted by one of his best officers, his little band dispersed, and he fled into Ireland, while Warwick returned to Calais. The parliament, soon after this triumph of the royal arms, attainted York and all his followers. Upon this, Warwick returned to England, and soon assembled a considerable force with which, near Northampton, he defeated the royal army and took the king prisoner in 1460. The queen, with her son, Edward, escaped into Scotland. The Duke of York now returned from Ireland and openly claimed the crown, to which he had no more, in fact fewer, claims than the house of Lancaster, which had possessed it for nearly sixty years. Parliament,

16. In 1451, the University of Glasgow was founded.
The wars between the houses of York and Lancaster are commonly called "The War of the Roses," and lasted from 1455 till 1485.

however, decided that Henry should remain king, but that he should be succeeded by the duke and his heirs, and that in the meantime the administration of the kingdom should be committed to the duke. The rights of Prince Edward were entirely disregarded. Queen Margaret, naturally dissatisfied with this arrangement, collected in the north of England a large force of men faithful to their king, and attacking York's army near Wakefield (1460), utterly defeated her enemy in less than half an hour. York fell in the battle, and one of his sons, with many other nobles, was put to death without a trial.

17. Edward, the eldest son and heir of York, was at Gloucester when he heard of his father's death. He hastily assembled as large a force as he could, and marched towards London, but being followed by Jasper Tudor, earl of Pembroke, he turned upon him, and in a sharp encounter defeated him at Mortimer's Cross in Herefordshire. Meanwhile, the queen advanced southward without meeting with any opposition till she reached St. Albans. She there gained a victory over the Yorkists, who were commanded by Warwick, and rescued the king. But as her soldiers were indulging in plunder and rapine, Edward had time to reach London before her arrival. An assembly of nobles, prelates, and citizens met, before which he charged the king with having broken his engagements, and with imbecility; at the same time he set forth his claims to the crown. These claims were admitted by the assembly, and in March 1461 he was proclaimed King of England under the name of Edward IV. Henry lived ten years after this, but his history during that period belongs to the reign of his successor.

18. Thus ended the dynasty of Lancaster. Notwithstanding his childish weakness and his incapacity to govern, Henry VI. possessed virtues which have endeared his memory to posterity; for he is the founder of several colleges both at Oxford and Cambridge which are nobler monuments than the trophies of brilliant victories.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was the rightful heir to the English throne? How was the succession of Henry IV. regarded? What conspiracy was formed against him, and how did it end? Why did Charles VI. of France assume a hostile attitude? What insurrection broke out? Who was Owen Glendower? Whom did Owen Glendower make his prisoner?

2. Who was Henry Percy? What victory did he gain, and who became his prisoner? What alliance was formed against the king, and why? On what conditions were Douglas and his friends liberated? What great battle was fought near Shrewsbury, and who was killed? What was done with Worcester and Douglas? By whom was the war continued?

3. By whom was the rebellion renewed, and what was the result? What was the result of the third attempt? What do you know of Prince James of Scotland?

4. In what war did Henry IV. become involved, and what induced him to terminate it? What was the state of the king's health during the last years of his life, and in what year did he die? How did Henry IV. maintain his position throughout his reign? What do you know of the Lollards? What were Henry's religious views?

5. How had Henry V. already distinguished himself when he came to the throne? How did Henry V. conduct himself after his ascension to the throne? Whose support was Henry V. anxious to secure, and how did he gain his end? Who was Lord Cobham? What steps did Lord Cobham take, and with what success? What was the end of Lord Cobham?

6. What was Henry's great desire? What dispute favoured Henry's design? Whose claims did Henry favour? With whom did he ally himself? What conspiracy was discovered, and what was the fate of the conspirators? What do you know of the siege of Harfleur? What was Henry's determination? What do you know of the battle of Agincourt, and in what year was it won? What reception did Henry meet with in England?

7. What feuds continued in France? With whom did the Duke of Burgundy

form an alliance? What town was besieged by Henry, and with what result? What demands did Henry make on Burgundy? What steps did the Dukes of Burgundy and Orleans take, and who was assassinated? Who sought Henry's protection? What treaty was concluded, and in what year? Mention the articles of the treaty of Troyes. What advantages did Henry gain from this treaty?

8. Why did Henry V. hasten to France? Why did he take James of Scotland with him, and with what success? Why was Henry conveyed to Vincennes, and what did he ask of his friends? In what year did Henry V. die? Say something of Henry's character. What special progress was made in the reign of Henry V.?

9. Who were appointed regents of France and England? Who was proclaimed King of France? Where did Charles VII. maintain himself? What war ensued? Who was made Protector of England?

10. Which party gained success in two campaigns in France? Mention how the importance of these victories was diminished. Why was Bedford obliged to return to England; and how did he conduct himself? What campaign was begun in 1428, and what town was besieged?

11. What do you know of Joan of Arc? What was the result of Joan of Arc's assistance? How did the English regard Joan of Arc? Where was Charles VII. crowned? What was the end of the maid of Orleans?

12. Why did Burgundy resolve to support Charles VII.? What treaty was signed in 1435, and what duke died in this year? Who was made regent of France? What prevented reinforcements from being sent to France? In what year was Charles VII. restored to the French throne? Till what year did the war continue? What marriage was negotiated by the Earl of Suffolk? What places were conquered by the French, and what town in France alone remained to the English?

13. From what was England suffering during these wars? Why did the Duke of Gloucester bring the charge of treason against the bishop of Winchester, and

what was the result? What kind of woman was Queen Margaret, and in whose favour did she exert her influence? What was the end of Gloucester? Who succeeded the cardinal as minister, and became the queen's greatest favourite?

14. What capacity had Henry VI. for governing? Why was Suffolk universally hated? Who thought of laying claim to the English throne? What sentence was passed on Suffolk, and how did he meet with his end?

15. What caused the rebellion in Kent, and by whom was it headed? What demands did the rebels make? What was the fate of Jack Cade? Between what nobles did a feud break out?

16. In what year was Henry's son born? Who was declared protector of the kingdom during the king's illness? Between what nobles was a battle fought at St. Albans, and who was killed? What reconciliation did Henry VI. bring

about? Why did the Duke of York prepare for war? Where did the armies meet, and what was the result? What steps did the parliament take against York and his followers? In what year did Warwick take Henry prisoner, and what became of the queen and her son Edward? Had the Duke of York any claims to the English throne? What decision did parliament come to as regards the government and the succession? In what year was the battle of Wakefield fought, and what was the result?

17. What steps did Edward (the eldest son of York) take after his father's death? Whom did Edward defeat at Mortimer's Cross? Where did Queen Margaret gain a victory? What charges were brought against Henry by the assembly? Who was proclaimed king, and in what year? Say something of the character of Henry VI. What dynasty ends with Henry VI.?

CHAPTER VII.

THE HOUSE OF YORK.

1. Edward IV. (1461-1483). War between him and the Lancastrians who are defeated. Henry VI. escapes into Scotland.

2. Adventures of Queen Margaret and Henry VI.

3. Edward's conduct after his victory: he marries Elizabeth, widow of Sir John Grey.

4. His partiality to her family excites the higher nobility. Warwick.

5. Insurrection in the north; defeat of the king's army.

6. Warwick and Clarence take to flight. Warwick returns and demands the restoration of Henry VI.

7. King Henry restored, Edward escapes into Flanders.

8. Edward lands at Ravenspur; Henry

is delivered up to him, and Margaret is defeated. Edward's cruelty.

9. The house of Lancaster extinct. War with France. Treaty of Pecquigni. Death of Clarence.

10. Affairs of Scotland.

11. Edward V. (1483-1488) is carried to London and lodged in the Tower, and Gloucester is made protector of the kingdom, and by intrigues gains the crown.

12. Edward, with his brother, dies or is killed in the Tower.

13. Richard III. (1483-1485). Insurrections break out.

14. Richmond lands at Milford Haven. Richard is killed in battle.

15. General character of Richard.

1. EDWARD IV.—1461-1483.

1. Edward IV., who on his accession was nineteen years old, was, as we have seen, the second son of Richard, duke of York, and claimed the throne because he was a

lineal descendant of Lionel, son of Edward III.; and as his claim was recognised by parliament, he was proclaimed king without hesitation. But the crown which had been thus readily conceded to him had to be defended at once, even before his coronation, by force of arms; for the Lancastrian party, led by the brave Queen Margaret, had assembled a large force in Yorkshire at Towton, where Edward with little more than forty thousand men attacked them. Both parties fought with desperate courage, and no quarter was given. The contest for a time was undecided, but in the end Edward gained the day, and the massacre among the vanquished was terrible: thirty thousand dead are said to have covered the battlefield. King Henry VI., with his wife and son, escaped into Scotland, where they met with a hospitable reception, on ceding Berwick-on-Tweed to the Scottish king. Edward now returned to London and was crowned. Parliament met in November, and saluted him as the true heir to the crown, while the Lancastrian kings were declared usurpers, and the late royal family and its adherents were treated as traitors and deprived of their estates, which were given as rewards to Edward's supporters. Many executions also took place to strike terror into the friends of King Henry.

2. Meanwhile, Margaret sought the aid of the Duke of Brittany, and of the wily Louis XI. of France. Though scantily provided with men and money, she invaded the north-east of England, 1464; but her army was routed and dispersed by Lord Montacute, a brother of Warwick. During her wanderings after this defeat, she and her son, it is said, fell into the hands of robbers. When she had with difficulty escaped from them, she came upon another robber who approached her with a drawn sword. Margaret, with great presence of mind, courageously said to him: "I commit to thee the son of thy king." Disarmed by these words the robber not only abstained from violence, but conducted the queen safely to her friends. She took

refuge in France, while Henry VI. found an asylum in North Wales. Thence he again proceeded to the north of England, where the Lancastrian party was, and always had been, strongest. He was accompanied by several exiled nobles, and his force was increased by many of the northern barons and Scottish chiefs. But, frightened by the approach of Warwick, the king fled and concealed himself, until 1466, when he was treacherously delivered into the hands of Edward, who for several years kept him as a prisoner in the Tower.

3. Edward now enriched his followers with the confiscated estates of the exiled nobles. Notwithstanding his irregular and dissolute life, he was very popular with the great mass of the people, on account of his valour and amiable affability, though he never was wanting in energetic measures to maintain law and order, and to increase the prosperity of his subjects. He strengthened himself by alliances with foreign nations; but when he felt himself pretty secure on the throne, he gave the reins to his sensual propensities. Several plans were formed for his marrying a lady of suitable rank, when he became acquainted with Elizabeth, the charming young widow of Sir John Grey, who had fallen fighting in the ranks of King Henry. After a time he married her privately, but soon made the step known, and caused her to be solemnly crowned.

4. This marriage was soon followed by fatal consequences. Edward conferred extraordinary honours and favours upon the relations of his wife, who belonged to the lower aristocracy. This exasperated not a little the old and powerful aristocratic families, such as the Nevilles, to whom Edward's own mother belonged. Thus Elizabeth's father, Richard Woodville, was made Earl of Rivers, and her sisters were given in marriage to dukes and earls. The Earl of Warwick especially felt hurt at the king showering his favours upon an inferior order, all of whom, moreover, belonged to the Lancastrian party. Even the king's own brother, George, duke of Clarence, who was married to a daughter of Warwick, sided with the earl, a man more powerful and influential almost than the king himself.

5. About this time the country people in the north rose in arms against the collectors of an ancient tax, levied for the benefit of the clergy. The insurgents, though checked by Warwick's brother, the Earl of Northumberland, soon acquired a force of sixty thousand men, led by relatives of Warwick himself, and their cry now was, that the king should remove the Woodvilles and draw to himself the royal princes and the ancient nobility. King Edward once more endeavoured to come to an understanding with Warwick and Clarence, but neither of them was willing to become reconciled, and Warwick even incited the people of Kent to rebellion. The king's army was defeated by the rebels near **Banbury**, 1469, where the queen's father and brother were taken and beheaded. After a time, tolerable terms were established between the king, Warwick, and Clarence; but the reconciliation was not honest, and in 1470 the king with difficulty escaped from an attack of Clarence.

6. Early in the same year an insurrection broke out in Lincolnshire, which demanded the restoration of Henry VI. Edward, with his usual energy, quickly took up arms and subdued the rebellion; but when it was found out that it had been excited by Warwick and Clarence, both fled into France, where Queen Margaret came to an understanding with Warwick, who promised to effect the restoration of Henry, and gave his daughter, Anne, in marriage to Prince Edward, who was now seventeen years old. King Edward, meanwhile, abandoned himself to his usual pursuits, and treated the suggestion of a possible invasion of England with ridicule. But while he was engaged in quelling an insurrection in the north, Warwick landed with a fleet at Dartmouth, and issued a proclamation in which he demanded the restoration of Henry VI. Edward not being sufficiently prepared to meet the enemy, sought the protection of his brother-in-law, Charles the Bold of Burgundy.

7. Warwick, who had advanced without opposition, now entered London, October 1470, brought the almost *imbecile* Henry out of the Tower, and caused him to be

proclaimed king. The dissatisfaction with Edward's rule had become very general, and Warwick and the restored king were received by the people with great enthusiasm. King Edward, finding that he could not rely on his troops, fled into Flanders, and all the exiled Lancastrian nobles had their honours and estates restored to them. This revolution was effected without bloodshed, and the new government was established without difficulty. Warwick and Clarence were appointed protectors of the kingdom during the minority of Prince Edward.

8. Edward IV., who, amidst all his debaucheries, never lost his energy, had obtained the secret support of Charles the Bold, and with a small force landed at Ravenspur, 1471, proclaiming that he had come only to claim his family estates. He advanced as far as Coventry, where he was suddenly joined by his brother, Clarence, who had become dissatisfied with the arrangements made with Queen Margaret. Being thus strengthened, Edward resumed the title of king, and, accompanied by his brother, proceeded to London, where a numerous party was still attached to him. He entered the city without hindrance, and Henry VI. was delivered up to him. Meanwhile, Warwick also advanced, but coming too late, he met his enemies near **Barnet**, where a great battle was fought, in which Edward was victorious, and Warwick, whom the people had called "king-maker," was among the slain. Edward IV. returned to London on the same day, and poor Henry VI. was taken back to the Tower. On the same day, also, Margaret, with her son, landed at Weymouth with some French troops, and took up a strong position near **Tewkesbury**; here the brave queen was attacked by Edward and completely defeated, May 1472. Edward raged with merciless cruelty against the vanquished, and had Prince Edward barbarously murdered before his own eyes. Margaret was dragged forth from a convent, where she had taken refuge, and conveyed to the Tower. A few days later, Edward entered London in triumph, and on the following morning Henry VI. was found dead in his bed, having probably been mur-

dered, perhaps, by Edward's brother, Richard, duke of Gloucester.

9. The male line of the house of Lancaster was now extinct, and its surviving friends were dispersed and attainted. The kingdom might now have enjoyed a period of peace, but quarrels broke out between Edward's two brothers, Clarence and Gloucester, about the inheritance of Warwick, each having married a daughter of the earl. The dispute was at last settled by the estates being divided between the two. But a fresh war with France was a more serious affair; it was provoked by Edward demanding the French crown as belonging to him by inheritance. In making this claim he relied on the support of Burgundy; but when, in 1475, he invaded France, he found himself disappointed, and as Louis XI. was afraid of war with England, negotiations were commenced, and a treaty was concluded at Pecquigni, in which Louis engaged to pay to Edward 75,000 crowns at once, and an annuity of 50,000; Queen Margaret, moreover, was to be ransomed for 50,000 crowns. Peace was thus restored, and Edward now again indulged his usual passions. He had for some time been alienated from his brother Clarence, and at last, on some frivolous pretext, brought against him the charge of treason. The subservient parliament found him guilty, and Clarence was imprisoned in the Tower. Ten days later his death was announced, and it was rumoured that he had been drowned in a butt of Malmsey, February 1478.

10. In 1480 a war broke out with Scotland, which had been in a distracted state ever since the captivity of James, who had been liberated by Bedford in 1424. Border raids of no great importance had of late been rather frequent, but in 1482 the Duke of Albany, at the instigation of Edward IV., rose against his brother, James III., and offered, if raised to the throne, to hold Scotland as a fief of England. But the rebellion ended in a reconciliation between the Scottish princes. A year after this, Edward IV. died, April 9, 1483.

10. James III, of Scotland reigned from 1460 till 1483.

2. EDWARD V.—1483-1483.

11. Edward V., the eldest son of Edward IV., was only in his thirteenth year when his father died. His reign, if we may so call it, extended from the 9th April to the 22nd June 1483. Richard, duke of Gloucester, had been recommended by the late king as regent, but it was suspected that the queen-mother, Elizabeth, was seeking to secure to herself and her relatives supreme power. It now became evident how deeply rooted was the ill-feeling between the great houses of the old nobility and the lower nobles, who were represented by the Woodvilles. The queen's schemes were thwarted by Lord Hastings, the most conspicuous among the enemies of the Woodvilles. The young king was at Ludlow, under the care of Earl Rivers, who was ordered by the queen to escort



THE TOWER OF LONDON.

him to London. At Stony Stratford they met Hastings and the Dukes of Gloucester and Buckingham, who arrested the king's escort, and a few days later ordered them to be executed. The young king was carried to

London and lodged in the Tower. When the queen heard of this, she, with her younger son, Richard, duke of York, took refuge in the sanctuary at Westminster. The Duke of Gloucester, on his arrival in London, was appointed protector by a great council, and Buckingham was richly rewarded for his services. The coronation of the king was fixed for the 22nd of June. Hastings, who had expressed his suspicions about the protector's ultimate designs, was accused of high treason and beheaded. His suspicions, however, were only too well founded; for a story, probably suggested by the protector, was spread abroad that Edward IV., before marrying Elizabeth Woodville, had been married to another lady, so that his sons by Elizabeth were illegitimate. A clergyman, moreover, was ordered to preach at St. Paul's on the subject. When public opinion was thus prepared, Buckingham prevailed upon the Londoners to offer the crown to the protector, Richard, duke of Gloucester, who, after a feigned reluctance, accepted it.

12. The young king had been kept a prisoner in the Tower from the day of his arrival in London, and the general belief is that he and his younger brother, Richard, duke of York, were murdered by the order of their uncle, who had ascended the throne as Richard III.

RICHARD III.—1483-1485.

13. Richard III., who thus marked his accession by a deed of blood, was in his thirty-third year. The friends who had aided him were richly rewarded, but he left the widows of his former enemies, Rivers and Hastings, in the possession of their property. After he and his queen, Anne, the second daughter of Warwick, had been crowned, he made a progress through the country, and caused his parliament, in 1484, to enact several useful laws relating to the administration of justice and the interests of commerce. But insurrections broke out in several quarters. One of them was even joined by his former supporter, Buckingham. The object of this insurrection was to raise Henry, earl of Richmond, a descendant of John of

Gaunt, to the throne. Richard, on hearing of this, offered a reward for the apprehension of the leaders. Richmond, who was staying in Brittany, found it impossible to land in England, and Buckingham, having been betrayed, was executed at Salisbury without a trial, while most of his associates escaped to the Continent.

14. Not long after the suppression of this revolt, Richard's son, Edward, and the queen died, whereupon he declared his nephew, the Earl of Lincoln, his successor. Meanwhile Richmond, not venturing to come to England, obtained from Charles VIII. of France permission to collect a force for the purpose of invading England. He conducted these preparations with vigour and energy, and in August 1485 landed at Milford Haven. Richard, on the other hand, trusting to the fidelity of his nobles, was ill prepared. Richmond, therefore, was enabled to march unopposed through Wales, and met the king's army at Bosworth. Two powerful nobles, with their men, at once deserted to Richmond, and Richard, on seeing himself betrayed, furiously dashed at his enemy, whom he saw at a distance, but he was overpowered by numbers, received several wounds, and was killed. Richmond was at once proclaimed king as Henry VII.

15. Richard was indeed guilty of acts of gross cruelty, but he hardly deserves to be classed among royal monsters. He was of the same passionate character as his brother, but did not possess his amiable affability. His legislative and administrative measures are deserving of high praise.

14. Charles VIII. of France reigned from 1483 to 1498. Among the events contemporary, or nearly so, with the York Dynasty, may be mentioned—

The annexation of Holland to Austria through the marriage of Mary of Burgundy with the Austrian Archduke Maximilian in 1477.

In 1492 the power of the Moors in Spain was overthrown by Ferdinand, and the Jews were expelled from Spain, Portugal, and France. In the same year Columbus discovered America.

In 1476 Charles the Bold of Burgundy was defeated by the Swiss in the battles of Granson and Murten.

In 1494 Charles VIII. of France invaded and conquered a great part of Italy, but was deprived of his conquest by a league being formed against him by the Pope and the German emperor.

In 1498 Vasco de Gama first sailed round the Cape of Good Hope, and founded settlements in India and China.

In 1498 Savonarola, a religious and political reformer, was executed at Florence.

In 1504 the French were driven out of Naples, and Ferdinand II. annexed the kingdom to the crown of Aragon.

QUESTIONS.

1. Mention what claims Edward IV. laid to the English throne. Say what you know of the terrible battle which was fought before the coronation of Edward IV. Where did Henry VI., with his wife and son, take refuge? What sentence was passed on Henry VI. by the parliament, and what was done with his estates?

2. By whom was Queen Margaret assisted, and what was the result of the invasion of England? What is the story of Queen Margaret and the robbers? How did Henry VI. fall into the hands of Edward IV.

3. How was Edward IV. regarded by his subjects? Whom did he marry?

4. How did Edward IV. exasperate the old aristocratic families? What favours did Edward shower upon the relatives of his wife? Which two nobles were especially hurt by the king's conduct?

5. Why did the country people in the north rise in arms, and who led the insurgents? What did the insurgents demand of the king, and with what result? In what year was the battle of Banbury fought?

6. What insurrection broke out, and what was the result? To whom did Warwick give his daughter, Anne, in marriage, and what did he promise? Say what you know of the invasion of England by Warwick. Whose protection was the king obliged to seek?

7. What year did Warwick enter London, and what steps did he take? How were Warwick and Henry VI. received by the people? Where did Edward IV. seek refuge? Who were appointed protectors of the kingdom?

8. When did Edward land in England, and what success did he meet with? Who was delivered up to him? Which party was successful at the battle of Barnet, and who was killed? Where was Queen Margaret defeated, and in what year? What became of Prince

Edward, and what of the queen? What was the fate of Henry VI.?

9. What dispute arose between the king's brothers, and how was it settled? How was a war with France provoked? On whom did Edward rely for assistance? What were the conditions of the treaty of Pequigni? What charge was brought against Clarence, and what was his fate?

10. What war broke out in 1480? Whom did Edward assist to obtain the Scottish throne, and upon what condition? How did the rebellion end? In what year did Edward IV. die?

11. How long did the reign of Edward V. last? Who had been recommended regent by the late king? What was the feeling between the great houses of the old nobility and the Woodvilles? Who thwarted Queen Elizabeth's schemes? Under whose care was the young king? Mention how he came to be lodged in the Tower. Where did the queen and her younger son take refuge? Who was appointed protector of England? Why was Hastings beheaded? What story was spread abroad about Edward IV.? To whom did Buckingham advise the Londoners to offer the crown, and with what result?

12. What is believed to have been the fate of the young king, Edward, and his brother Richard?

13. How did Richard III. behave to his friends and enemies after his accession? When did Richard summon a parliament, and what laws did it enact? What insurrection broke out? What was the result of the insurrection?

14. What event caused Richard to appoint the Earl of Lincoln his successor? Who determined to invade England? In what year did Richmond land in England, and what great battle was fought? Who was killed at the battle of Bosworth, and who was proclaimed king?

15. What was the general character of Richard III.?

CHAPTER VIII.

THE HOUSE OF TUDOR.

1. Henry VII. (1485-1509) marries the daughter of Edward IV., and his right of succession is thereby legalised.
2. Dangerous insurrections. Lambert Simnel.
3. Henry's avarice and sham war with France.
4. Perkin Warbeck and his supporters.
5. Insurgents under Lord Audley defeated on Blackheath. War between England and Scotland. Warbeck and the Earl of Warwick executed.
6. Henry's family.
7. Suffolk, the last legitimate heir to the crown, is put to death. Henry's avarice and death. The Star Chamber.
8. Henry VIII. (1509-1547). Early promise.
9. His punishment of those guilty of extortion.
10. The League of Cambrai. Hostilities between France and England. Battle of the Spurs.
11. War with Scotland. Battle of Flodden Field.
12. Peace with Scotland and France.
13. Thomas Wolsey. Henry at Guines in France.
14. War with France and Scotland. Funds refused, and peace concluded.
15. Wolsey in disgrace; his death.
16. Henry marries Anne Boleyn.
17. Independence of the English Church. Execution of Sir Thos. Moore.
18. Suppression of religious houses. Henry and Luther. Complete separation from Rome.
19. Execution of Anne Boleyn.
20. Revolts against the Reformation. All monasteries suppressed. The whip with six strings.
21. Anne of Cleves.
22. Catherine Howard. Catherine Parr.
23. Ireland and Scotland.
24. The rout of Solway. Invasion of Scotland. General pacification. Henry's death.
25. Henry's family. Importance of his reign.
26. Edward VI. (1547-1553). The Earl of Hertford his protector and guardian.
27. Attempt to unite Scotland with England. Battle near Musselburgh. Scotland allied with France.
28. Progress of the Reformation.
29. Lord Seymour executed.
30. Insurrections in various parts of the country. Vagrant laws. Warwick supersedes Somerset.
31. Intrigues about the succession. Death of Edward VI.
32. Mary (1553-1558). Northumberland's design to deprive her of the succession. Lady Jane Grey.
33. Protestant worship abolished. Mary's plan to marry Philip of Spain. Plots against the scheme. Executions. Elizabeth imprisoned.
34. Philip of Spain marries Mary. Persecutions of Protestants. Bonner, Latimer, Ridley, Cranmer.
35. Pole is made Archbishop of Canterbury.
36. Philip of Spain leaves England, which supports him in his war against France. Battle of St. Quentin. Calais lost. Mary's death.
37. Mary's character and reign.
38. Elizabeth (1558-1603). Her life before her accession. William Cecil.
39. Restoration of Protestantism.
40. Refusal of the bishops to take the oath of supremacy. The Nonconformists and the Catholics. Severe measures against the Catholics.
41. The Puritans. Calvin, John Knox.
42. Mary Queen of Scots; her claims to the English crown.
43. The reformed religion established in Scotland.
44. Mary of Scotland. Darnley. Rizzio. Darnley murdered. Bothwell.
45. Mary imprisoned in Loch Leven, escapes into England.
46. Mary a prisoner in England.
47. Catholics demand the restoration of the old religion. Insurrection.
48. Elizabeth allies herself with the Protestants in the Netherlands.
49. Conspiracies against Elizabeth. Mary, suspected and tried, is found guilty and executed.
50. Spain is urged by the Pope to conquer England. The invincible Armada.
51. Failure of the Armada.
52. War against Spain. Rebellion in Ireland.
53. End of the Irish rebellion.
54. General view of Elizabeth's reign.

1. HENRY VII.—1485-1509.

1. Henry VII. had been proclaimed king on the battle-field of Bosworth, and his accession put an end to the long and sanguinary wars between the houses of Lancaster and York, or the Red and White Roses, as they are commonly called. Legal claims to the throne he had none: his descent from John of Gaunt gave him no right, as the union from which he sprang was illegitimate. He had, in fact, risen to the throne by right of conquest, but did not like to lay stress upon it, and in order to strengthen his position he resolved to marry Elizabeth of York, the daughter of Edward IV., who had a real claim to the succession. It was this union between the houses of Lancaster and York that induced parliament to enact that the inheritance of the crown should be, and remain, with Henry and the lawful heirs of his body. The marriage took place early in 1486 amid great rejoicings of the people, who believed that at length a complete peace between the two contending parties was established.

2. Had Henry acted discreetly he might have realised that belief, but, unfortunately, he lost no opportunity of showing his aversion to some of the Yorkists, and this gave rise to several insurrections which disturbed his reign. One of these occurred only a few months after his marriage, and was attempted by Lord Lovel and a few other nobles; but when the royal troops marched against them they dispersed, and Lovel fled into France. The next year, 1487, a more dangerous insurrection broke out. Lambert Simnel, who was educated at Oxford by a priest called Simons, was persuaded by him to represent himself as Earl Warwick (son of the Duke of Clarence, brother of Edward IV.). The youth went to Ireland, which was always favourable to the house of York, and accordingly welcomed the pretender as the undoubted heir to the throne. Simnel was actually crowned at Dublin as Edward VI., and was soon surrounded by a large number of followers, among whom were Lord Lovel, *the Earl of Lincoln*, and two thousand soldiers furnished

him by Margaret of Burgundy, the sister of Edward IV. The insurgents landed on the coast of Lancashire and advanced towards Newark, hoping that during their progress their ranks would be swelled by other Yorkists. But in this they were disappointed, and Henry meeting them at Stoke, in Nottinghamshire, defeated them in a hotly contested engagement. Half the insurgents and most of their leaders were slain. Lovel escaped, but Simmel and his tutor were taken prisoners and treated with utter contempt, Simmel being made a scullion in the king's kitchen, and Simons committed to close confinement. Many who had been implicated in the insurrection bought their pardon by heavy fines, for Henry's ruling passion was avarice.

3. The duchy of Brittany, the only remaining fief of the French crown, was attacked by Charles VIII., king of France, and the duke, having some claim upon the gratitude of the English king, solicited his assistance. When Henry demanded from the northern counties subsidies to enable him to carry on the war against France, the people rose in arms, but the rising was easily suppressed, and the leaders were executed, 1488. Anne, the heiress of Brittany, had been asked in marriage for Charles VIII., but had been refused. She was now besieged in the town of Rennes, and Charles declared that she must either be his wife or his prisoner. The lady chose the former, and, by her marrying the king, Brittany became annexed to the French crown. Henry VII., finding himself thus outwitted by the young king, availed himself of the opportunity to gratify his avarice. He extorted money from his subjects by taxes, strangely called "benevolences," and obtained large grants from parliament, that he might avenge what he called the perfidy of the French king. But the result showed that his only object was to obtain money. After a considerable delay, he started on his expedition in October 1492. From Calais he advanced to Boulogne, which he invested with a large army. But after a few days a treaty was concluded between the two kings at Estaples, in which Charles agreed to pay Henry

£149,000 by half-yearly instalments, on condition that he should withdraw his troops from France. Henry thus "made profit on his subjects for the war, and upon his enemies for the peace."

4. About the time when this sham war in France was on the point of breaking out, 1492, a young man, whose real name is said to have been **Perkin Warbeck**, landed at Cork, declaring himself to be Richard, duke of York, brother of Edward V., who was believed to have been murdered in the Tower with his brother. The Irish at once received him with joy, but he had not been there long when Charles VIII. of France invited him to his court and treated him as a real royal duke, hoping by his means to obtain more favourable terms from Henry. After the conclusion of the treaty of Estaples, however, Warbeck was sent away as of no further use. Warbeck then claimed, and obtained, the protection of Margaret of Burgundy, and as many of the English nobility also began to believe in him, Sir Robert Clifford was sent to inquire into the matter, and his report was that Warbeck was the veritable Duke of York. Clifford was now bribed by Henry to reveal the names of the English nobles who had supported the imposter. In consequence of this several were arrested and some were executed, and among them Sir William Stanley, who had saved Henry's life in the battle of Bosworth. Wishing to get Warbeck removed from Flanders, Henry forbade all commercial intercourse with that country; shortly after this the pretender landed with a body of followers at Deal, but was beaten off with some loss. He then went to Ireland, where he was equally unsuccessful, and after several attempts to gain a footing in other quarters, he went to Scotland, where James IV. received him kindly, and brought about a marriage between him and Catherine Gordon, a near relative of the royal family. With the assistance of his new friends, Warbeck invaded England, but as his proclamation that Henry Tudor was a usurper made no impression there, the Scotch, after committing **successful ravages**, returned to the north.

5. This Scottish inroad afforded Henry a pretext for asking a subsidy to carry on war against Scotland. The money was readily voted by parliament, but the Cornish men refused to pay their share, maintaining the northern counties ought to defend their own country against the Scotch. About sixteen thousand insurgents, led by Lord Audley, marched towards London to petition the king, but on Blackheath they were attacked by the royal forces and totally defeated, 1497. The leaders were executed, while the common people were allowed to disperse and return home. Meanwhile, the Scotch made a second inroad, but were driven back by the English, who retaliated by ravaging the south of Scotland. Negotiations were then commenced to induce James IV. to surrender Warbeck, and though this was refused, a seven years' truce was concluded between the two countries, in consequence of which Warbeck had to leave Scotland. His wanderings now recommenced, and finding no support anywhere, he at last deserted his followers and took refuge in the sanctuary of Beaulieu, in the New Forest. There he surrendered on the promise of pardon; but when subsequently he attempted to flee, he was seized and imprisoned in the Tower. While there he attempted to escape in conjunction with his fellow-prisoner, the Earl of Warwick, in consequence of which both were executed, 1499. Whether Warbeck was really an imposter is still a matter of much uncertainty.

6. Henry had seven children, of whom three died young; the survivors were two sons and two daughters. The eldest son, Arthur, married Catharine of Aragon in 1501, but died in the following year, and Henry, in order not to lose the rich dowry which had been received with her, planned a marriage of his second son, Henry, with the young widow. His eldest daughter, Margaret, married James IV. of Scotland in 1503.

7. Edmund, earl of Suffolk, was now the only one who might dispute Henry's title to the crown. He was then living in Flanders under the protection of Philip the Fair. In 1506 Philip was obliged, by stress of weather,

to land at Weymouth, and Henry took the opportunity of extorting from him the promise to surrender Suffolk, on the distinct understanding that his life should be spared. But, notwithstanding this, the earl was thrown into prison, and, on his death-bed, Henry desired his son to see that Suffolk was put to death, which was done in 1513. Henry VII. died of consumption at Richmond in April 1509, having amassed a fortune of what in our money would make sixteen millions sterling. His ruling passion, as we have seen, was avarice, and he never scrupled at anything to gratify it. There was no lack of men ready at all times to assist him in fleecing the people and enriching both the king and themselves. The **Star Chamber**, which had been instituted before his reign for useful purposes, became under him a tyrannical power to extort money. The reign of Henry VII. may be regarded as the period of transition from the middle ages to modern times. In it Columbus discovered the West Indies and the mainland of America, and Vasco de Gama doubled the Cape of Good Hope, thus opening a new route to India.

2. HENRY VIII.—1509-1547.

8. **Henry VIII.** was the first king since the time of Richard II. whose title to the crown was undisputed. On his accession he was in his eighteenth year, and a handsome youth; he had been most carefully educated, and was skilled not only in all manly and martial exercises, but also well versed in several branches of learning. He seemed to be a young man of a generous and open-hearted disposition, but the hopes raised during the early part of his reign were destined to be sadly disappointed by his conduct and actions in later life.

9. It had been his father's wish that he should marry Catherine of Aragon, the widow of his elder brother, Arthur. Henry himself had never been favourable to

7. The great events which occurred during the latter half of the 15th century and in the beginning of the 16th, and the great discoveries made during the same period, prepared the way for a new development in the history of European nations: they form, in fact, the beginning of modern, as distinct from mediæval history.

this scheme, but, being urged by his council, he gave way and married Catherine in June 1509, and for many years they lived happily together. One of the first acts of his reign was to punish Empson, Dudley, and their agents, who had been the chief instruments of the extortion practised by his father, and both were charged with high treason and executed, 1510. The money, however, which his father had amassed was spent by the son in a series of most splendid court festivities.

10. The first war into which Henry was drawn was with France. In 1508, Pope Julius II. had formed the league of Cambray against the republic of Venice, for the purpose of recovering from it some lands which it had taken from the Church. When this object was attained, he declared his determination to free Italy from the domination of foreigners. With this view he prevailed upon the Emperor Maximilian I., Ferdinand of Spain, and Henry VIII. to form a holy league for the defence of the Church. Henry was further induced to claim back the ancient possession of Guienne. This was a tempting bait, and on the suggestion of Ferdinand a large English force, under the Marquis of Dorset, landed at Guipuscoa in Biscay, 1512, where it was to be joined by a Spanish army, and then to invade France. But Ferdinand availed himself of the presence of the English for the purpose of conquering Navarre. Dorset waited in vain for six months, during which his troops suffered severely from disease, and perceiving at last that Ferdinand was not inclined to aid him, he returned to England. The brave admiral, Sir Edward Howard, however, ravaged the French coast, and fought a terrific battle off Brest, in which he was victorious. Hostilities between France and England continued, and in 1513 a force of twenty-five thousand men having been sent into France, Henry himself crossed over, and in conjunction with the German

10. Maximilian I., emperor of Germany, reigned from 1493 to 1519; Ferdinand of Spain, surnamed the Catholic, married to Isabella of Castile, reigned from 1479 to 1516. He conquered Granada, drove the Moors out of Spain, and established the Inquisition in 1484. France was at this time governed by Louis XII., who consolidated the royal power.

emperor laid siege to Terouanne. The French, attempting to relieve the place, suffered a disgraceful defeat; for owing to a panic having seized their cavalry, ten thousand horsemen fled in full gallop before a small number of English, whence the battle was called in mockery the **Battle of the Spurs**. Terouanne now surrendered, and Tournay also fell into the hands of Henry, who, after appointing Wolsey bishop of the place, returned to England.

11. While these things were going on in France, the Earl of Surrey carried on a successful war against Scotland. James IV., though married to Henry's sister, had kept up his alliance with France, and had been instigated by the French king to invade England. At first James had been tolerably successful, but when he was met by Surrey at **Flodden Field** (1513), at the foot of the Cheviot Hills, a fierce battle was fought in which ten thousand Scotchmen were killed, with their king and a large number of their nobility. This was the greatest defeat the Scotch had sustained during their protracted wars with England.

12. In 1514 the French burnt Brighton and ravaged the south coast of England, but soon after a peace was concluded with both Scotland and France, Louis XII. agreeing that Henry should keep Tournay, and that Louis himself should marry Mary, Henry's youngest sister. The marriage was indeed celebrated, but three months afterwards Louis died.

13. Let us now say a few words about one of the most remarkable men in English History—**Thomas Wolsey**. He was born at Ipswich, in 1471, of humble parents; he was educated at Oxford, and soon distinguished himself by his talents, his energy, and his tact. He had been employed in several affairs of state by Henry VII., and was also for many years the principal adviser of Henry VIII., who successively made him bishop of Tournay, Lincoln, and York, and in 1515 he received a cardinal's hat from Leo X., and from Henry the office of chancellor of England; to these were afterwards added the office of

papal legate and bishop of Winchester. Invested with these many and varied powers, Wolsey not only wielded the destinies of England, but exercised great influence upon continental countries. He and his master governed the country with almost despotic power, and for seven years, from 1515 to 1523, no parliament was assembled or consulted, and during that period Wolsey had plenty of opportunities of showing his talent for statecraft and intrigue. On the death of the Emperor Maximilian in 1519, there appeared three competitors for the imperial crown, Charles, the son of Ferdinand of Spain, Francis, king of France, and Henry VIII., though the last had no chance. The youthful Charles (V.) won the race, and the jealousy thus created between the rulers of France and Spain made each desirous to secure the friendship of Henry. Francis accordingly arranged a meeting with Henry near Guisnes, where the entertainments offered to the English monarch were of such surpassing splendour, that the place received the name of the Field of the Cloth of Gold. But the meeting had no political results, for Charles V. kept on good terms with Henry, and the only important event connected with it was, that Edward, duke of Buckingham, who had expressed his disapproval of the meeting, and had incurred the hatred of Wolsey, was condemned for treason and executed on Tower Hill in 1521.

14. In the same year open hostilities broke out between France and Spain, and Henry, after an unsuccessful attempt at mediation, took the part of his nephew, Charles V., who, on the death of Leo X., promised

13. Leo X. occupied the papal throne from 1513 to 1521. He authorised the sale of indulgences in Germany in order to obtain the funds required for building the great church of St. Peter at Rome; it was this sale of indulgences that roused the indignation of Luther, and led to the Reformation in Germany in 1517.

Charles V. was elected Emperor of Germany in 1519, when he was scarcely nineteen years old, and reigned till 1558. He was also proclaimed King of Spain. He possessed already by inheritance the Netherlands and Franche Comté, the crowns of Aragon and Castile, the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, Sardinia, and the Spanish conquests in the New World.

Francis I., king of France, was born in 1494, and reigned from 1515 to 1547. He was the rival of Charles V., who defeated him near Pavia, in 1525, in consequence of which he lost his Italian possessions.

Wolsey to assist him to gain the papal throne. But Wolsey was disappointed on this occasion, and a second time, in 1523, when another election to the papacy took place. In consequence of this, Wolsey's interest in the emperor cooled. The war against France, however, was carried on by the English forces under Surrey and Suffolk, the latter of whom devastated the country nearly up to the gates of Paris. The Scotch in the meantime, at the instigation of Francis, were preparing to invade England, but the English, anticipating the attack, laid waste the border country of Scotland and burnt Jedburgh; after which a truce was concluded, which lasted eighteen years. During this period England, as already mentioned, was governed by the king and cardinal at their pleasure; but when, in 1523, money was wanted, parliament was convoked, and Wolsey demanded one-fifth of every man's property. But parliament, presided over by Sir Thomas More, its Speaker, demurred; and after long discussions a much smaller subsidy was voted. In 1525, Francis, in his attempt to conquer Milan, was defeated by Charles V. at Pavia and taken prisoner, and Henry, thinking this a favourable opportunity of gaining the crown of France, which English kings had so often claimed as their lawful inheritance, prevailed upon the emperor to join him in the invasion of France, by the promise that Burgundy should be given up to him. But when Henry tried to raise the money for this enterprise, without the sanction of parliament, the people refused to pay, and insurrections broke out in several quarters. Henry, to avoid greater evils, thought it wise to yield, and pardoned the rioters. When Charles V. found that Henry had concluded a separate peace and alliance with France, communications were broken off between Spain and England.

15. The year 1527 was the first in which it was openly said that the king had scruples about the validity of his marriage with the widow of his brother. He had separated from her three years before, but he himself now *openly avowed his scruples*. It may be doubted whether

they were genuine, and whether he was not more influenced by the charms of Anne Boleyn, who had lived for some time at the French court, and is said to have there acquired a certain levity of manner. But however this may be, the Pope, Clement VII., on being applied to for a divorce, granted a commission to Wolsey and Cardinal Campeggio, bishop of Salisbury, to inquire into the case. Attempts were at first made to induce the queen to retire into a religious house, but, as she refused, the commission began its sittings, though no decision was come to. The Pope, then, revoking the commission, summoned Henry to appear before him. The king was exasperated at this, but blamed Wolsey, whom he believed to be the cause of it. Wolsey's ruin soon followed: he was ordered to surrender the Great Seal, which he held as chancellor, and being further charged with having broken the law by receiving orders from Rome, he was declared to have forfeited all his possessions, and ordered to be imprisoned during the royal pleasure. This was undoubtedly an act of gross injustice, as the cardinal had received the Pope's instructions with the king's knowledge and sanction. In the next year, however, Wolsey was pardoned and ordered to live in his diocese at York; but in 1530 he was summoned to London to defend himself against certain charges. When he had reached Leicester he died, repenting in his last hour that he had served his king better than his God.

16. Henry, being bent upon marrying Anne Boleyn, took the advice of **Cranmer**, a clergyman, and a friend of his secretary Gardiner, to seek the opinion of the most learned lawyers in Europe. Cranmer was afterwards rewarded for this service by receiving the archbishopric of Canterbury. The opinion of the lawyers, which was favourable to the divorce, was laid before the Pope, but he hesitated to pronounce the sentence, fearing to offend Charles V., a kinsman of the queen. Parliament also sided with the king, and even showed an inclination to renounce its allegiance to Rome, if the Pope would not comply with the request. At last, tired of the delay,

Henry, in 1533, married Anne Boleyn, without waiting for the final decision about the divorce, and Cranmer, at a court held at Dunstable, solemnly declared that the marriage with Catherine of Aragon was null and void, and Anne was crowned Queen of England with extraordinary splendour.

17. Having succeeded thus far, Henry determined henceforth to act with even more energy and firmness: he got parliament to enact a measure which virtually proclaimed the independence of the English Church, and another regulating the succession and declaring the king's first marriage void. Several persons objecting to these measures were condemned and executed. One of them was **Sir Thomas More**, who had succeeded Wolsey in the chancellorship. More was a sincere Catholic, and a man of high honour and integrity. His execution raised a cry of indignation all over the kingdom.

18. The king's supremacy in religious matters was now established. He made **Thomas Cromwell** his vicar-general, who caused a general visitation of the monasteries. This led to an act of parliament suppressing all those religious houses whose revenues were less than £200 a-year, and their estates were made over to the crown. Such were the beginnings of the English Reformation, and it is deeply to be regretted that it did not spring from purer motives. For many years a feeling had been growing in several parts of Europe that a reform of the Church of Rome had become necessary, and in Germany the monk, Martin Luther, scandalised by the sale of indulgences, had commenced, in 1517, a movement which soon spread beyond the frontiers of his own country. In England, too, there were not wanting men who embraced the principles of his Reformation.

18. In 1521, Luther appeared before the Diet at Worms; the Sultan Suliman conquered Belgrade and the island of Rhodes.

In 1525, peasant war in Germany.

In 1530, imperial diet at Augsburg, where the Protestant Confession of Faith was settled.

In 1531, Pizarro conquered Peru.

In 1536, disturbances of the Anabaptists at Munster in Westphalia.

Henry VIII., who was well versed in theological questions, had written, in 1521, a book against Luther, "On the Seven Sacraments," for which he was rewarded by Pope Leo X. with the title of "Defender of the Faith." But as Leo's successor, Clement VII., refused to grant the divorce, Henry completely severed the connection with Rome, and made himself the head of the English Church. He did not, indeed, attempt to change the dogmas of the Church, for he himself remained a Catholic to the end of his days, but simply substituted his own authority for that of the Pope.

19. In 1536, Queen Catherine died, and a few months later Anne Boleyn followed her to the grave. She had many enemies, and was accused of adultery; a subservient parliament found her guilty, and she was executed. The fact seems to have been that the king had got tired of her, and had become enamoured of Jane Seymour, one of her maids of honour; and Henry committed the atrocious indecency of marrying her the very day after the execution of Anne Boleyn.

20. The declaration of the independence of the English Church from Rome, the suppression of monasteries, and the new regulations about the forms of worship, were approved of by the majority of the English people, but many were opposed to them. A number of men in Lincolnshire rose in rebellion against them, but were easily dispersed, and pardoned. A more serious revolt broke out in Yorkshire, called the **Pilgrimage of Grace**. The men insisted on evil councillors being removed from the court, and upon the restoration of the forms of the old church. They were joined by the archbishop of York and many of the northern nobles. Several towns fell into their hands, but being attacked by a strong force under the Duke of Norfolk, they lost heart and dispersed, and many of their leaders were put to death. This result led, in 1539, to the suppression of all the remaining monasteries, the enormous revenues of which, amounting annually to one million and a half of our money, fell into the hands of the king, and were partly spent upon the

creation of new bishoprics, the foundation of colleges and schools, and other useful objects. But the great bulk was given to favourites and squandered. At the same time several abbots and other persons of rank were executed on the pretext of their being engaged in treasonable plots; but, in fact, because they disapproved of the king's separation from Rome and setting himself up as the head of the church. Although he ordered the Bible to be read in the English language, and adopted some measures which seemed favourable to Protestantism, yet he caused parliament to enact a statute for abolishing diversity of opinion on religious questions. This statute, consisting of six articles, contained the main points of Roman Catholicism, viz., the doctrine of transubstantiation, communion in one kind, celibacy of the clergy, vows of chastity, private masses, and auricular confession. All who denied the validity of these articles were to receive the severest punishments, and were to be burnt alive or executed as felons. Owing to its terrible severity, this statute was called **the whip with six strings**. The number of persons refusing compliance with it was so great that even the king's own party did not dare always to enforce the penalties. The king had, in fact, taken up a position which was as hostile to true Catholics as to true Protestants.

21. In 1537, Queen Jane Seymour had died, a few days after the birth of a son, Edward, and since then Henry had been a widower. Cromwell, being himself a Protestant at heart, and wishing to strengthen his party, persuaded the king to marry Anne of Cleves, a German Protestant lady. Henry consented, but on her first appearance he conceived such a dislike to her, that in the very year of the marriage, in 1540, his servile friends, on some frivolous pretexts, declared it invalid, and immediately afterwards she was divorced. Cromwell, about a fortnight later, was put to death for having brought about the marriage.

21. In 1540, the Order of Jesuits was founded by Ignatius Loyola.

22. On the very day of Cromwell's execution, Henry married his fifth wife, Catharine Howard, only a few days after the divorce from Anne of Cleves, whose maid-of-honour she had been. In the course of the next year it was found out that her conduct before her marriage had been unchaste, and it was said that even after it she had been guilty of adultery. She was accordingly attainted by parliament, in 1542, and executed with all those who were supposed to have been implicated in her misconduct. The year after this, 1543, Henry wedded Catharine Parr, a widow, who had embraced Protestantism, in consequence of which her life, on one occasion, was in serious danger. But she was fortunate enough to survive her royal husband.

23. We must now turn our attention to the affairs of Ireland and Scotland, so far as they were connected with England. At the accession of Henry VIII., the authority of England extended over only a portion of Ireland, the rest was governed by a number of chieftains, partly English and partly Irish. Henry contrived to win over the leaders, and by conferring titles and honours upon them, he induced them to recognise him as their chief. Henceforth he styled himself King of Ireland, which title was confirmed by an act of parliament in 1544.

24. The relation between Scotland and England had been unsatisfactory for some time. A war at length broke out, in which the Scotch were beaten, in 1542, in an engagement called *The Rout of Solway*. King James died immediately after this, from vexation: but a treaty of peace was concluded, and Henry, thinking that it might be possible to unite the two kingdoms under one head, planned a marriage between his son Edward and the infant princess, Mary (afterwards Queen of Scots), daughter of James V. But Cardinal Beaton, a strong supporter of the Pope's authority, opposed the alliance

22. About this time, John Calvin appeared as reformer at Geneva; Charles V., attacked Algiers.

24. Henry VIII. died in the same year in which Francis I. of France breathed his last.

with England, and Henry, exasperated at this, in 1544, sent a strong force into Scotland which burnt Edinburgh and Leith and devastated the country. As the Scotch received support and encouragement from France, Henry, hoping to please Charles V. who was again on friendly terms with him, invaded France, heading a force of thirty thousand men. He laid siege to Boulogne, which surrendered after two months; but before anything further could be undertaken, the emperor made a separate peace with Francis, leaving Henry to manage his affairs as best he could. In the following year, Francis collected a large fleet to invade England, and an engagement took place off Portsmouth, where he sunk an English ship with seven hundred men. But he nevertheless soon gave up the undertaking, and concluded a peace in 1546, according to which the English, at the end of eight years, were to give up Boulogne, and were to receive a compensation of two millions of crowns. Scotland also was included in this act of pacification. This was the last warlike undertaking in which Henry engaged, for death overtook him on January 28, 1547. He had latterly become so corpulent that he had to be wheeled from one room to another. He was buried at Windsor with the rites of the Church of Rome.

25. Henry left three children: a son, Edward, by Jane Seymour, one daughter, Mary, by Catharine of Aragon, and another, Elizabeth, by Anne Boleyn, all of whom one after another succeeded him on the throne. His reign is one of the most memorable in English history. The development of the constitution was checked for a time by his despotic and arbitrary proceedings, and the parliament, when it was convoked, was little more than a tool ready to sanction the acts of the haughty and self-willed ruler. The Reformation, so far as it belongs to his reign, consisted mainly in substituting the king's authority for that of the Pope; but still, one step was gained by the Scriptures being made accessible to all in their English translations, of which there appeared three, by Tyndal, Coverdale, and Cranmer. The doctrines of

the Romish Church not only remained untouched, but disbelief in them was punished with merciless severity. England's naval power entered upon a new career under him, for he no longer hired foreign ships, but founded dockyards at Woolwich, Deptford, and Portsmouth, and established the Trinity House for the encouragement of navigation.

3. EDWARD VI.—1547-1553.

26. Edward VI., the only son of Henry VIII., was in his tenth year when his father died. His education was conducted by able men and with great care, and considering that at his death he was scarcely sixteen years old, he had made unusual progress at his studies. His character, so far as it could be known, inspired great hopes; but as he died so early we can hardly speak of his reign, for all that was done and accomplished was the work of his councillors. By his father's will, the government, during Edward's minority, was carried on by a body of sixteen councillors or executors, who nominated the king's uncle, the Earl of Hertford, protector and guardian; he was at the same time created Duke of Somerset. Both he and the young king strongly favoured the Protestant cause, while the Chancellor Wriothesley, who was made Earl of Southampton, was at the head of the Catholic party, and naturally felt jealous of Somerset's position and influence with the king. Owing to some irregularity in the discharge of his judicial functions, he was dismissed by the protector, who now received full authority to make what regulations he might think fit for the good of the kingdom.

27. We have seen that the scheme of Henry VIII. to unite the crowns of England and Scotland was thwarted by the opposition of Cardinal Beaton; but Somerset now resolved upon carrying out the plan, and as some of the Scottish nobility favoured the reformed doctrines, or were not averse to them, a secret treaty was concluded in which they promised to aid the protector in bringing

27. In the year 1545 the Council of Trent was opened.

about the marriage between Edward and Mary, the infant Queen of Scots. As soon as this arrangement became known, the national spirit of the Scotch rose against it, and war was declared. Somerset invaded Scotland with a large force, and met the enemy at **Pinkie**, near Musselburgh, where he defeated them in a hotly-contested battle in which ten thousand Scotchmen perished and fifteen hundred were taken prisoners. Next to the day of Flodden Field, this was the most terrible blow that Scotland had ever received. After plundering Leith and devastating the country, the conqueror hurried back to London in 1547. The Scotch now allied themselves with France more closely than ever, and a marriage was arranged between the Dauphin and the infant Mary, who was at once conveyed to France. A few years later, 1550, a peace was concluded both with Scotland and France, in which Boulogne was restored to the French on their paying 200,000 crowns.

28. In England the interests of the **Reformation** were in the meantime vigorously promoted by Somerset and Archbishop Cranmer. The statute of the "Six Articles" and some others relating to treason were abolished, and an act was passed ordering that the communion should be administered in both kinds; a prayer-book was compiled and its use enforced by an act of uniformity; priests were allowed to marry, and a number of articles were drawn up embodying the doctrines of the Reformed English Church.

29. Lord Seymour, the brother of Somerset, had married Catharine Parr, the widow of the late king, and after her somewhat sudden death it was suspected that the ambitious nobleman was harbouring the plan of marrying the Princess Elizabeth; and it was further observed that he tried in every way to win the affections of the young king. On these and other grounds he was accused of treason, found guilty, and executed in 1549, his own brother having signed the death warrant.

30. Several causes combined to excite the dissatisfaction of the people in different parts of the country, and

gave rise to insurrections. In some cases they arose from the fact that noblemen enclosed the commons, which until then had been free pasture land of the adjoining villages. Most of these outbreaks were easily suppressed; but in Cornwall, Devonshire, and Norfolk they assumed a religious character. The insurgents demanded the restoration of the mass, the re-enactment of the "Six Articles," and the restoration of some of the abbey. But the vigorous measures of the government were everywhere victorious, and many of the leaders of the rebels, and those who had encouraged them, were executed. The poorer classes of the population materially suffered by the proceedings of the reformers: in former times they had been employed or supported by the religious houses, and now large numbers were homeless and lived by beggary. Hence the country was swarming with vagrants, against whom the severest laws were enacted. This accounts for the facility with which insurrections were excited. Earl Warwick had been most successful in dispersing and defeating the insurgents, in consequence of which he became a great favourite of the nobility. He was the son of Dudley, who in the reign of Henry VII. had made himself notorious by his extortions to satisfy that king's avarice. He now began to organise a conspiracy against the protector, who had displayed considerable rapacity and demolished religious edifices in order to obtain the materials for a palace he was building for himself in the Strand. As nearly the whole of the council favoured Warwick, Somerset was arrested and brought to trial. But as no charge of treason could be brought against him, he was only deposed from his office and imprisoned, so that Warwick now virtually became the head of the government, 1549. In the year following, Somerset regained his freedom on most humiliating terms, and was allowed to take part in the deliberations of the council. The reconciliation between the two rivals was effected by Warwick's son marrying a daughter of Somerset. But after a while the latter attempted to recover his former position and power, which caused his

arrest and the charge of treason and felony, for which he was executed in 1552.

31. Warwick, shortly before this, had been raised to the rank of Duke of Northumberland. He had now the complete control of all affairs, and although he was a Catholic at heart, still not to loose his influence over the young king, he was obliged to fall in with his views. Some of the Catholic prelates were deprived of their sees and imprisoned, and attempts were made to convert the Princess Mary, who was a staunch Catholic. Northumberland's next step was to try to alter the succession, so as to exclude Mary and raise Elizabeth to the throne, or, failing her, the heirs of Mary, sister of Henry VIII., whose family was strongly attached to Protestantism. Edward was then prevailed upon to name Mary's granddaughter, Lady Jane Grey, who was married to a son of Northumberland, as his successor. This was a violation of the will of Henry VIII. and of an act of parliament, and although the lords of the council and others, from fear of Northumberland, sanctioned the illegal arrangement, it was soon frustrated.

Soon after the execution of Somerset, King Edward was attacked by small-pox, and when he had recovered, a pulmonary disease made its appearance, and he gradually sank, and died at Greenwich on the 6th July 1553.

4. MARY—1553-1558.

32. Mary, the eldest daughter of Henry VIII., was destined by the will of her father to succeed her brother, Edward, but we have seen that the Duke of Northumberland had tried to secure the succession to his own daughter-in-law, Lady Jane Grey. For this purpose he designed to keep Edward's death secret until he should get Mary into his power. This was also the reason why the accession of Jane Grey was not made known till four days after the king's death; but Mary, who had heard of Edward's death and of Northumberland's design, went to

31. In 1553, Henry II. of France takes possession of Metz, Toul, and Verdun.

the strong castle of Framlingham in Suffolk, whence she wrote to the council, complaining of their conduct and ordering them to proclaim her queen. Northumberland had become very unpopular, and many of his own friends began to espouse the cause of Mary; although, therefore, he had a strong force at his command, he despaired of success and withdrew to Cambridge, where, after disbanding his men, he proclaimed Mary queen. Lady Jane Grey, who had enjoyed the royal honours for only thirteen days, was now put aside, and on the 3rd of August, Mary, accompanied by her sister Elizabeth, entered London in a sort of triumph. The Catholics who had been imprisoned were liberated, and Northumberland was executed for high treason; his son with other nobles, Jane Grey, her husband, Cranmer, Latimer, and many others, were declared guilty of treason and imprisoned in the Tower. The catholic prelates who had been deprived of their sees were restored.

33. On the first meeting of parliament, the validity of the marriage of Henry VIII. with Catharine of Aragon was declared, so that Mary's title could not now be doubted. The forms of worship introduced under her predecessor were abolished, and those observed in the last year of Henry VIII. were restored; married priests were compelled to abandon their wives or were expelled. Before the end of the first year, Mary declared her intention to marry Philip II. of Spain, son of Charles V. This announcement created fear and alarm not only among the Protestants, but among the people generally, who thought that England might become a mere province of Spain. As petitions against the marriage were of no avail, a rebellion arose headed by the Duke of Suffolk, Sir Thomas Wyatt, and Sir Peter Carew. But their plans were badly managed and failed. Carew escaped into France, and Suffolk, being made prisoner, was carried

33. Charles V. abdicated in 1556, and his son, Philip II., inherited the kingdom of Spain and all that belonged to it, including Burgundy and the Netherlands. He reigned in Spain from 1556 till 1598. His reign is notorious for his cruel persecution of Protestantism in the Netherlands.

to London. Wyatt alone held out and made his way into London, but owing to the prudent and energetic measures of the queen he was obliged to surrender. This rebellion aroused the fears and suspicions of the queen; orders were given to execute Lady Jane Grey, her husband, and Suffolk; and Wyatt with fifty others were likewise put to death as traitors. For some time even the life of Elizabeth was in danger, it being believed that she had been concerned in the rebellion. But as there was no proof, she was at first imprisoned in the Tower, and then removed to Woodstock, where she was kept in strict confinement by her jailor, Sir Henry Bedingfield.

34. At last, in July 1554, Philip of Spain landed in England, and was married to Mary at Winchester amid great festivities. A few months later, Cardinal Pole also arrived as the Pope's legate, who prevailed upon parliament to return to the old allegiance with Rome, and granted absolution for their past errors.

The queen, who herself was fiercely opposed to Protestantism, was urged on by the violent counsels of her chancellor, Gardiner, and there now began a series of persecutions which lasted until the end of Mary's reign. The first among her victims were Rogers, a prebendary of St. Paul's, and Hooper, both of whom were burnt alive. Gardiner himself seems to have become tired of his work, but his place was supplied by Bonner, bishop of London, who surpassed even his predecessor in his passion for persecution. Latimer and Ridley were burnt at Oxford, and Latimer, when fastened to the stake, called out: "Be of good comfort, Master Ridley, and play the man; we shall this day light such a candle, by God's grace, in England, as shall never be put out." Cranmer, in the vain hope that his life would be spared, had the weakness to recant; but when he was, nevertheless, led to execution, he publicly declared that he bitterly repented of his recantation, and thrust the hand which had signed it into the fire, exclaiming: "This hand has offended!" Persecutions went on without interruption, and nearly three hundred persons were

burnt at the stake, while many others perished in the prisons.

35. After the death of Cranmer, Cardinal Pole was made archbishop of Canterbury, and now also began to exercise his functions as papal legate. The queen had, of course, restored to the church all the property over which she had control, but the nobility, who had been greatly benefited by the spoliations, refused to follow her example.

36. Whether Philip had anything to do with the persecutions in England is uncertain; but he seems to have lost his interest in the country, and as there was little prospect of issue, he left England in 1555, and did not return till 1557, for the purpose of urging the queen to join him in a war against France. This was contrary to an article in the marriage contract, according to which England was not to go to war with France for the interests of Spain. But as Henry II. of France was at the time supporting some English refugees who had taken possession of the castle of Scarborough, war was declared, and eight thousand men were sent to join the Spanish army. When this object was attained, Philip left England, and never returned.

The English and Spanish forces invested St. Quentin, and an attempt of the French to relieve the place led to the famous battle of St. Quentin, in which the French were defeated with immense loss. The Duke de Guise, knowing that Calais was insufficiently garrisoned, made an attack upon it, and Earl Wentworth, the governor, finding that his case was hopeless, surrendered in 1558, and the English thus lost the last of their possessions in France, which for centuries had been the cause of war between the two nations. At the time the loss was felt very keenly, and perhaps by no one more keenly than by the queen herself. Her health had been bad for

36. Charles V. died, in the same year as Queen Mary, in a monastery in Spain, in which he had spent the last two years of his life. In the German Empire he was succeeded by Ferdinand I.

In 1555, toleration was secured to the Protestants in Germany by the Peace of Augsburg.

some time, and the loss of Calais, and the knowledge that she was very unpopular with many of her subjects, seems to have hastened her end. She expired in London, November 17, 1558.

37. That Mary during her reign perpetrated many acts of unpardonable cruelty, to which she owes the name of the Bloody Mary, cannot be denied. But there are circumstances which, if they cannot excuse, may at least palliate her acts. Her mother's disgrace, which involved her own illegitimacy, must have soured her mind. During her brother's reign she herself had been much persecuted. When we further remember that the reforming party attempted to deprive her of the succession, we cannot much wonder that she should have listened to advisers like Gardiner and Bonner.

5. ELIZABETH.—1558-1603.

38. Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII. and Anne Boleyn, was proclaimed queen on the very day of her sister's death, and proceeded to London, where she was welcomed by the great body of the people. After the execution of her mother she had been declared illegitimate; but she was, nevertheless, carefully educated, and became proficient in the ancient as well as in some modern languages, and in various female accomplishments. During the reign of Mary, she had been obliged to conceal her convictions, and to conform to the rules of the old church. The insurrection of Wyatt had placed her very life in danger. But after her accession she immediately and without fear showed what her real convictions were. She selected Sir William Cecil, a well-known Protestant, as her principal adviser, released all those who had been imprisoned for their religious opinions, forbade unlicensed preaching, and ordered every part of divine service to be performed in English.

39. Her accession, though welcomed by the majority of her people, was by no means satisfactory to all. Most of the Catholics still regarded her as illegitimate, and

looked upon Mary of Scotland as the rightful heir to the throne; all the bishops refused to assist at her coronation, with the exception of the Bishop of Carlisle, who was prevailed upon to perform the ceremony. But when parliament assembled, early in 1559, it declared Elizabeth legitimate, restored the supremacy of the crown in ecclesiastical as well as in all other matters; and the book of Common Prayer used under Edward VI., with some alterations, was ordered to be read in all the churches. The queen was further allowed to nominate the "Court of High Commission," to which her spiritual jurisdiction was entrusted.

40. When the bishops were summoned to take the oath of supremacy, all refused except the Bishop of Llandaff, and all were deprived of their sees; many other ecclesiastical dignitaries also were removed. But among the parochial clergy only few were prepared to give up their livings. The episcopal sees were then filled with men ready to support the reformation, and Parker became archbishop of Canterbury. Many men, no doubt, conformed to the new rules and laws from worldly motives, and many of those who were sincere did not agree with the doctrines and ceremonies ordered by the queen's authority. These latter were the **Protestant Dissenters** or **Nonconformists**. The Catholics, on the other hand, formed a powerful opposition, and it may be said that the whole of Elizabeth's long reign was an almost uninterrupted struggle with these two parties. But Elizabeth was determined to have her own way in these as in all other matters. The Catholics were the more dangerous of the two, as they did not scruple to gain their end by plots and conspiracies. As they were not allowed to have any schools or colleges for the education of their priests, young men had to be sent to places in France, Italy, or Germany, while priests from those countries often visited England in secret, in order to keep alive the ancient faith. These and similar things led the

39. In 1559 the Peace of Chateau-Cambresis put an end to the war between Spain and France, and Henry II. of France died.

government to have recourse to severe measures, and the Protestants now in their turn persecuted the Catholics almost as much as the Catholics had before persecuted the Protestants. Heavy fines were imposed for non-attendance at church, and for celebrating mass, and persons trying to win over anyone to the Roman Church, and all priests and Jesuits found in the kingdom were treated as guilty of treason. Many Catholics were thus executed, tortured, or otherwise punished.

41. Many of those Protestants who in the reign of Mary had fled to the Continent, had become disciples of Calvin at Geneva; they now returned home with peculiar views about the forms of public worship; they objected to clerical vestments and other ritualistic forms; they endeavoured, in short, to restore what they considered to have been the pure form of Christian worship during the first centuries after Christ, whence they received the name of Puritans. They met at first in private houses, but, in 1570, Thomas Cartwright, a divinity professor of Cambridge, formed them into a separate religious party. Cartwright himself was obliged to take to flight, but many Protestant clergymen adopted his views, and set up places of worship, in which they conducted divine service after their own fashion. As they greatly increased in numbers, they too were persecuted with fines, banishment, and even death. Elizabeth herself inclined more to the Lutheran views than those of the Swiss reformer, whose principles were propagated in Scotland by John Knox.

42. **Mary, Queen of Scots**, was only a week old when her father, James V., died, and her education was conducted by her mother, Mary of Guise, who was appointed regent. We have seen that she was betrothed to the Dauphin, and at the age of five she had been taken to the French court, where she was educated till her marriage in 1558. Her husband died a few years after-

41. John Calvin had come forward as a reformer at Geneva in 1541; he died in 1564. John Knox, who adopted his views and became the reformer of Scotland, was born in 1505, and died in 1572.

wards, 1560. The moral laxity of the French court could not but exercise its influence on the beautiful young widow. As her father was a direct descendant of Henry VII., the Catholic Mary was the natural rival of the Protestant Elizabeth, and her claims to the English throne were asserted by the Catholics from the beginning of Elizabeth's reign. The Guise family, which was all-powerful in France, even induced her to assume the title and the arms of the queen of England. In Scotland the reformed doctrines had made great progress, and the nobles heading the Protestant party called themselves the **Lords of the Congregation**.

43. The regent, dreading their power, sought the assistance of France, and as England was thus threatened on two sides, Elizabeth secretly supported the Scotch Protestants, and concluded a treaty with them at Berwick for mutual defence. Soon after this the queen-regent died. The French troops who were attacked by the English were shut up in Leith and compelled to surrender, whereupon a treaty was concluded at Edinburgh, 1560, in which it was stipulated that the French should evacuate Scotland, and that Mary should cease assuming the title of Queen of England. Mary, influenced by the Guise party, refused to ratify it. Meanwhile, the Scottish parliament established the reformed religion, and forbade the celebration of mass under heavy penalties.

44. In the year 1561, Mary, after the death of her husband, returned to Scotland, and for about four years her kingdom enjoyed a tolerable degree of tranquillity. She then married her cousin, Lord Darnley, a handsome but passionate and dissolute character, who like herself was a descendant of Henry VII. Mary had made the Piedmontese musician, David Rizzio, her French secretary, and, disgusted with Darnley's profligacy, she spent much of her time with the secretary. This excited Darnley's jealousy, and he had Rizzio dragged from the queen's presence into a side chamber, where he was

43. The queen-regent was Catherine de Medici, widow of Henry II. of France.

dispatched by a band of ruffians. This act must have extinguished whatever love she may still have felt for her husband; but she nevertheless tenderly nursed him soon afterwards, when he was seized with small-pox in the neighbourhood of Glasgow. In June 1566, three months after the murder of Rizzio, Mary gave birth to a son, who afterwards, as James VI., became King of Scotland, and subsequently of England as James I. After Darnley's recovery she brought her husband back to Edinburgh, and thinking Holyrood an unhealthy place,



HOLYROOD PALACE.

she assigned to him a solitary house near Edinburgh, called Kirk of Field. He had not been there many days when one morning the house was blown up by gunpowder, and Darnley's body was found at some distance from it. Lord Lennox, Darnley's father, suspecting that Bothwell, a great favourite of the queen, had been the perpetrator or instigator of the crime, commenced proceedings against him; but when, on the day of the trial, Bothwell appeared surrounded by a large body of armed men, Lennox was afraid to make the charge, and *Bothwell was acquitted*. One month after this, Mary married

the licentious Bothwell, who was made Duke of Orkney, and as he was a Protestant, the marriage ceremony was performed according to the rites of the reformed church, although, according to Mary's principles, she could not regard the marriage otherwise than as invalid.

45. This act immediately led to a confederacy of the nobles, the alleged object being to protect the infant prince, and to punish the murderers of his father. Mary collected a small force and advanced against the insurgents, but finding that she could not depend on her own soldiers, she surrendered, and was imprisoned in a castle on an island in Loch Leven. Bothwell escaped, became a pirate, and died in a prison in Denmark. While at Loch Leven, Mary was terrified into resigning the crown to her infant son, and the Earl of Murray, or Moray, her illegitimate brother, was appointed regent. After having been imprisoned for ten months, Mary made her escape, and soon gathered a force of six thousand men. She was attacked by Murray, and being defeated at Langside near Glasgow, she fled to Carlisle, 1568.

46. This flight into England placed the English government in a difficult position. If Elizabeth had granted her protection, it would have been said that she connived at the grave charge brought against her of having instigated the murder of Darnley. On the other hand, if Elizabeth allowed Mary to take her own course, she knew that the Catholics would rally round her and endanger the peace of the kingdom. Mary was therefore removed from Carlisle to Bolton Castle, where she was virtually detained as a prisoner. Commissioners were sent to York to investigate the case, but the charges and countercharges were so complicated that no conclusion could be come to, and the commission was removed to London. Elizabeth was advised by her council not to liberate Mary until her innocence should be fully established. Mary therefore remained a prisoner, first at Tutbury, and afterwards in Sheffield Castle, from 1570 to 1584.

47. We have already seen that Elizabeth had to con-

tend at home both against the Catholics and the ultra-Protestants or Nonconformists. From abroad rumours reached England that the Pope was ready to give the sovereignty of the country to any Catholic prince who would conquer it, and restore the old allegiance with Rome. There was, in fact, every reason to believe that the Pope, Sixtus V., in conjunction with France and Spain, would leave nothing untried to eradicate Protestantism altogether; the plan of effecting this in England could be carried out only by dethroning Elizabeth and conferring the crown on Mary. With this view the Earls of Westmoreland and Northumberland, the chiefs of the Catholic nobility, took up arms demanding the restoration of the ancient religion and the liberation of Mary. They advanced with their forces into Yorkshire; but when they learned that Surrey was marching against them with a strong body of troops, they disbanded their followers and fled into Scotland, and their adherents were severely punished. Westmoreland afterwards escaped to the Netherlands and entered the service of Spain, while Northumberland was seized by Murray and sent to England, where he was executed. The Duke of Norfolk, who had formed the design of marrying Queen Mary, and had not been foreign to the insurrection, was tried and likewise put to death, 1572.

48. In this same year about fifty thousand French Protestants were massacred in France, where they were called **Huguenots**. The massacre commenced on St. Bartholomew's day, whence it is known in history as the **Massacre of St. Bartholomew**. In the Netherlands, the Spaniards under Alva, who could boast of having slain one hundred thousand heretics, raged with equal fury. In 1578, Elizabeth concluded an alliance with the Netherlands who had risen against Alva, in which she engaged to support them with both men and money.

49. About seven years later, 1584, events occurred which induced parliament to enact energetic measures *for the protection* of the queen's life against conspirators.

That such measures were necessary was proved in the following year, when a plot was formed to assassinate Elizabeth and to liberate Mary. Many persons were implicated in it, but owing to the vigilance of Walsingham, Elizabeth's secretary, the conspiracy was brought to light. Many of the accomplices were arrested, and the leaders were executed as traitors, 1586. Mary was said to have been connected with this plot, and to have consented to the assassination of Elizabeth. A commission was accordingly appointed to try her at Fotheringay Castle. The evidence brought forward against her showed that she had invited the French to invade England, but she solemnly declared that she had not conspired against the life of Elizabeth. The court, however, found her guilty of having compassed the death of Elizabeth. Whether this verdict was based on sufficient evidence, is still a matter of some uncertainty; but Elizabeth might, at all events, have avoided carrying out the extreme punishment. After some affected hesitation she signed the death warrant, and the unhappy Mary was executed at Fotheringay, 1587. She bore her fate with firmness and in a truly Christian spirit.

50. Pope Sixtus, exasperated at the execution of a Catholic queen, called Elizabeth the English Jezebel, and urged Philip of Spain to prepare for the conquest of

48 and 49. In 1563 the council of Trent terminated its labours; it had been sitting for 18 years, had determined the canon of the Scriptures, and settled the dogmas of the Roman Church. Three years later, 1566, the Netherlands revolted against Philip II., whose governor, Alva, goaded the people into rebellion, by having introduced the Inquisition. The result was, that in 1579 the Dutch republic was established with William of Orange at its head, with the title of Stadtholder. He was murdered in 1584, and succeeded by his son Maurice, During the struggle of the Netherlands against Spain they were supported by England.

The massacre of St. Bartholomew is so called from the fact that it took place on St. Bartholomew's day; its occasion was the marriage of Henry of Navarre, the head of the French Protestants, with Margaret of Valois. The French Protestants were called Huguenots, in mockery, from a small place near Tours, where they held their meetings.

In 1580, Philip II. conquered Portugal, which thereafter remained united with Spain for 60 years.

In 1582, Pope Gregory reformed the calendar, and his reforms have since been adapted by nearly all European countries.

England. Philip accordingly resolved to attack England with all the forces at his command. At all the ports of Spain, Portugal, Italy, and Sicily, preparations were made on a gigantic scale, and an army of thirty thousand men was placed under the command of the Duke of Parma. The English government, in the meantime, neglected nothing to put the country in a state of defence. Admiral Drake, in 1587, was sent to the coast of Spain, and at Cadiz destroyed one hundred Spanish ships, or as he expressed it, "Singed the king's beard." This loss delayed the Spanish expedition for a whole year. When at last all was ready, the *Invincible Armada*, as it was proudly called, set sail in May 1588.



TILBURY FORT.

It consisted of a hundred and thirty ships, eight thousand sailors, and twenty thousand soldiers, and was placed under the command of Medina Sidonia, a man who knew very little of maritime warfare. The English fleet, under the command of Lord Howard of Effingham, assisted by Drake, Hawkins, and Frobisher, consisted of about a hundred and forty ships, many of which were *very small*, and fifteen thousand men. Besides this there *were three* land armies, one consisting of thirty thousand

men, which was to be employed as occasion required, and the two others of twenty thousand each were stationed on the south coast and at Tilbury.

51. When the Spanish Armada started, a tempest arose which did great damage to the ships, and caused the delay of a month. At length it set sail in July, and the hostile fleets met in the British Channel. In the first skirmishes the English seamen and their light craft proved superior to those of Spain. On the 27th of July the Armada anchored off Calais, where it was to be joined by the force under Parma. To prevent this, Howard in the night sent a number of fire-ships into the Spanish fleet, where they created such a panic that the Spaniards cut away from their anchorage and resolved to sail home round the north of Scotland and Ireland. Howard chased them as far as Flamborough Head, and then returned, as he was in want of provisions. Between the Orkneys and Hebrides the Spaniards were overtaken by a storm, which completely dispersed them, and destroyed so many of their ships, that scarcely one-third of the great Armada reached Spain, and twenty thousand men were lost.

52. The joy of the English people was unbounded, for England had indeed had a narrow escape. When all fear of the Armada had ceased, a vigorous war was carried on against Spain and her American colonies, and in 1596 Howard took and plundered Cadiz, where a vast amount of treasure was taken.

In 1598, Philip II. died, but the desire to renew hostilities against England did not die with him, and Ireland was in great danger of being seized upon by the enemy. That country had long been in a very disturbed state. The natives were discontented because the best parts of the land were in the hands of Englishmen, who treated the natives with great cruelty and insolence. In addition to this, the Irish remained attached to their old

52. In 1598, Henry IV. of France, who reigned from 1589 to 1610, issued the Edict of Nantes, whereby toleration was granted to the Huguenots. Henry was murdered by *Ravallac*,

religion, and refused to listen to the new doctrines. The Catholic states of France and Spain encouraged the rebellious spirit of the Irish, and Spain especially supported them with men and money in retaliation for Elizabeth's interference in the Netherlands. One of the principal leaders of the Irish was Shan O'Neal, earl of Desmond, who was succeeded by Hugh O'Neal, his nephew, whom Elizabeth made Earl of Tyrone in the hope of winning him over to her side. But notwithstanding this he put himself at the head of a formidable rebellion, in which he was supported by Spain with arms and otherwise. Several English generals were sent against him, and one of them was killed in 1598, in an attempt to relieve Blackwater, where the English sustained a severe loss. Nearly the whole of the native population was now in arms, and it became imperative to adopt energetic measures. The Earl of Essex, the queen's favourite, was appointed lord-lieutenant; but the earl, who had before distinguished himself in the war against Spain, wasted his time and his forces in petty skirmishes, without obtaining any result; and finding at last that his forces were not strong enough to encounter the enemy, he concluded a truce with Tyrone.

53. Elizabeth, hearing of this, was filled with indignation, and Essex, afraid of the consequences, left Ireland. But after a time he ventured to appear before the queen, who ordered him to be temporarily confined, and Lord Mountjoy, who was sent to Ireland in his stead, soon compelled the Irish to submit to the queen's authority. Essex in the meantime was deprived of his offices, but still hoped to regain the queen's favour. Finding this impossible, he resolved to overthrow the power of the party at court which had intrigued against him. An attempt was even made to seize the person of the queen, but the plan utterly failed, and Essex was carried to the Tower, condemned for high treason, and executed, 1601. A Spanish fleet landed at Kinsale to aid the Irish *Catholics*, but was defeated by Mountjoy and obliged to *negotiate*. Not long afterwards, Tyrone also surrendered

on condition that his life should be spared. This act terminated the Irish rebellion.

During the last years of her reign, Elizabeth was in a state of mental depression, probably the result of the many troubles of her long reign. At last she sank into a lethargic slumber, and died March 24, 1603, in her seventieth year. Although she disliked James VI. of Scotland, she did not oppose his succession, because he had a legitimate claim to the throne, and because he was a Protestant.

54. In the reign of Elizabeth the English reformation was completed; the prosperity of the country rapidly improved, and the foundations were laid of our industrial, commercial, and maritime greatness. Much of this was doubtless owing to the energetic character of the queen herself, but much also to the wisdom of her councillors. The character of her government was sometimes arbitrary and despotic, and although she remained a maiden queen; her tastes were coarse, and her court was not as morally pure as might have been expected. But notwithstanding all that may be said against her, her reign is in many ways one of the most brilliant periods of English history.

QUESTIONS.

1. What wars ceased at the accession of Henry VII.? How was the union of the houses of York and Lancaster effected?

2. What gave rise to insurrections, and what was the result of the first? Who was Lambert Simnel? Who did he pretend to be? Where was Simnel crowned king, and who aided him in his project? Where was a battle fought, and with what result? What became of Lovel and Simnel? How did Henry punish those implicated in the insurrection?

3. What French province asked assistance from Henry, and for what reason? Why did the people rise in insurrection in the north of England? How did Brittany come to be annexed to the French crown? What were the benevolences? What was Henry's real object

in extorting contributions from his subjects? In what year did Henry land in France? What treaty was signed by the French and English kings, and what were its conditions?

4. Who was Perkin Warbeck? At what court was Warbeck treated as a royal duke, and after what treaty did Charles VIII. discard him? Name those who aided Warbeck, and those who were executed. Why did Henry VII. forbid intercourse with Flanders? At what court did Warbeck get protection, and whom did he marry? What was the result of Warbeck's invasion of England? For what purpose was money voted by parliament? Why did the Cornish men refuse to pay? What was the result of the insurrection? Why was Warbeck obliged to leave Scotland, and where did he take refuge? What was his fate?

Is it known whether he was really an impostor or not?

6. What children had Henry VII., and whom did they marry? Who was Edmund, earl of Suffolk, and what was his fate? In what year did Henry VII. die? Say something of Henry's character. What was the Star Chamber? How may this period be regarded in history? What discoveries were made in the reign of Henry VII., and by whom?

8. What was the character of Henry VIII. before his accession, and how had he been educated?

9. Whom did Henry VIII. marry? Mention one of the first acts of his reign? How did Henry spend the money amassed by his father?

10. What was the League of Cambray? Explain the Holy League. What province in France did Henry wish to obtain? Give an account of the expedition to Gulpescoa in Biscay. Who was victorious in the battle of Brest? Give an account of the siege of Tournay. Who became Bishop of Tournay?

11. What war was being carried on in the north, and who commanded the English forces? With whom had James IV. kept up an alliance? Give an account of the battle of Flodden Field. In what year was it fought?

12. In what year did the French burn Brighton? What were the conditions of the peace concluded between England and France?

13. Give an account of Thomas Wolsey. Between what years was no parliament assembled? By whom was the country despotically governed? Name the competitors for the imperial crown of Germany, and who was successful? What jealousy was occasioned by the election of Charles V.? What meeting was arranged by Francis, king of France? What is meant by the Field of the Cloth of Gold? Mention the only important event in connection with this meeting.

14. What part did Henry VIII. take in the war between France and Spain? What promise did Charles V. make to Wolsey? What caused a coolness to exist between the emperor and Wolsey? Who commanded the English forces in France? What invasion was meditated by the Scotch, and what came of it? Why was parliament convoked, and in what year? By whom was parliament presided over, and what was the result of the discussions? What opportunity offered itself to Henry for invading France, and what was the result of

Henry's trying to raise money for the war? Why were communications broken off between England and Spain?

15. In what year did Henry openly confess to scruples about the validity of his marriage with the widow of his brother? How did the Pope act on being applied to for a divorce? What was the queen advised to do, and with what result? What was the result of the commission? Whom did the king blame when the Pope revoked the commission? Of what was Wolsey deprived, and what charges were brought against him? What was the end of Wolsey?

16. What was Henry's great desire? Who was Cranmer, and what advice did he give Henry? How was Cranmer afterwards rewarded? What was the opinion of the lawyers as regards the divorce, and what the opinion of parliament? Why did the Pope fear to pronounce the sentence? When did Henry marry Anne Boleyn? What did Cranmer solemnly declare at Dunstable?

17. What measure did Henry get parliament to enact? Who was Sir Thomas Moore, and what was his fate?

18. What power did Henry VIII. assume in religious matters? What act of parliament was passed? Say what you know of Martin Luther. With what title was Henry VIII. rewarded by the Pope, and for what reason? Why did Henry sever the connection with Rome, and what additional authority did he gain by it?

19. What was the fate of Anne Boleyn, and what offence did Henry commit the day after Anne's execution?

20. How was the declaration of independence of the English Church from Rome and the new regulations generally regarded? What was the Pilgrimage of Grace, and on what did the men insist? To what did this insurrection afterwards lead? Into whose hands did the enormous revenues fall, and how was the money spent? Why were several persons executed? Give an account of the statute which Henry caused parliament to enact. How did this statute get the name of "the whip with six strings?" What position had the king taken?

21. Who died in 1537? Whom did Henry marry, and at whose persuasion? What was the result of this marriage, and what the fate of Cromwell?

22. Who was Henry's fifth wife, and what was the result of this marriage? Whom did Henry marry in 1543?

23. What authority had Henry possessed in Ireland at the time of his accession, and how was the rest of Ireland governed? How did Henry get for himself the title of King of Ireland, and in what year?

24. What was the rout of Solway? What marriage did Henry plan, and with what object? Who opposed the alliance, and what steps did Henry take in consequence? Why did Henry invade France? What town in France was taken by the English? Between which two potentates was peace concluded? What naval engagement took place off Portsmouth? In what year was peace concluded between France and England, and what were the conditions? What country was included in the pacification? In what year did Henry VIII. die?

25. What children did Henry leave? Why is the reign of Henry VIII. one of the most memorable in history? What great step was gained as regards the Scriptures? How was disbelief in the doctrines of the Roman Church regarded? Say what you know of England's naval power under Henry VIII.? What dockyards were established?

26. What hopes did the character of Edward VI. inspire? To whom had Henry VIII. entrusted the government of the country during the minority of his son? Who was nominated guardian to the young king? What cause was strongly favoured by Edward and his guardian, and who headed the Catholic party? Why was the Earl of Southampton dismissed by the protector?

27. What scheme was thwarted by the opposition of Cardinal Beaton? What secret treaty was formed, and what was the result? Give an account of the battle of Pinkie. What other Scotch town was plundered, and in what year did the conqueror return to London? With what country did the Scotch ally themselves, and what marriage was arranged? In what year was peace restored, and what were its conditions?

28. By whom were the interests of the Reformation promoted in England? What statute was abolished? What acts were passed by parliament?

29. Who was Lord Seymour, and what plans was he suspected of harbouring? What was Lord Seymour's fate?

30. Mention one of the causes which gave rise to insurrections. What char-

acter did some of the insurrections assume, and what demands did the insurgents make? How did the government act? How did the proceedings of the reformers affect the poorer classes? Who had been most successful in defeating the insurgents? What conspiracy was organised, and by whom? What was the result of the conspiracy? Who became the head of the government, and in what year? How was a reconciliation effected between Warwick and Somerset? How did Somerset meet with his end?

31. To what rank was Warwick raised, and what authority did he possess? In whose favour did Warwick try to alter the succession? Whom was Edward VI. prevailed upon to name as his successor, and what was the result? In what year did Edward VI. die?

32. Why did Northumberland contrive to keep Edward's death a secret? What steps did Mary take? Why did Northumberland despair of success? How long had Lady Jane Grey enjoyed royal honours? Who was proclaimed queen? What was the fate of Northumberland? What others were imprisoned in the Tower?

33. How was Mary's title proved? What form of worship was restored? What were the priests compelled to do? What intention did Mary declare, and what effect had it upon her subjects? Give an account of the rebellion and its result. Mention some of those whom Mary ordered to be executed. What princess' life was in danger, and what was done with her?

34. In what year was Queen Mary married, and to whom? By whom was parliament prevailed upon to return to its old allegiance to Rome? Who was Mary's chancellor, and what precautions did he advise? Mention two of the victims. By whom was Gardiner succeeded in his office? Give an account of the execution of Ridley and Latimer.

35. Who was made Archbishop of Canterbury? What was done with the property of the church?

36. In what year did Philip leave England? When did he return, and with what purpose? Mention an article in the marriage contract? What finally decided that there should be a war?

Say what you know of the battle of St. Quentin. Give an account of the surrender of Calais, and in what year it took place. What was the effect of the loss of Calais upon the queen and

her subjects? In what year did Queen Mary die?

37. Say something of Mary's character. What excuses can be made for her?

38. Whose daughter was Queen Elizabeth? What education had she received? To what church did Queen Elizabeth belong? How did she act as regards her religious convictions upon coming to the throne? Whom did Elizabeth make her principal adviser?

39. What party regarded Elizabeth's succession as illegitimate, and who was regarded by them as the rightful heir? What did parliament declare in 1559? What was the "Court of High Commission?"

40. What oath did the bishops refuse to take, and what was the result? Who became Archbishop of Canterbury? Who were the Nonconformists? What struggles continued during the whole of Elizabeth's reign? How did the Catholics try to gain their ends? What caused the government to have recourse to severe measures against the Catholics? Mention some of the punishments inflicted?

41. Who were the Puritans? Who was Thomas Cartwright? To whose religious views did Queen Elizabeth incline? Name the Scottish reformer.

42. Who was Mary, Queen of Scots? Give an account of her early life in France. Who was regent of Scotland? What claims had Mary to the Scottish throne, and by whom were her claims asserted? What French family induced Mary to assume the title of Queen of England? Who were the "Lords of the Congregation?"

43. What peace was concluded at Berwick, and for what purpose? Name the conditions of the peace of Edinburgh, and who refused to ratify it. What religion was established by the Scottish parliament?

44. When did Queen Mary return to Scotland, and whom did she marry? Who was Rizzio? Give an account of his murder. In what year was Mary's son born, and under what name did he afterwards become king? Give an account of the end of Darnley. Who was suspected as the murderer, and by whom was he suspected? What was the result of Bothwell's trial? Whom did Mary marry?

45. What confederacy was formed, and with what object? What happened to Mary? What was the end of Bothwell? How long was Mary imprisoned

at Loch Levan, and to whom was she forced to resign the crown? Who was made regent of Scotland? When was the battle of Langside fought, and what was the result?

46. Why did the flight of Mary into England place Elizabeth in a difficult position? To what castle was Mary removed? What was the result of the investigation into the charges brought against her? What advice did her councillors give Elizabeth? In what castles was Mary confined, and during what years?

47. With what parties had Elizabeth to contend in England? What rumours reached England from abroad? What plan had the Roman Catholics for eradicating Protestantism in England? By whom was the Catholic party headed, and what caused them to disband their followers? What became of the Earls of Westmoreland and Northumberland? In what year was the Duke of Norfolk executed, and why?

48. Say what you know of the massacre of St. Bartholomew. How did the Spaniards behave in the Netherlands? What alliance was concluded by England with the Netherlands, and what were its conditions?

49. Say what you know of the plot to assassinate Elizabeth and to liberate Mary, and its result. What evidence was brought against Queen Mary? What did she declare? What sentence was passed on Mary, and in what year was she executed?

50. By whom were preparations made to invade England, and at whose instigation? What victory was gained by the English under the command of Admiral Drake, and in what year? Say what you know of the Invincible Armada? Who commanded it? Give an account of the English fleet, and name the commanders.

51. By whom did the Armada expect to be joined off Calais? Why did the Armada determine to sail home, and how far did Howard chase them? What became of the Armada?

52. What war was carried on by the English, and what expedition was undertaken by Howard? In what year did Philip II. die? What was the condition of Ireland? By whom was the rebellious spirit of the Irish encouraged, and what country supported them with money and men? Who was the Earl of Tyrone? When was the battle of Blackwater fought, and with what result?

Who was appointed lord-lieutenant, and why did he conclude a peace with Tyrone?

53. How did the queen receive the news of peace, and how was Essex punished? Why was Essex executed, and in what year? What was the end of the Irish rebellion? What was the

state of Elizabeth's health during the last years of her reign, and in what year did she die? How did Elizabeth feel as regards the succession?

54. What improvements and advancements were made during Elizabeth's reign? What was the character of her government?

CHAPTER IX.

THE HOUSE OF STUART.

1. James I. (1603-1625); plots against him.

2. The millenary petition.

3. The Gunpowder Plot.

4. Parliament asserts its rights.

5. The king's favourites.

6. Walter Raleigh; Francis Bacon.

7. Proposed Spanish match.

8. Colonies in Ireland and in the New World.

9. James' death and character.

10. Charles I. (1625-1649) marries Henrietta Maria, a daughter of Henry IV. of France.

11. Parliament refuses the money for a war against Spain. Buckingham.

12. War against France to protect the Huguenots. The petition of right.

13. Charles' arbitrary proceedings.

14. The Star Chamber and Court of High Commission. Laud.

15. Ship money. John Hampden.

16. Prayer book and liturgy in Scotland. The national covenant.

17. Rebellion of the Scotch.

18. The Long Parliament. Execution of Strafford. Concessions to Scotland.

19. Rebellion in Ireland.

20. The Cavaliers and Roundheads.

21. Commencement of the revolution, rupture between the king and the parliament.

22. The Civil War.

23. Oliver Cromwell. A Scotch army joins the parliamentary party.

24. Defeat of the royalists.

25. Execution of Laud. Cromwell and Fairfax.

26. Battle of Naseby.

27. Montrose defeated near Selkirk. Charles surrenders to the Scotch army, is given up to the English, and confined in Holmby House.

28. Disputes between parliament and the army.

29. Charles escapes to the Isle of Wight.

30. Reaction in favour of the king.

31. The Rump Parliament.

32. Trial and condemnation of Charles.

33. Execution of Charles.

34. Abolition of royalty, and England is declared a republic.

35. Subjugation of Ireland.

36. War with Scotland.

37. Battle of Dunbar. The south of Scotland falls into Cromwell's hands.

38. Charles II. crowned king at Scone. Cromwell utterly defeats the royalists near Worcester. Scotland incorporated with England.

39. War with the Dutch republic.

40. The Rump Parliament dispersed by Cromwell.

41. Barebones Parliament. Cromwell is made Protector of the Commonwealth.

42 and 43. Cromwell's protectorate.

44. Conspiracies against him.

45. Cromwell's foreign policy and war against Spain. His death.

46. Richard Cromwell succeeds his father, but soon resigns his power.

47. The Rump Parliament reassembles. Attempts to restore Charles II.

48. Lambert and Monk.

49. Restoration of the monarchy.

50. Charles II. (1680-1685). The Convention Parliament. Settlement of national affairs.

51. Charles violates his promises.

52. Ecclesiastical affairs. The Corporation Act.

53. The act of uniformity.

54. Charles marries Catherine of

- Braganza, and sells Dunkirk to Louis XIV.
55. Episcopacy in Scotland.
56. The Conventicle Act. The plague in London. The Five Mile Act.
57. Second war with the Dutch.
58. Battles near the Goodwin Sands.
59. The great fire of London.
60. End of the Dutch war.
61. Clarendon banished for life.
62. The Cabal. Alliance with Holland and Sweden against Louis XIV.
63. Secret treaty with Louis XIV. Renewal of the war with Holland.
64. Declaration of indulgence.
65. Titus Oates and the popish plot. The Papists' Disabling Act.
66. The parliament.
67. The Habeas Corpus Act—Whig and Tory. Fears about the succession.
68. The Rye House plot. Charles' despotism and death.
69. **JAMES II.** (1685-1688). His character.
70. James favours the Catholics.
- 71 and 72. Insurrections of Argyll and Monmouth.
73. Monmouth beheaded.
74. Cruel persecutions. Jeffreys.
75. James' design to acquire absolute power.
76. Revocation of the Edict of Nantes and its effect upon England.
77. Attempts to restore the old religion.
78. Trial of the seven bishops.
79. The Revolution. William of Orange invited. Lands at Torbay. Flight of James.
80. The interregnum. James deposed, and William undertakes the administration. The acts of settlement and the declaration of rights.

1. JAMES I.—1603-1625.

1. James, the son of Mary Queen of Scots, by her second husband, Lord Darnley, was crowned King of Scotland during his mother's captivity in Loch Leven Castle. His accession to the English throne at length brought the two kingdoms under one head, which was, on the whole, beneficial to both countries. But the Catholics then, as before, would have liked better to see the throne occupied by one of their own way of thinking, and in the very first year of James' reign, two plots were formed against him—the **Main** and the **Bye** plots; the object of the former is said to have been to raise to the throne Lady Arabella Stuart, who, like James, was descended from Henry VII. This, however, may have been a mere pretext: for the leaders, such as Raleigh, Lords Cobham, Grey, and the Earl of Northumberland, were much dissatisfied with the new king, whom they only wished to frighten. The "Bye" plot, which was going on at the same time, was formed by Roman Catholics and Puritans, who wanted to seize the person of the king and to compel him to grant more religious toleration. These two plots, which somehow became

1. Walter Raleigh was imprisoned for thirteen years in the Tower, where he wrote his famous History of the World.

mixed together, were ultimately abandoned; but they had not escaped the vigilance of the government, and some of the leaders were put to death and others banished. Walter Raleigh, Cobham, and Grey, however, though condemned to death, were reprieved, and imprisoned.

2. We have already seen that the Puritans were opposed to many of the views of the English Reformed Church, and, as the throne was now occupied by a king who had been brought up in the Scotch Presbyterian principles, they thought the time had come when they might hope for a general adoption of their opinions. A petition was accordingly drawn up, signed by nearly a thousand clergymen, hence called the **Millenary Petition**, in which they stated their wishes and the objections they felt to the established system. By order of the king, a conference was held at Hampton Court, 1604, at which the subject was to be discussed by representatives of both parties. The king, who himself acted as moderator, strongly supported the English Church party, and the resolutions formed were as gratifying to the English Church party as they were unsatisfactory to the Puritans, for none of their grievances was redressed.

3. The Catholics also hoped to obtain better terms from the son of Mary, but they were likewise disappointed, for he proceeded against them with increased severity, and this so much incensed the more violent spirits among them, that in 1605 they formed a plot for blowing up the king and his parliament. For this purpose, Robert Catesby, Thomas Winter, **Guy Fawkes**, and several others, bound themselves by an oath to accomplish their design. A cellar under the House of Lords was hired and filled with several barrels of gunpowder. As the time, November 5, 1605, for carrying out the plan was approaching, some of the conspirators, wishing to save their friends who were members of the House, warned them of the danger by anonymous letters. One of these letters was sent to Lord Mounteagle, and this led to the discovery of the whole scheme. When the cellar was

searched, Guy Fawkes was found concealed in it, and the train laid. He was at once arrested, and upon hearing this, the other conspirators fled to Dunchurch, and thence to Holbeach, in Staffordshire; but they were pursued by the sheriffs with a body of armed men. The house in which they had taken refuge being attacked, some were taken prisoners, and others mortally wounded. Those who were taken were executed as traitors in January 1606. The consequence of this plot was, that parliament enacted still severer laws against the Catholics, who were now compelled to swear that they abhorred the doctrine that kings excommunicated by the Pope might be deposed or murdered by their subjects.

4. James at all times showed great partiality for his own country, upon which he lavished wealth and honours, perhaps in the hope that thereby he might reconcile the Scotch to a real union with England; but in the latter country it only roused the angry feelings of jealousy, and parliament, which towards the end of Elizabeth's reign had shown some symptoms of a spirit of independence, became more and more resolute in its opposition to the king's views, who maintained that parliamentary privileges were only matters of royal favour and not of right. As James was unable to induce parliament to vote as much money as he wanted, all kinds of expedients were resorted to, to make up the deficiency; peerages, baronetcies (which were first established in Ireland to protect the parts colonised by English), honours, and places, were sold for money, while public servants often received no pay, and had to support themselves by bribes and speculation. The House of Commons persisted in complaining of these and other abuses, and the king, with his notion about the divine right of kings, found, to his vexation, that parliament was no longer as pliable as it had been, and that it insisted upon having a voice in all matters affecting the interests of the kingdom.

4. In the year 1610, Henry IV. of France, whose reign extended from 1589 to 1610, was murdered by Ravallac, and was succeeded by Louis XIII., from 1610

5. In 1612, Robert Cecil, his principal adviser, and his eldest son, Henry, died; and in the following year his daughter Elizabeth married Frederick, the elector palatine of the Rhine, from which marriage has sprung the Hanoverian line of our sovereigns. After Cecil's death, Robert Carr became James' prime minister and favourite. This man, who had originally been a page of a Scotch noble, had risen through the king's favour to the highest position in the kingdom. He ultimately married the young Countess of Essex, who was divorced from her husband; and that Carr might be equal to her in rank, he was created Duke of Somerset. His influence with the king roused the jealousy of other courtiers, who began to intrigue against him. A young man named George Villiers was introduced and recommended to the king, and soon became a formidable rival of Somerset. In 1615, events occurred which proved to be the ruin of Somerset. Sir Thomas Overbury, who had always acted as a faithful friend to Somerset, expressed his disapproval of the marriage with the Countess of Essex, and the latter, on being informed of this, resolved to wreak her vengeance on Overbury. By intrigues, she and her husband got him lodged in the Tower, where soon after he was found dead. An investigation was instituted, and several persons who had been accomplices in the murder were executed, but Somerset and the countess for the moment escaped condemnation. In 1616, however, both were arraigned before their peers, and although they were found guilty, the punishment inflicted on them was only imprisonment in the Tower. They were indeed afterwards liberated, but ended their lives in obscurity and infamy.

6. After Somerset's fall, the power of Villiers became paramount, and remained so to the end of James' reign. He passed successively through all the stages of the peerage, and was in the end created Duke of Buckingham. Through his influence Walter Raleigh was released from the Tower, where he had been imprisoned for thirteen years. On his liberation, Raleigh proposed to the king

to undertake an expedition to Guiana, where he hoped to find gold. He went out with fifteen armed ships, but as the undertaking was unsuccessful, he was, on his return, again cast into prison; and to please the Spaniards, with whom Raleigh had come into collision on his expedition, James caused this able and brave admiral to be executed in 1618. This unwarrantable deed, which was simply a judicial murder, combined with other causes, made James very unpopular. When parliament met in 1621, great efforts were made to remove abuses and grievances; the House of Commons even went so far as to impeach the Lord Chancellor, the renowned Francis Bacon, viscount of St. Albans, for bribery and corruption. He was found guilty, ordered to pay a fine of £40,000, to be imprisoned during the king's pleasure, and declared incapable henceforth of holding any public office. The fine and imprisonment were afterwards remitted.

7. Negotiations had been going on for some time to bring about the marriage of James' son Charles with the Infanta of Spain, although the scheme was very unpopular in England, and not much liked by the king himself. But Buckingham strongly urged the advantages of such a union, and the king at last consented. In 1623, Buckingham accompanied the prince to Spain, but his insolent behaviour so much offended the Spaniards, that the plan had to be given up. Buckingham, in his vexation, now openly showed his dislike of the Spaniards, which made him popular at home; he even got the government to declare war against Spain, and parliament to vote a large sum of money to carry it on; but no results were obtained.

8. The reign of James I., of which not much good can be said, except that his autocratic views caused the

6. The year 1618 is remarkable in the history of Europe as that in which the Thirty Years' War broke out in Germany. It began in Bohemia, and during the first two years it may be called the Bohemian War.

Lord Bacon, the modern Aristotle, is the founder of practical English philosophy.

In 1619, Ferdinand II., called "the son of the Jesuits," became Emperor of Germany, and reigned till 1639. Under him a Catholic league was formed in Germany against the Protestants, which divided the country into two hostile camps.

parliament to assert and maintain its own rights, is remarkable for the system of colonization which was carried out on a larger scale than before. In Ireland, vast tracts of land had fallen to the crown, and it was resolved to plant colonies of English and Scotch in Ulster, Munster, and other parts where the settlers received lands. This became the origin of the towns of Londonderry and Coleraine. In North America, also, English colonies were planted: in 1610, Newfoundland was colonised, and ten years later a body of Nonconformists, known by the name of the Pilgrim Fathers, formed the nucleus of the New England states, by founding the town of New Plymouth. It may also be noticed that the charter granted by Elizabeth in 1600 to the East India Company was renewed in perpetuity in 1609.

9. James I. died at Theobalds, near Cheshunt, in Hertfordshire, March 27, 1625. He was not without some good qualities, and possessed a considerable amount of learning, which he used to display in a pedantic manner; but these qualities were eclipsed by an inordinate conceit of his own wisdom and of his almost divine power as a king. He was awkward in his person, and ungainly in his manners; his government, notwithstanding his arrogance, was weak and feeble, as he allowed himself to be guided by favourites whose character he was unable to discern. He was married to Anne, daughter of Frederick II. of Denmark, by whom he had three children, Henry, who died in 1612; Charles, who succeeded him; and Elizabeth, who was married to the Elector Palatine.

2. CHARLES I.—1625-1649.

10. Charles, the only surviving son of James I., a few months after his father's death, married the Catholic princess, Henrietta Maria, a daughter of Henry IV. of France. Ever since Buckingham had risen to power and influence, Charles had allowed himself to be guided by

9. In 1622 the first weekly newspaper—"The Weekly News," was established in London. From 1620 till 1624, the Thirty Years' War was carried on mainly about the Palatinate.

him, to his own and the country's misfortune. His queen, a woman of a violent temper, is also said to have exercised an undue influence over him, and to have led him to adopt measures which could not but provoke most serious opposition among his subjects, and ultimately brought him to the scaffold.

11. There still were many grievances at home to be redressed, but Charles allowed himself to be persuaded by Buckingham to engage in a war against Spain. When he demanded from parliament £700,000 for this purpose, the majority voted only £140,000, and poundage and tonnage for one year only, a sum which was barely sufficient to carry on the business of the government. Parliament, in fact, refused to vote money for the war, until the king had shown what policy he meant to adopt, and until the conduct of Buckingham, who was the cause of the war, should have been inquired into. The king, in order to save his favourite, abruptly dissolved parliament, and endeavoured to obtain the money by arbitrary and irregular exactions. When this method failed, a new parliament was summoned in 1626, Charles taking care that the best and most patriotic men should not be present in it. But he nevertheless found this parliament as determined as its predecessor not to vote money until the grievances were removed; they even resolved to impeach Buckingham, who was looked upon as the author and supporter of most of the abuses in the administration. The king was indignant at seeing his minister thus treated by parliament, and as, nevertheless, they began their proceedings against him, he again dissolved them.

12. All manner of illegal means were now resorted to to obtain the money. Many gentlemen, who protested against them, were brought to trial, and the servile judges declared the king's proceedings justified, although they were in direct violation of the Great Charter. While he was thus struggling with difficulties, he felt himself obliged to declare war against France for the protection of the Huguenots, who were besieged at Rochelle by the *French government*. Buckingham was sent out with an

armed force, but had to return home without having effected anything. This disgrace, and the great loss of men, caused universal indignation, and Charles, being in most urgent want of money, summoned a third parliament. The Commons, with great liberality, promised five subsidies, on condition that the king should grant them what is known as the **Petition of Right**, which consisted of four articles:—1. That no man should be compelled to pay any money to the state unless ordered by an act of parliament; 2. That no man should be imprisoned for refusing to pay such money, and that no free man should be imprisoned without cause being shown; 3. That soldiers and marines should not be billeted on private persons; and 4. That no more commissions should be issued for punishing persons by martial law. Charles, after much hesitation and attempts at evasion, sanctioned the articles.

13. Two months later, Buckingham, who was preparing a new expedition to aid the Protestants at Rochelle, was assassinated at Portsmouth by a man who thought that he was doing a service to his country, but was afterwards executed for his crime. When parliament reassembled in 1629, it censured the government for having neglected to give effective help to the Protestants at Rochelle, who, in their despair, had been obliged, in 1628, to surrender; and seeing that those clergymen who justified the arbitrary doings of the king were favoured and promoted, parliament declared them, as well as the promoters of Catholicism, to be enemies to the kingdom. These proceedings irritated the king to such a degree that he again dissolved parliament, adding the threat that “those vipers of the Commons should soon receive their reward.” Some of the leaders of the Commons were at once imprisoned and fined.

14. With France and Spain a peace was concluded in 1630. After having dismissed his third parliament,

13. In 1628 Stralsund on the Baltic was besieged by Wallenstein. During this period Cardinal Richelieu was minister of Louis XIII., and contrived to break the power of the Hapsburgs in Europe.

Charles made up his mind henceforth to govern the kingdom as an absolute monarch, and without parliament. The government was now conducted in the most arbitrary manner: royal proclamations were issued with the force of laws, illegal imposts were laid on merchandise, monopolies were established, and enormous fines were inflicted for disobedience, and often on most frivolous pretexts. The **Star Chamber** and the **Court of High Commission** were the ready instruments employed for these purposes, and Archbishop **Laud**, and **Wentworth**, a renegade, who, in 1632, was made a peer and governor of Ireland, were the king's chief advisers in these proceedings. Laud had been Bishop of London, and in 1633 was made Archbishop of Canterbury, chiefly because he entertained the most extravagant notions about the royal authority. His oppressive and cruel measures were endless, but his rage was especially shown against the Puritans and those who opposed prelacy. Thus Dr. Leighton, a Scotch clergyman, who had written a book called "Sion's plea against Prelates," had to pay a fine of £10,000, was publicly whipped, had his ears cut off, his nostrils slit, and his cheeks branded with the letters S.S. (sower of sedition). Another man, a barrister, named Prynne, was punished in a similar manner for having published a book against theatres entitled "**Histriomastix**."

15. One of these obnoxious exactions led to consequences which were of the greatest service to constitutional freedom. This was the impost called ship-money, which was levied in London and other seaports. They were ordered to furnish a certain number of ships in 1638, but in the next year the same demand was also made upon inland towns. This created great discontent, and John Hampden, a gentleman of Buckinghamshire,

14. In 1630, Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, appeared in Germany supporting the cause of Protestantism. Capture and destruction of Madgeburg by Tilly, who was defeated and mortally wounded in 1632.

15. In 1632, Gustavus Adolphus was mortally wounded in the battle of Lützen. Two years later, Wallenstein, who was suspected by his imperial master, was *murdered at Eger*.

refused to pay the tax, though it amounted to only £1, for he was resolved to have the legality of the tax tried in a court of law. Only two out of twelve judges had the courage to declare that the tax was unlawful, and Hampden was condemned, 1637. The verdict, however, created great excitement, and was generally looked upon as unjust and unconstitutional, and the people henceforth paid the tax with greater reluctance than before.

16. In Scotland, especially, the proceedings of Laud and his party made a deep impression, the Presbyterians being utterly opposed to the English Church system. In 1633, Charles, accompanied by Laud, had visited Scotland in the hope of being able to introduce the English liturgy there, but no open attempt had then been made. Soon after a book of canons and a liturgy were drawn up for the use of the Scottish Church. The first Sunday they were used in Edinburgh, in 1637, the congregation became excited to such a degree that they attacked the minister with stools and sticks, and anything that came to hand; with difficulty he escaped in the crowd assembled outside. Similar scenes occurred in other places, and the new forms of service had to be suspended, though the magistrates were commanded by the government with threats to enforce their use. Nearly all Scotland was determined to resist these encroachments on its religious freedom, and when petitions against the use of the Prayer Book were of no avail, four "tables," or committees, were formed, consisting of noblemen, gentlemen, ministers, and burgesses, who framed what is called the **National Covenant**. In it almost all Scotchmen bound themselves to resist any attempt to alter the Presbyterian form of worship, 1638. A meeting of the General Assembly was held in Glasgow, in which such uncompromising hostility was shown to episcopacy that the royal commissioner declared the Assembly dissolved,

16. In 1637 the emperor, Ferdinand II., died, and was succeeded by Ferdinand III., who reigned till 1657. Meanwhile, the Swedes and French continued the war against Germany, the object of which was to make conquests in that distracted country.

but the members refused to separate, and by a series of resolutions abolished the liturgy, the canons, and the whole hierarchical system, which the king had set his heart upon introducing.

17. At the same time the Scotch made most active preparations to meet force by force. Laud and Wentworth advised their master to enter into no compromise, but to assert his authority by armed force. As Charles' finances were exhausted, he very reluctantly summoned his fourth parliament, 1640, demanding as subsidies nearly a million of money; but the House of Commons insisted upon investigating and removing grievances before voting the supplies. The king, however, wanting money, and not discussion, this parliament also was dissolved before it had sat three weeks. When this became known in Scotland, the people, being sure that no satisfactory result could be gained by negotiation, resolved at once to take up arms. A Scotch army, under the command of the brave Leslie, accordingly crossed the Tweed, defeated Lord Conway on the banks of the Tyne, and took possession of Newcastle. Charles then assembled at York a great council of peers, who advised him to summon parliament, and commence negotiations with Scotland. Representatives of both countries then met at Ripon, where it was agreed to suspend hostilities until the parliaments of the two nations should have settled the matter in dispute, and that in the meantime the Scotch army should receive a weekly subsidy of £5600.

18. The parliament now summoned, the renowned **Long Parliament**, met in November 1640, and was not finally dissolved until 1660. The members, on their assembling, showed at once that they were in earnest to remove the grievances and devise measures to re-establish constitutional liberty. Leighton, Prynne, and others were released from imprisonment and compensated, and

17. In 1640, Portugal recovered its independence of Spain.
In Prussia, Frederick William, called the great elector, reigned from 1640 to 1688.

Wentworth, who had in the meantime been created Earl of Strafford, was impeached for high treason and lodged in the Tower, by order of his peers. He was beheaded in the year following, having been found guilty. Laud also, and other high functionaries were soon after committed to the Tower; some, fearing a similar fate, fled to the Continent. In 1641 a series of most important measures were passed, suppressing tyrannical abuses of the royal prerogative. The English and Scotch armies were disbanded, and Charles, going to Scotland, where parliament was likewise assembled, made very ample concessions to the Presbyterians; but they placed little confidence in them, although some of their very leaders were raised to high honours and offices, for Leslie was created Earl of Leven, and Argyle, the chief of the Covenanters, received the title of marquis.

19. Strafford, who had governed Ireland since 1633, had offended and insulted all parties by setting up his own authority above that of the law courts. He had imposed arbitrary taxes, and levied them by military force; he had established monopolies for his own benefit, and had forbidden any person to leave the island without his permission. But what was felt there more bitterly than anything else was the laws against Catholics, which were enforced with the utmost rigour. When the Irish saw the distracted state of England, and heard of the concessions made to the Scotch, they resolved to gain similar advantages for themselves. A formidable rebellion accordingly broke out in October 1641, headed by Roger Moore and Sir Philem O'Neale. The rebels acted with the most merciless cruelty towards all Protestants, massacring indiscriminately men, women, and children. Between forty and fifty thousand persons are said to have been murdered, and some with the most savage tortures. The king was suspected of having secretly fostered the rebellion as a demonstration against the English parliament, and the suspicion derives some support from his own words, which he wrote to his secretary: "I hope this ill news of Ireland will hinder

some of these follies in England." The rebellion continued for several years before it could be crushed.

20. When Charles returned from Scotland, he was heartily welcomed by the citizens of London. Parliament perceiving this, and hearing at the same time of the Irish rebellion, became greatly alarmed. They doubted the king's sincerity, and were afraid lest, unless they obtained better guarantees, the king might seize on any favourable opportunity to crush the national liberties. They accordingly drew up and published a paper containing two hundred and six articles, called the **Remonstrance of the State of the Kingdom**, in which they set forth all the grievances from the beginning of Charles' reign, the beneficial measures they themselves had passed, and the obstructions they had met with. The object, apparently, was to increase the prevailing dissatisfaction. It was on this occasion that parliament first appeared divided into two parties, the **Cavaliers**, or court party, and the **Roundheads**, the country or parliamentary party. The latter, consisting of such men as Pym, Hampden, Cromwell, and St. John, distrusted the king, and wished for stronger checks upon his power. The bishops were suspected of being the chief obstructors of liberal measures, and one of their number having been insulted by the mob outside the House, several of them signed a protest, declaring that they would not attend the meetings of the House, and would regard all acts passed in their absence as null and void. Irritated by this step, the House impeached them for treason, and the Lords approving of the impeachment ordered the bishops to be committed to the Tower, December 1641.

21. In January 1642, the king ventured upon a desperate step to recover his authority—the attorney-general was ordered to proceed to the House of Lords, and accuse of high treason Lord Kimbolton, Pym, Hamp-

20. The term Roundheads was applied to the party in derision on account of their short cut hair.

21. In 1642, Cardinal Richelleu died, and in the year following, his master, Louis XIII., who was followed by Louis XIV. from 1643 to 1715.

den, Hollis, and Haslerig, the most distinguished leaders of the parliamentary party. As the House refused to give them up, the king himself on the next day appeared with a strong body-guard in the House of Commons with the intention of seizing the accused. But they were not present that day, having received information about the design of the king, who had accordingly to withdraw in utter confusion. In this proceeding Charles had committed an unconstitutional act, and it may be said that the revolution commenced on that day. Both parties prepared for war, though negotiations were still going on. The queen was sent to Holland, to solicit help from foreign powers. Parliament called the militia to arms, and the king, who had gone to York, summoned the gentry of the county to form a guard for the protection of his person. Many noblemen, and more than sixty members of the House of Commons, obeying the king's command, declared that, as loyal subjects, they could no longer attend the parliament in London.

22. War was thus declared, and both parties made active preparations for the civil strife. The royal party was joined by three-fourths of the nobility and the principal gentry with their retainers; the parliamentary party consisted of the citizens of the great towns and the yeomen of the country. The land forces of the latter were commanded by the Earl of Essex, while the fleet was intrusted to the Earl of Warwick. Charles raised his standard at Nottingham, August 1642. The first battle was fought in October, at **Edgehill**, in which the royalists, on the whole, gained some advantages, in consequence of which many who had hitherto been wavering joined them. It would be useless here to give an account of the many battles that were fought, suffice it to say that the royalists, on the whole, were gaining ground, that in London a conspiracy was formed in favour of the king, and that the parliamentary party for a time seemed gradually to lose in power and influence. In one of the engagements, Hampden was mortally wounded, and died soon after. The civil war was raging in all parts of the

country, thousands of men were killed on both sides, and towns and villages were exposed to fearful sufferings.

23. Oliver Cromwell had already given proofs of his skill and wisdom as a military commander, and was busily engaged in endeavouring to remedy the defects of the parliamentary army. The men under his command belonged, for the most part, to the sect of the Independents. The parliamentary army solicited the assistance of the Scotch against their common opponents, and the Scotch promised compliance on condition that their troops should be maintained at the expense of the English, that parliament should recognise and sign the solemn "league and covenant," and that the Church of England should be reformed according to the word of God. Both houses of parliament accepted the terms, and early in 1644, an army of 20,000 Scotchmen crossed the border. At the same time, an assembly of divines met at Westminster to consider the reforms to be made in the English Church, and to promote uniformity in worship, in other words, to substitute Presbyterianism for Episcopacy.

24. Meanwhile, the king summoned those members of parliament who were still loyal to him to meet at Oxford, but this counter-parliament led to no useful results. The English troops still engaged against the Irish rebels, were recalled by Charles, who made certain concessions to the rebels, in order to strengthen the royal army. But this reinforcement was nearly annihilated in its first encounter with the parliamentarians at **Nantwich**. The Scotch army had, in the meantime, advanced as far as York, and joined the parliamentarians under Fairfax. A fierce battle was fought at **Marston Moor**, in 1644, in which the royalists were utterly routed, chiefly by the body of troops commanded by Cromwell, called "Ironsides." Through this battle, in which 4000 men were killed, Charles lost the northern part of his kingdom, and if **Essex** had been more active and circumspect in the west, the king would have been obliged to surrender or take to flight.

25. During the greater part of the year 1644, the trial of Laud had been going on, and in the end the prelate was declared guilty of high treason, and, at the age of seventy, was executed, in January 1645. A vain attempt was again made at Uxbridge to bring about an understanding between the two contending parties. The English parliament perceiving that some of the commanders of its forces were becoming rather lukewarm, passed a self-denying ordinance, that no member of parliament should in future be entrusted with any command, either civil or military. Essex, and others, feeling that they were aimed at, at once resigned, and the chief command was entrusted to Fairfax. Cromwell, who ought to have retired likewise, remained commander of the cavalry, because Fairfax declared that he could not well dispense with his services, for Cromwell had latterly taken a leading part in the reorganization of the army.

26. The royalists, after some unimportant skirmishes, met the new parliamentary army at **Naseby**, in June 1645, and suffered so severe a defeat that, for the present, the civil war seemed to be at an end. The victory was mainly owing to the valour and skill of Cromwell. The king's correspondence fell into the hands of the conquerors, and from this it became evident that the king had never been sincere in making any concessions.

27. Charles now retreated to Wales, and thence went to Oxford, which was still loyal. He had placed his hope upon the Earl of Montrose, who supported his cause in Scotland and had gained several victories; but in September, Montrose was completely defeated near Selkirk. After the battle of Naseby, the most important towns in the west were taken by Fairfax and Cromwell, and the former now proceeded to lay siege to Oxford. The king, afraid of being taken prisoner, made his escape, and after much uncertainty as to what to do, surrendered himself to the Scotch army, which had advanced south as far as Newark (May 1646). Parliament, hearing of this, demanded that he should be delivered up to them, but the Scotch, unwilling to let him slip out of their hands, took

him with them on their march to the north. They tried to induce him to establish Presbyterianism throughout his dominions, but to no purpose. The English parliament also made proposals that led to no result. At last an arrangement was made with the Scotch, who offered to withdraw their troops on condition that parliament should pay them £400,000 for past services. Charles was then given up to the English, January 1647, who assigned to him Holmby House, in Northamptonshire, as his residence.

28. No sooner was this first period of the civil war ended than troubles arose between parliament and the army. The troops, who had for some time not received any pay, were for the most part to be disbanded, and the rest was to be employed against the Irish rebels. This was distasteful to the army, which began to mutiny, and a detachment of horse contrived to gain possession of the king's person, and carried him off, first to Newmarket and then to Hampton Court, where he was allowed a considerable amount of freedom. Most of the members of parliament were Presbyterians, while the army consisted chiefly of Independents; and the latter, in defiance of parliamentary orders, advanced towards London, demanding the impeachment of several members. These members at once withdrew, and Fairfax with his army entered London without opposition, and all the measures which had been voted against the army were at once annulled.

29. Proposals were in the meantime made to Charles by the army to restore him to his throne, on certain terms; but he was inflexible, and haughtily rejected every proposal, for he could not give up the hope that affairs would soon take a different turn, and enable him to dictate terms both to parliament and the army. The levellers, or the more democratic part of the army, now declared their determination to make no more proposals to the king, and even blamed their commanders for what they had done. Cromwell, who belonged to the moderate party, found that he was suspected of trying to make his

peace with the army; and the king, thinking that his life was in danger, secretly escaped from Hampton Court to the Isle of Wight. The army then resolved that the king should be brought to trial, and Cromwell and his friends, after much doubt and hesitation, signified their adhesion to the measure.

30. While the king was at Carisbrooke Castle, in the Isle of Wight, parliament, about the end of 1647, made another attempt at reconciliation; but as the Scotch, with whom the king had opened communications, offered easier terms, he again refused to treat with parliament, which now broke off all further dealings with him (January 1648). Upon this, a reaction seems to have taken place in various quarters in favour of the king. In the west, an army of Welshmen was raised by Colonel Poyer to support the sovereign, and the Scotch army, under the Duke of Hamilton, with the same view, advanced as far as Preston. But Cromwell and Fairfax crushed both these attempts, and Cromwell passed into Scotland to prevent any further rising there.

31. During this second period of the civil war, the Presbyterians in parliament, from fear of the army, and notwithstanding their previous vote, again entered into negotiations with the king, and things seemed to be promising, though Charles still refused to give up episcopacy; when, on the 6th of November, the army put a stop to these proceedings: Colonel Pride, with three regiments, "purified" the house, by preventing upwards of one hundred members, opposed to the army, from entering. The remaining members, called the **Rump Parliament**, ordered the king to be brought to Windsor, and to be tried for high treason against his people.

32. The House of Lords disapproved of the step, but the Commons nominated a commission of one hundred

30. In 1648, the Peace of Westphalia put an end to the Thirty Years' War, during which Germany had been reduced to a state of almost perfect desolation. The peace secured to the Protestants the free exercise of their religion. Switzerland and the Netherlands were recognised as independent republics. France obtained Alsace, and Sweden a part of Pomerania, the island of Rügen, Wismar, Breuen, and Verden,

and fifty members, who were to try the king in Westminster Hall. Charles protested against the proceedings, declaring that, as king, he recognised no superior on earth. The trial lasted from the 20th to the 27th of January 1649, and after the evidence had been heard, the commissioners pronounced the verdict, "that Charles Stuart, as a tyrant, traitor, murderer, and public enemy to the good people of this nation, be put to death by having his head severed from his body."

33. The night after the condemnation, Charles passed with Juxon, bishop of London, in pious meditations, and on the 29th took leave of his children and friends. On the 30th he was taken from St. James' to Whitehall, and after spending there a few hours in religious exercises, he was beheaded on a scaffold. Throughout his reign Charles had shown himself as a tyrant, whose words and promises could not be trusted; but still his execution was not only a crime, but a political blunder, for those who brought him to the scaffold so ill contrived matters, "that the very man whose whole life had been a series of attacks on the liberties of England, now seemed to die a martyr in the cause of those liberties."

Charles had six children, two of whom—Charles and James—succeeded him on the English throne.

3. THE COMMONWEALTH—1649-1660.

34. Immediately after Charles' death, the Rump Parliament declared it high treason to proclaim anyone king, and the House of Lords was abolished and declared useless and dangerous. The executive authority was entrusted for one year to a commission of forty-one persons, of which Bradshaw was president and Milton foreign secretary. Every member had to take an oath approving of the abolition of royalty and the House of Lords.

The republican government was, on the whole, carried on with moderation; but a number of the supporters of the late king were brought to trial, and the Duke of Hamilton and the Earl of Holland were condemned for

high treason and executed; while others were committed to the Tower. Much discontent also showed itself in the army, but was crushed by severe measures.

35. The disturbed state of Ireland required immediate attention; for, on the death of Charles, the Marquis of Ormond proclaimed his son Charles II., king of England. There were still several armies in Ireland acting independently of one another and supporting different parties. The most powerful among them was the Catholic party under Ormond, which had possession of nearly the whole country; only Dublin, Belfast, and Londonderry were still held by the parliamentary army. Cromwell was appointed lord-lieutenant, and with twelve thousand men, and a strong train of artillery, landed at Dublin. He opened the campaign with the siege of Drogheda, which was taken after a few assaults, and the whole garrison was put to the sword. A similar scene took place at Wexford, where 2000 of the enemy were slain, and the terror inspired by these massacres led other towns to throw open their gates. Early in 1650, a second campaign was commenced, during which several towns surrendered without resistance. Clonmel alone defended itself bravely.

36. After this, Cromwell was recalled on account of the threatening attitude of Scotland. He left Ireton, his son-in-law, to complete the subjugation of Ireland; but this was not effected till a later period by the fall of Limerick. Ireton himself died soon after, and the affairs of Ireland were settled by Fleetwood and Henry Cromwell. The danger from Scotland arose in this way. When Charles II. found that he could expect no help from Ireland, he listened to the proposals of the Scotch parliament, which was indignant at the execution of the king. They promised to support him, if he would sanction the solemn league and covenant. But before taking any decisive step, he wished to wait for the result of Montrose's enterprise, who had raised the royal standard in the north. Montrose failed, and the unfortunate nobleman was executed in Edinburgh for high treason.

Charles sacrificed his friend by perfidiously declaring that Montrose had ventured upon the enterprise against his special orders. Charles now signed the covenant, promising not to permit Catholics to worship in his dominions, and declared the peace with Ireland null and void. Upon this, the Scotch raised an army to support him; but the English government, determined not to be behind-hand, sent Cromwell, with an army of 16,000 men, into Scotland.

37. On his arrival near Edinburgh, he found the Scotch, under the command of David Leslie, entrenched in a very strong position. As the country between the Tweed and Forth had been completely devastated, and Cromwell's army began to suffer from want and disease, he retreated towards Dunbar. The Scotch followed him, and rendered the position of the English very perilous. But Cromwell having sagaciously discovered that they had made a wrong move, exclaimed: "The Lord has delivered them into our hands," and a terrible contest ensued, in which the Scotch lost 3000 dead, and 10,000 prisoners. All military stores, and the whole country south of the Forth fell into Cromwell's hands.

38. Charles escaped to Perth, and having formed connections with other royalists in the north, caused himself to be crowned king at Scone, 1651. Cromwell, after a short illness, proceeded to Perth, of which he took possession, but learning that Charles had collected a force of about 11,000 men, and was on the march to invade England, he hastened in pursuit of the enemy and brought him to a stand near Worcester. There the royalists were utterly defeated; Charles fled, and after many wanderings, reached Fécamp, in Normandy.

This glorious and decisive victory (September 1651) raised Cromwell's military reputation to the highest pitch, and he wisely proclaimed an amnesty, which gained him friends even among the royalists. Monk completed the subjugation of Scotland, which was then incorporated with England.

39. William, the stadtholder of the Dutch Republic,

who had married Mary, daughter of Charles I., disliked the proceedings of the English parliament, and there was good reason for fearing a dangerous collision between the two republics; for many of the English royalists had found shelter and protection in Holland, and the attempt to form an alliance with the Dutch met with no favour in this country. Communication with the Dutch was broken off, and a **Navigation Act** was passed, which greatly injured their commerce. War was thus inevitable, and even before it was formally declared, a battle was fought in the Downs between the Dutch fleet under **Van Tromp** and the English under **Blake**. Several engagements afterwards took place, but without any decisive results, until at last Van Tromp attacked Blake near the Goodwin Sands and defeated him. The victory elated the Dutch so much, that they threatened to sweep the English from their own seas. Three more battles, however, were fought, in each of which the Dutch were worsted, and lost many ships and men. This first war with the Dutch was concluded by a treaty at **Westminster**, 1654, in which the Dutch promised to cease protecting English royalists, to honour the English flag, and to indemnify some English merchants for the losses they had sustained during the war.

40. We have already seen that, after the battle of Worcester, Cromwell was looked upon as the first man in the kingdom, and he well deserved it. But parliament began to be jealous of his power, and tried to weaken it by reducing the army. He, however, was more than a match for them. He ordered a company of musketeers to accompany him to the House: he left them in the lobby, and after some violent altercation with his opponents, called in his soldiers, cleared the house, and put the keys in his pocket (April 1653). This act of violence did not

39. This Navigation Act was not repealed till 1849.

William, the first stadtholder of the Netherlands, was murdered at Delft in 1584. He was succeeded by his son Maurice. The William mentioned in this section is William II., grandson of the founder of the Dutch Republic. He was married to Mary, a daughter of Charles I. of England, by which marriage posthumous son, William III. of Orange, was born in 1650.

create much excitement among the people, who had long been dissatisfied with the proceedings of parliament.


41. Cromwell, and the council of state which was formed, at once resolved to call a new parliament; but instead of its being elected in the usual way, Cromwell drew up a list of about one hundred and forty persons, who were deemed "Faithful, fearing God, and hating covetousness." They were mostly illiterate and fanatical persons, belonging to the sect of Independents; one of its members, **Barebones**, a leather merchant, was a leading man among them, whence the parliament was nicknamed the Barebones Parliament. The proceedings of this little assembly were characterised by great vigour in remedying what they considered defects in the law and government, whereby they irritated influential portions of the community. At last they surrendered their powers into the hands of Cromwell, who, in December 1653, was made **Lord Protector** of the Commonwealth, and took an oath that he would observe a series of articles called the **Instrument of Government**. The chief points of this document were that the legislative power should be vested in the protector and the parliament, that he should be assisted by a council, with which he should have the power of peace and war, that parliament should be summoned every third year, sit at least five months, and consist of four hundred and sixty members; that there should be an army of 30,000 men, and that all religions should be protected, except the Catholics and Prelatists.

42. The new form of government was readily recognised by foreign powers, which even courted the protector's friendship; and with Holland an offensive and defensive alliance was concluded. The new parliament met in September 1654, but as it spent most of its time in attempts to curtail the power of the protector, to alter the "Instrument," and manifested great intolerance in religious matters, Cromwell dissolved it after a session of scarcely five months. Several conspiracies were also formed against him, both by royalists and republicans, but they were easily suppressed by his vigilance. As

parliament had voted no supplies, Cromwell was obliged to levy taxes upon his own authority; but as they were very moderate, they were paid with little opposition.

43. As the protector did not wish to govern without a parliament, a new one was summoned to meet in September 1656; from this, however, about one hundred members were excluded, merely because they did not seem to meet the requirements of Cromwell. Its proceedings at first satisfied him, and it even went so far in its desire to please him, as to offer him the title of king. He himself would not have objected to this, but the leaders of the army were vehemently opposed to it, and he therefore reluctantly declined the honour. The Commons then passed an act called **The Humble Petition and Advice**, which empowered the protector to name his successor and to create a house of peers, which was, however, to be called simply "the other house." After this, in June 1657, Cromwell was solemnly inaugurated in Westminster Hall as Lord Protector.

44. He was now the sovereign of England in all but in name. But the task before him was one of extreme difficulty. Conspiracies against his life continued to be formed, and Charles even offered rewards to any one who would assassinate him. Besides this, the country was divided by parties, among which the stern republicans were thoroughly opposed to his government. The second parliament met in January 1658, in two houses; the upper house, selected by the protector, consisted for the most part of men who had played a conspicuous part during the preceding years, and created very general dissatisfaction; for the republicans disapproved of a privileged class, and the people laughed at the house of lords, in which common tradesmen sat, while the real nobility, even when invited, disdained to appear. When Cromwell found that the Commons, instead of devoting themselves to useful business, spent their time in discussing the rights of the upper house and its powers, he dissolved them with the words, "Let God judge between you and me."



45. Cromwell was thus not favoured by fortune in his administration of the Commonwealth, but he was more successful in his foreign relations. The French king sought his alliance against Spain, and a united French and English army fought the famous battle of the Dunes against the Spaniards, who attempted in vain to relieve Dunkirk, which was besieged and taken, and then given to the English. They continued their operations against the Spaniards, and a number of towns in the Spanish Netherlands fell into their hands. In the south, the Duke of Savoy was compelled to stop the persecution of the Protestant Waldenses, and the pirates in the Mediterranean were forced to respect the English flag. The unceasing exertions and excitements had severely tried the health of the protector. Latterly, he suffered from an attack of gout, which was followed by a fever, terminating his life on the 3rd of September 1658. His body was buried in Westminster Abbey, and remained undisturbed until 1661, when the reactionary party disinterred it and hanged it on Tyburn gallows.

46. Cromwell himself, notwithstanding his sternness where it was necessary, would have governed his country mildly, liberally, and constitutionally had circumstances permitted him; but his parliament, though carefully packed, proved unmanageable, as he could not act otherwise than he did.

Oliver Cromwell was succeeded by his son **Richard** as quietly as if he had been the heir of an hereditary crown; but he was in no way equal to his father, and had never shown any ambition to occupy the high place for which he was destined. His own relations despised him, because he was not a soldier, and the army tried to take all the powers out of his hands. In order to counteract these attempts, he summoned a parliament elected according to the old system. It met in January

45. The Waldenses, a protestant sect, is said to have existed as early as the year 1100, and to have received its name from Peter Waldus, a wealthy citizen of Lyons. They spread in France and Switzerland and were terribly persecuted and oppressed.

1659. Disputes arose between the Commons and the army, and Richard Cromwell, yielding to the desires of the latter, dissolved parliament, and by this act virtually surrendered his powers. A few weeks later he formally resigned, and spent the remainder of his life partly abroad and partly at Cheshunt, where he died in 1712.

47. The officers of the army now insisted upon the survivors of the Rump Parliament being summoned, and a sufficient number met to form a House; but this parliament also quarrelled with the army, and the royalists, availing themselves of these troubles, organised a conspiracy to effect the restoration of Charles II. For a time their plans seemed to succeed, but in August 1659, they were utterly defeated by the parliamentary general, Lambert, at **Nantwich**.

48. After the suppression of this conspiracy, parliament renewed its quarrels with the army, and Lambert and several others were declared deposed; but Lambert, who placed full reliance in his troops, marched to Westminster and dispersed the members, and thus the government fell into the hands of the army. General **Monk**, who had the chief command in Scotland, also resolved to march to London, but no one knew whether he intended to support the Commonwealth or to restore the king. Lambert was sent against him, but instead of fighting, he commenced negotiations, and at the desire of the Londoners, who refused to pay taxes unless sanctioned by parliament, the Rump Parliament was once more summoned in December 1659. After a very short session, it dissolved itself and ordered a regular parliament to be elected, which was to meet in April 1660. Monk now had all the power in his hands, and committed Lambert to the Tower. Still no one knew what Monk's design was, and every one dreaded a fresh civil war. Lambert effected his escape, and assembled a body of adherents, but was defeated and taken prisoner.

49. Before the new parliament met, Monk threw aside the mask: he opened negotiations with Charles, and concerted measures for his return. When the plan was

sufficiently matured, Charles sent a letter to both Houses of Parliament, called the **Declaration from Breda**, where he was staying. In it he promised to grant a general pardon to all who should submit within forty days, to allow freedom of conscience in matters of religion, to leave the settlement of disputed estates to parliament, to pay the soldiers of Monk their arrears, and to admit them into his service. Both Houses received this message with enthusiastic joy: the restoration of the monarchy was voted, and Charles was at once invited to ascend the throne of his ancestors. He landed at Dover on the 25th of May, and on his progress to London, delighted every one by his kind manners and affability.

4. CHARLES II.—1660-1685.

50. The great body of the English people were intoxicated with joy at the restoration of the king, and at the prospect of a regular and tolerant government. But their hopes were doomed to sad disappointment. During the period of the Commonwealth, Charles had resided in various parts of the continent, and his court had everywhere presented scenes of licentiousness and debauchery. The parliament which had voted the restoration, generally called **The Convention Parliament**, continued its sittings until the end of 1660, and within that short period had to settle most important affairs; for during the disturbances of the last years everything had got out of order. One of the most important matters was the settlement of the public revenue. Parliament granted the king the duties of tonnage and poundage for life, and instead of the old feudal revenues, which were now abolished, a permanent excise duty on beer and some other liquors. The army was paid its arrears, and all the soldiers except two regiments were discharged. Twenty-nine of the regicides were brought to trial, and ten of them were executed at once; three others, who were cap-

49. About 1655 Sweden reached the height of her power under Charles X., who carried on successful wars against Poland and Denmark, and died in 1660. In 1659 the so-called Pyrenean peace was concluded between France and Spain.

tured abroad, suffered death a little later. The bodies of Cromwell, Ireton, and Bradshaw, were disinterred and hanged on the gallows at Tyburn.

51. In accordance with the letter from Breda, the estates which had changed hands during the Commonwealth were to be restored wherever possible, and those who had purchased them were to be indemnified. But by the management of Clarendon, the chief minister, the royal and ecclesiastical estates were taken from their present proprietors without any compensation. One of the first promises made by Charles was thus violated, as the settlement of the question ought to have been left to parliament. The promised religious freedom was perfidiously postponed, and parliament was dissolved in December without anything being settled.

52. The next parliament met in May 1661, and consisted almost entirely of such enthusiastic royalists that for years they overlooked the king's profligacy and perfidiousness. Its first business was to settle the church question, with a view to put the Established Church on a firm footing, and crush those Protestants who were opposed to it. Conferences of English and Presbyterian divines were held, to make such alterations in the Prayer Book as to render it acceptable to the Presbyterians, but no satisfactory result was arrived at, and it was only too evident that the object of the government was to extinguish all opposition. Parliament voted that every member should take the sacrament according to the rites of the English Church, and shortly after the **Corporation Act** was passed, ordaining that no man could be a member of a corporation, or hold any civil office in it, without renouncing the solemn league and covenant and the doctrine that arms might be taken up against the king.

53. In the next session, 1662, the **Act of Uniformity** was passed, which ordered that every clergyman henceforth should use the amended Book of Common Prayer, and publicly declare his assent to everything contained in it; disobedience was punished by expulsion from the living. The act further required that all clergymen

should receive episcopal ordination and abjure the league and covenant. About two thousand clergymen preferred losing their benefices to submitting to such tyrannical violence to their consciences.

54. In May of the same year Charles married Catharine of Braganza, with whom he received as a dowry the sum of £350,000, the fortress of Tangier, and the island of Bombay. Catharine, an excellent and virtuous woman, had to endure the grossest indignities from her dissolute husband. However, before the end of the year the king's extravagance compelled him to look about for other resources, and he sold Dunkirk to Louis XIV. for £40,000. This mean act excited great indignation among the people, but they cast the blame chiefly upon Clarendon.

55. In Scotland the parliament, having at first believed in the promises of Charles about religious liberty, was soon undeceived, for Episcopacy was established everywhere, and Presbyterianism seemed to be extinguished. The Catholics of Ireland likewise had good reason to be dissatisfied, few of them having their estates restored to them, while large grants were made to the king's friends and supporters, such as the Dukes of York and Ormond.

56. In the north of England some of the nonconforming ministers had opened private places of worship, which was made the pretext for passing the **Conventicle Act**, 1664, ordaining that all meetings of more than five persons, besides the members of the household, for religious worship, not in accordance with the Book of Common Prayer, should be punished by fines and imprisonment, and, if persevered in, by transportation. In consequence of this tyrannical statute great numbers of Nonconformists were thrown into prison. During the great plague, which soon after visited London, some of the Nonconformist preachers occupied the vacant pulpits, and did all they could to comfort the sick and dying. By this they brought upon themselves the charge of having disseminated seditious opinions, and another disgraceful statute, the **Five Mile Act**, was passed, which forbade any dissenting minister coming within five miles

of any parliamentary borough. They were further forbidden to act as tutors or schoolmasters, under a penalty of £40 and imprisonment.

57. In 1664 a second war broke out with Holland, chiefly in consequence of commercial jealousy between the two countries. After several encounters of the hostile fleets off the coasts of Africa, America, and the West Indies, in which the Dutch lost several of their possessions, a serious engagement took place near **Lowestoft**, where the English fleet was commanded by the Duke of York, brother of Charles II. The Dutch were defeated, and lost eighteen ships, four admirals, including Opdam, their commander-in-chief, and seven thousand men, while the English loss did not exceed eight hundred. This victory was gained at the time when the ravages of the plague had reached their height in London. That fearful scourge lasted several months, during which more than one hundred thousand persons in London became its victims. All who had the means left the city, and only the poorer classes remained.

58. In the beginning of 1666 the Dutch allied themselves with Louis XIV., who had declared war against England. Prince Rupert and Monk, now Duke of Albemarle, commanded the English fleet, and a great battle was fought near the **Goodwin Sands**, which lasted for four days, and Monk's division would have been utterly destroyed had not Rupert come to the rescue. The Dutch gained the victory, though the losses on both sides were very nearly equal. In the second battle, in the same neighbourhood, the English were more successful, and afterwards chased the Dutch to their own coasts, where they destroyed a large number of ships, and committed many outrages. The Dutch admiral, De Witt, vowed not to rest until he had avenged the insults of the English.

59. Soon after these maritime engagements, on the 2nd of September 1666 another terrible calamity befel the city of London—a fire broke out in a baker's house in **Pudding Lane**. The houses at the time were mostly

built of wood, and the streets were very narrow, and as a strong east wind was blowing the fire spread rapidly, and continued for three days, without any possibility of stopping it. When at length the wind subsided, and many gaps had been made to isolate the burning masses, the progress of the fire was checked, but not until London, from the Tower to the Temple, was in ruins. The fire had destroyed St. Paul's cathedral, eighty-eight churches, the Royal Exchange, and other public buildings, and thirteen thousand two hundred private houses. The total loss was computed at seven and a half millions. The fanatical hatred between Protestants and Catholics created the belief that the Catholics had been the originators of the fire, a belief totally devoid of foundation, though it was inscribed as a fact on the "Monument," from which it was not erased till 1830.

60. De Witt kept his vow. In the beginning of 1667 Charles entered into a secret negotiation with Louis XIV., and in the hope of a speedy peace the navy was utterly neglected. The Dutch, perceiving this state of things, resolved to have their revenge. De Ruyter appeared at the mouth of the Thames with seventy ships. The defences hastily constructed by Albemarle and York were insufficient. One portion of the Dutch fleet appeared off Gravesend and another sailed up the Medway, razing Sheerness to the ground, and doing great mischief all along the coast. Having thus satisfied their desire for revenge, the Dutch returned home in triumph. This war was at last ended by the treaty of Breda, July 10, 1667, when it was agreed that each nation should retain what they possessed.

61. Ever since the sale of Dunkirk, Clarendon had become very unpopular. In addition to this, he had offended the Presbyterians by supporting the Episcopal party, and the king by his open disapproval of the profligacies of the court. All these things combined to bring about his downfall. A strong opposition was formed against him, and the king advised him to resign. As *Clarendon declined to do this, Charles ungratefully dis-*

missed his ablest minister, and abandoned him to his enemies. Clarendon was impeached for high treason, but before the trial came on, the king ordered him to leave the country, and an Act was then passed banishing him for life. He died at Rouen, 1674.

62. After the fall of Clarendon a new ministry was formed, known by the name of the **Cabal**, a word made up of the initials of the names of the five men who composed it, Clifford, Arlington, Buckingham, Ashley, and Lauderdale. By their miserable subserviency to the king, and their attempts to make him an absolute ruler, these men have left a most unenviable reputation in English history. The most unprincipled among them were Buckingham and Ashley, afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury; the latter of them displayed such wonderful cunning and prudence that he was regarded by the people as endowed with almost miraculous prescience. Their first measure, however, seemed to promise well, for, in 1668, they concluded the triple alliance between England, Holland, and Sweden, for the purpose of checking the attempts of Louis XIV. upon Flanders. Louis at last gave way, but still contrived, by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, to obtain Lille, Tournay, and other places of the Spanish Netherlands.

63. Unfortunately, the objects of the triple alliance were soon lost sight of. The king's extravagance led to the appointment of a commission of public accounts, which greatly offended him. But as means had to be devised to provide him with money, Buckingham began negotiations with the French king to obtain pecuniary assistance for Charles. This led to the conclusion of a **secret treaty at Dover** (May 1670), in which it was stipulated that Charles should approve of the Catholic doctrines and rites, and make a public confession of them; that he should unite with France to destroy the Dutch republic, and that Louis should pay him an annual pension of £120,000, and assist him with an army in case of an insurrection among his subjects. It was further agreed that of the conquests to be made in

Holland, Charles should receive Walcheren, Sluys, and Cadsand. War was therefore declared against Holland in March 1672. In order to obtain the money necessary for this war, Charles adopted the unprecedented and dishonest step of suspending for twelve months the payment of money advanced to the government, which at once put into his hands the sum of £1,300,000, but ruined many commercial houses and others who had invested their savings in public securities. The first encounter between the hostile fleets took place in Southwold Bay, on the coast of Norfolk. Both sides fought most bravely, and the English suffered severely, though they claimed the victory. Meanwhile, Louis had invaded Holland with an army of one hundred thousand men, and advanced to the neighbourhood of Amsterdam. But the Dutch, with their wonted determination, on the advice of William III. of Orange, who had been elected stadtholder, 1672, cut the dykes, and flooded the country. Louis was thus obliged to return, leaving some troops in the towns which he had taken. The war was henceforth carried on very languidly, both by land and by sea, until it was brought to a close by the **treaty of Westminster** in 1674, when the Dutch promised to honour the British flag, and to pay nearly £300,000 as an indemnity for the expenses of the war. Louis continued the war on land for four years longer.

64. In the beginning of 1673, parliament, which had not met for nearly two years, again assembled. The year before, the king had issued a **Declaration of Indulgence**, whereby the penal laws against Nonconformists were suspended; parliament now obliged him to revoke it, and both Catholics and dissenting Protestants had again to bow under the old laws, which remained in force until, in 1828, Protestant Nonconformists obtained the right to hold public offices. In consequence of this revocation of the indulgence two members of the cabal, the Duke of York and Lord Clifford, who were Catholics, *resigned* their offices. Sir Thomas Osborne, afterwards *Earl of Danby*, now became prime minister.

65. There was at that time, and there had been for many years, a great dread of the Catholics, especially as Charles, not having any legitimate issue, would be succeeded by his brother James. Danby, to allay such fears, brought about a marriage between William III., prince of Orange, and Mary, daughter of James II. At this Louis XIV. was so angry that he withdrew his pension from Charles. The popular mind, however, was so much inclined to listen to stories about secret plots of Catholics, that any rumour, however absurd, was readily believed. A Protestant clergyman, **Titus Oates**, a man of infamous character, came forward with the fictitious story that a number of Catholics in England, France, and Spain had conspired to kill Charles and re-establish the old religion. By this and other stories he lashed the nation into a state of perfect frenzy. The love of notoriety and gain induced other men to follow his example. Oates succeeded so well with his lies that in the end he even ventured to impeach the queen. In this attempt, however, he was thwarted by the king himself. During this period of excitement many innocent persons were arrested and sent to the scaffold because they were supposed to be connected with those plots. One of the results of these agitations was the **Papists' Disabling Act**, by which no Catholic was allowed to sit in either house.

66. Parliament, which had now been in existence for nearly seventeen years, and at the commencement had shown a most servile submission to the king's will and pleasure, at last became thoroughly opposed to the continued course of misgovernment. When the Commons proceeded to impeach Danby, Charles dissolved them in the beginning of 1679. The new parliament, which met soon after, turned out to be equally hostile to the court. The proceedings against Danby were continued, and, in spite of the king's wish to pardon him, he was sent to the Tower.

67. Danby's place in the king's confidence was filled by Sir William Temple, from whose management much

good was expected. One important measure was passed by parliament, the **Habeas Corpus Act**, "for the better securing the liberty of the subject, and for prevention of imprisonment beyond the seas." As several other bills distasteful to the king were spoken of, parliament was prorogued. The object of one of these bills was to exclude his brother, the Duke of York, from the succession. Fearing that stormy times would come, the king wished to provide himself with a strong army, and in order to have a plausible pretext he drove the Scotch into a rebellion by the severe laws against conventicles. This led to acts of rétaliation on the part of the Scotch. The hostility towards the Catholics likewise continued, and was fanned especially by Shaftesbury. Numerous petitions were sent up to the king to summon a parliament to get a bill passed excluding York from the succession. This created a reaction in the public feeling in favour of the court, and addresses were sent to the king expressing satisfaction with the government and abhorrence of the petitioners. Hence the two parties were called "petitioners" and "abhorrrers," names which were soon after changed into **whigs** and **tories**. Parliament at length assembled in October 1680, but as the Commons still insisted on York's exclusion, it was again dissolved. That the English people had good reason to fear York, was clear from the brutalities with which he treated the Scotch dissenting Protestants. Charles, perceiving that the tide was turning in his favour, abolished the charters granted to London and other towns, and substituted new ones calculated to ensure the ascendancy of the court party.

68. The whigs were, on the whole, opposed to violence; but Shaftesbury, and others of extreme views, including the Duke of Monmouth, Charles' illegitimate son by Lucy Walters, thought it possible by a revolutionary

68. During the reign of Charles II., Louis XIV. of France had reached the height of his power as an absolute and despotic ruler. By the treaty of Nimègue he had obtained possession of Franche Comté; in 1681 he treacherously took Strasburg, and instituted the chambers of re-union, which were to re-unite *with France whatever she had possessed at any previous period.*

movement to secure the exclusion of the prince and establish constitutional government. Shaftesbury, however, finding the moderate whigs unwilling to follow his lead, escaped to Holland, where he died in 1683. Other men then took up the scheme, and a plot was formed to assassinate the king and York at a place called the **Rye House**. The plan was revealed, and lords Russell, Essex, Algernon Sydney, and Hampden (a grandson of John Hampden), were arrested; Monmouth, Grey, and others escaped. Russel was declared guilty of high treason, and executed; Sydney also was executed, though there was no evidence of his guilt; and Essex was found dead in the Tower. Never was justice so much abused as during these last years of Charles' reign, during which he governed the country as an absolute despot, without the advice of parliament. York recovered his ascendancy at the court, and Danby and other political prisoners were released from the Tower. But the vicious career of the king was coming to an end. He was seized with a fit of apoplexy, which terminated fatally. Before his death a Catholic priest was secretly admitted into his chamber by the help of his brother. Charles declared himself a Catholic, confessed his sins, and had extreme unction administered to him. He died February 6, 1685, leaving no legitimate issue, but many children by mistresses, such as the Dukes of Monmouth, Grafton, St. Albans, and Richmond.

4. JAMES II.—1685-1688.

69. James II., son of Charles I., was about fifty-two years old when he ascended the throne. In his earlier years he had served in the French and Spanish armies, and at the restoration was made lord high admiral. Immediately after his accession he married Marie d'Este, his first wife, Anne Hyde, a daughter of Clarendon, hav-

69. In the year of the accession of James II., Louis XIV. revoked the Edict of Nantes, which had been issued by Henry IV. Its revocation drove large numbers of Protestants from France, who settled in England, Holland, and Germany.

ing died in 1671. During his short reign he displayed all the bad qualities of his race, and an utter want of sympathy with the people and their rights; he even lacked the good humour and skill which had always secured to Charles II. a certain degree of popularity.

70. Upon his accession he promised the assembled parliament that his object would be to preserve the government, both in church and state, as by law established. In consequence of this declaration he received a more hearty welcome from the people than might have been anticipated, as his character was pretty well known. But suspicions were soon raised by his openly attending mass in state, and still more by his levying taxes without parliament, and drawing to his court numbers of Catholics. Persons imprisoned for having refused compliance with the rules of the English Church were liberated, but Protestant dissenters were not released, so that his indulgence benefited only those of his own persuasion.

71. When, in May 1685, parliament met, it showed itself devoted to the court, granted the king an ample revenue, and expressed its strong attachment to the Established Church. During the late reign numerous Protestant dissenters had taken refuge in Holland, and, indignant at seeing the English throne occupied by a Catholic, they formed a plan of overthrowing his government. The Earl of Argyle headed a large number of Presbyterians, and Monmouth, who was also living in exile, was to join the undertaking and create a rebellion in England, while Argyle's scene of operation was to be in Scotland. Two expeditions were accordingly organised, and Argyle arrived in Scotland in May. Few persons of quality joined him, and the undertaking failed from want of agreement among the leaders, and of the hearty support of the people. When Argyle discovered that his position was hopeless, he fled, and fell into the hands of his enemies, who had him executed at Edinburgh on the last day of June.

72. About six days before the capture of Argyle, Mon-

mouth landed at Lyme Regis, in Dorsetshire, where he was received with enthusiasm, for he declared that he had come to defend the Protestant religion and the rights of the English people. His followers increased as he advanced towards Taunton, whence he proceeded to Bridgewater. The royal troops which were sent out against him, under the command of Earl Feversham, were encamped on the plain of Sedgemoor. Monmouth attacked them in the night, and his men, though ill armed, fought with the greatest bravery. His cavalry was commanded by Lord Grey, who seems to have acted with much cowardice; and when Monmouth learned that the cavalry was routed, he lost hope and withdrew from the fight. In company with Lord Grey he fled, hoping to reach the coast, but both were overtaken. Monmouth having been attainted immediately after landing in England, was carried to London, and beheaded on Tower Hill on the 15th of July.

73. The speedy crushing of these insurrections might have greatly strengthened James; but this result was frustrated by the atrocious cruelties perpetrated by Feversham and one Colonel Kirke, upon all those who had in any way been connected with the rebellion of Monmouth. Their cruelties were so revolting, and the conduct of the chief justice, Jeffreys, was so opposed to all law and decency, that the people almost justified the rebellion. Hundreds of persons were put to death in the counties through which Monmouth had passed, and nearly one thousand were sent into the colonies as slaves. In order to strike terror into the people, the heads and limbs of those executed were stuck on poles in the public places and streets, and even on church doors. That the king himself approved of these proceedings is evident, from the fact that Jeffreys was promoted to the office of lord chancellor.

74. James, elated by the success of his arms, thought it no longer necessary to conceal his real designs; he resolved to get rid of those parts of the constitution which were obstacles in his way towards absolute power.

ing died in 1671. During his short reign imprisoning all the bad qualities of his race, and of the army sympathy with the people and the army could depend lacked the good humour and skill. The army was felt as a secured to Charles II. a certain number of objects. These things,

70. Upon his accession he proposed; and when Halifax, the parliament that his object would be to prevent him from ment, both in church and state, a course, he was dismissed. In consequence of this he was assembled in November, and likewise hearty welcome from the king's designs, it was anticipated, as his opposition and afterwards dissolved.

But suspicions of the same year, 1685, Louis XIV. mass in state of the same year, 1685, Louis XIV. out parliament by which Henry IV. Catholicism and religious freedom to the French Protestants.

pliance of this about one hundred thousand French Protestants emigrated to Germany, Holland, and liber

so The arrival of these men strongly roused the English people, who dreaded similar things from their own king. But James, instead of allaying these fears by adopting moderate counsels, continued to give his entire confidence to Catholic advisers; he forbade clergymen to preach against Catholicism, proclaimed liberty of conscience to all Catholics, both in England and Scotland, established an ecclesiastical commission, similar to the High Commission Court, which had been abolished many years before, and assembled an army on Hounslow Heath, most of the officers of which were Catholics. In short, it was quite evident that James was bent upon re-establishing the old religion.

76. The king even ventured to thrust Catholics into the two universities. In 1686 he appointed a Catholic dean of Christ Church, and in the following year he ordered a Benedictine monk to be admitted to the degree of master of arts; and as the vice-chancellor refused to violate the law, he was deprived by the ecclesiastical court of his offices and emoluments. At Oxford, which the king thought more pliable, he tried to introduce a Catholic of notoriously bad character as president of *Magdalen* College. The fellows refused to admit him,

whereupon they were summoned before the ecclesiastical court, expelled from the university, and declared incapable of holding any church office.

77. In April 1688, another declaration was issued pronouncing liberty of conscience, and the clergy were invited to read it publicly in their churches. But the principal ministers in London determined not to do the order, and six of the bishops (Ken, White, Turner, Lake, and Trelawny), with Archbishop Burnet at their head, signed a petition praying the king to excuse the clergy. James resented this as an unjustifiable interference with the dispensing power to which he laid claim, and declared the petitioners rebels. On the day appointed for the reading of the declaration it was promulgated in only four of the London churches. In the meantime the petition of the bishops had become widely known, and James' anger was roused to such a degree that he ordered the seven bishops to be imprisoned in the tower for having published a seditious libel. Soon after they were brought before the Court of Queen's Bench. The excitement in London was intense, the court and all avenues to it were crowded with people anxiously waiting for the issue. After long deliberations the bishops were acquitted, and the verdict was received with shouts of applause. A fortnight before this trial a son was born to the king and called James, but the people did not believe that the child was really his, and that the affair was only a trick of the Catholics, to prevent a Protestant succeeding to the crown.

78. The Prince of Orange, who was married to Mary, daughter of James II., had for some time been watching the affairs of England with much interest. The whig party, knowing that both the prince and princess were opposed to Catholicism, as well as to James' system of government, had become more excited by the treatment of the bishops and the birth of a son, for it was clear that he would be educated in the Catholic religion. The leading whigs accordingly resolved to promote a change in the government. They sent a formal invitation to

the Prince of Orange to come to England at the head of a strong force. Those who signed this invitation were the Earls of Danby, Devonshire, Shrewsbury, Lord Lumley, the Bishop of London, Admiral Russell, and Henry Sydney. Great preparations were made in Holland with energy and secrecy, and James, who received warnings and offers of assistance from Louis XIV., slighted the suggestion, and William completed his arrangements without hindrance. When all was ready he sent a proclamation to England, in which he enumerated all the misdeeds of the government, and pledged himself to secure legal toleration to the different religious sects, and to have all disputed questions settled by parliament. When James discovered his real danger, he tried to conciliate the people by revoking his tyrannical measures and promising all manner of concessions. But the people could not be deceived by such a sudden change, and on the 5th of November 1688, William landed at Torbay with an army of fifteen thousand men, and was joined soon after by the noblemen who had invited him. James gathered his forces at Salisbury, but his officers deserted one after another to William, so that he felt obliged to hasten back to London, and knew not what to do. Finding his situation hopeless, he first sent his queen and son to the Continent, and on December 11th he left Whitehall in disguise, intending to go to France; but he was seized and brought back to London. Meanwhile, William was advancing, and James was allowed to withdraw to Rochester, whence he fled to Ambletuse. He made several attempts to recover his throne, but in vain, and afterwards resided at St. Germain, enjoying the hospitality of Louis, until his death, September 6, 1701. In London perfect order prevailed until the arrival of William.

79. There now followed a short period called the Interregnum, from December 11, 1688, to the 13th of

79. In the year 1688, Louis XIV. began his third war of conquest against Germany; the Palatinate was ravaged, and the towns of Heidelberg, Speier, and Worms, suffered terribly from the invaders.

February 1689, the day on which the crown was offered and accepted by William and Mary. They entered London, December 18th, and the next day the peers and members of the parliament of Charles II., who at the time happened to be in London, met, with others, to deliberate as to what should be done. They called upon William to undertake the administration, and to summon a convention, to meet on January 22nd, for the purpose of regulating the affairs of the kingdom. After a few days the Commons resolved that James, having endeavoured to subvert the constitution, and having withdrawn himself out of his kingdom, had abdicated the government, and that thereby the throne had become vacant; and, secondly, that it was inconsistent with the safety and welfare of the Protestant kingdom to be governed by a Catholic prince. The Lords agreed to the second resolution, but the first became the subject of a lengthened discussion. The result, however, was that the prince and princess were declared King and Queen of England, and that the executive was entrusted to the prince alone. The succession was then regulated by the Act of **Settlement**. And to prevent any further disputes another Act was passed, called the **Declaration of Rights**, which set forth the ancient rights of the people, and was read out to William on February 13th. He promised to preserve the Protestant religion, the laws of the land, and the liberties and property of the people.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was James I.? What two kingdoms were united upon his accession? Give an account of the "Main" and the "Bye" plots. What was the result?

2. What was the "Millenary Petition"? What was the result of the conference held at Hampton Court?

3. Who was Guy Fawkes? Give an account of the Gunpowder Plot. What was the consequence of this plot?

4. What roused angry and jealous feelings in England? What views did

King James maintain? To what expedients did James resort in order to raise money? Upon what did parliament insist?

5. What deaths took place in 1612? From what marriage did the Hanoverian line of our rulers spring? Who was Robert Carr? To what rank did he rise? Who became a rival of the Duke of Somerset? Give an account of the events which proved to be the ruin of Somerset.

6. Who became the king's greatest

favourite? Who undertook an expedition to Guiana, and what was the result? What was the fate of Raleigh? What efforts did parliament make in 1621? What lord was impeached, and what sentence was passed on him?

7. What negotiations were going on to bring about a marriage between James' son Charles and the Infanta of Spain? Who was anxious to bring about this marriage, and what was the result?

8. For what is the reign of James I. remarkable? What was the origin of Londonderry and Coleraine? When was Newfoundland colonised? Who were the Pilgrim Fathers? What charter was renewed to the East India Company in 1609?

9. In what year did James I. die? Give a general outline of the character of James. Whom had James married? Name the children of James.

10. Whom did Charles I. marry? What two people exercised a bad influence over the king?

11. Into what war was Charles persuaded to engage? What money did he demand from parliament? Until when did parliament refuse to grant money for the war? What steps did the king take? When was parliament summoned again, and what was the result?

12. What war was Charles compelled to declare? What caused universal indignation in England? What was the Petition of Right?

13. What was the fate of Buckingham? Why was the government censured by parliament in 1629? What did parliament declare? What words did Charles use when he threatened parliament?

14. What peace was concluded, and in what year? Upon what did Charles resolve after having dismissed his third parliament? What was the Star Chamber and the Court of High Commission? Who were the king's chief advisers? Give an account of the cruelty of Laud.

15. What was the ship money? Who refused to pay the tax, and what was the result?

16. In what year did Charles and Laud visit Scotland, and for what purpose? Give an account of what took place the first Sunday that the book of canons and the liturgy were used in Edinburgh. What was the National Covenant? What took place at a meeting

of the General Assembly held in Glasgow?

17. What did Laud and Wentworth advise Charles? What demands did Charles make from parliament, and what was the result? What steps did the Scotch take, and what towns surrendered to them? Where did representatives of both countries meet, and what decision was arrived at?

18. In what year was the London Parliament summoned, and in what year was it dissolved? What was the fate of Wentworth, now Earl of Strafford? What was done with Laud? What measures were passed by parliament in 1641? How did Charles conduct himself towards the Scotch? On whom did he confer honours?

19. How had Strafford governed Ireland? What was felt most bitterly by the Irish? In what year did the Irish rebellion break out, and by whom was it headed? Who is suspected of having secretly fostered the rebellion? What words did Charles use in writing to his secretary?

20. How was Charles welcomed in London on his return from Scotland? What did parliament fear? What was the "Remonstrance of the State of the Kingdom?" Who were the Cavaliers, and who the Roundheads? Mention some of those who belonged to the latter party. What protest did several of the bishops sign? What was the result?

21. What desperate step did Charles take in 1642? How did the House act? What step did the king take the following day, and what was the result? Where was the queen sent, and for what purpose?

22. Of whom did the king's party consist? Of whom did the parliamentary party consist? Who commanded the land forces of the parliamentary party, and who commanded the fleet? In what year and at what place did Charles first raise his standard? What was the result of the battle of Edgehill? Which party was gaining ground? Who was mortally wounded, and died?

23. Who endeavoured to remedy the defects of the parliamentary army? To what sect did the greater number of men under the command of Cromwell belong? Whose assistance did the parliamentary army solicit? On what conditions did the Scotch consent to assist the parliamentary army? And were they granted? Why did an

assembly of divines meet at Westminster?

24. To whom did Charles make concessions in order to strengthen the royal army? What was the result of the battle of Nantwich? When was the battle of Marston Moor fought, and what was the result?

25. What was the fate of Laud? What measure was passed by parliament? Who resigned his command, and to whom was the chief command entrusted? Why did Cromwell retain his command of the cavalry?

26. When was the battle of Naseby fought, and what was the result? To whose valour was the victory chiefly owing? What became clear when the king's correspondence fell into the hands of the conquerors?

27. On whom had Charles placed his hopes? Where was Montrose defeated? To what town did Cromwell lay siege? To whom did the king surrender himself, and in what year? What did the Scotch try to induce Charles to do? What arrangement was come to by the Scotch and the parliamentary army? In what year was Charles given up to the English?

28. What was distasteful to the troops, and what steps did some of them take? To what sect did most of the members of parliament belong, and to what sect the greater part of the army? What did the army demand, and what was the result?

29. What proposals were made by the army to Charles, and with what result? What did the democratic part of the army declare? What became of the king? What course of action was decided upon by Cromwell and the army?

30. In what year did parliament attempt another reconciliation with the king, and with what result? What reaction took place in favour of the king? Who crushed these attempts at a rising?

31. What party entered into negotiations with the king? What was the Rump Parliament, and what order did they give with regard to the king?

32. Who disapproved of this step, and what did the House of Commons do? How long did the trial last? What verdict was pronounced by the commissioners?

33. Give an account of the end of Charles I. Give a general outline of his character. Which of Charles' chil-

dren succeeded him on the English throne?

34. What did the Rump Parliament declare immediately after the death of Charles I.? To whom was the executive authority entrusted? What oath did every member take? Who were condemned for high treason and executed?

35. Who proclaimed Charles II. king? Name the most powerful army in Ireland. Which towns in Ireland were held by the parliamentary army? Who was appointed lord-lieutenant? Which party was victorious at the siege of Drogheda and throughout the campaign? What was the result of the second campaign?

36. Why did Cromwell return to England? Whom did he leave to complete the subjugation of Ireland? What became of Ireton? Who settled the affairs of Ireland? What did the Scottish parliament promise Charles, and on what conditions? What was the fate of Montrose? What step did Charles take? What army was raised to support him?

37. What did Cromwell find on arriving near Edinburgh? What great battle was fought, and what was the result?

38. Where did Charles take refuge? Where, and in what year did he cause himself to be crowned king? What was the result of the battle of Worcester? Where did Charles after many wanderings find refuge? What step gained Cromwell many friends among the royalists? Who completed the subjugation of Scotland?

39. Who disliked the proceedings of the English parliament? Where had many of the English royalists found protection? What Act was passed by parliament? What war commenced? What battle was fought, and by whom were the fleets commanded? What victory elated the Dutch? In what year was the treaty of Westminster concluded, and what were its conditions?

40. How did parliament try to weaken Cromwell's power? How did Cromwell prove himself a match for parliament, and in what year?

41. How was the new parliament formed? Who was Barebones? How were the proceedings of this assembly characterised? In what year was Cromwell made Lord Protector of the Commonwealth? Mention the chief points of the instrument of government.

42. What alliance was formed with

Holland? When did the new parliament meet? How was most of its time spent? What conspiracies were formed?

43. When was parliament summoned, and why were one hundred members excluded? What honour did Cromwell decline, and why? What was "the humble petition and advice?"

44. Who offered a reward to anyone who would assassinate Cromwell? In what year did parliament meet? Of whom did the upper house consist? Why did it create general dissatisfaction? Why did Cromwell dissolve parliament? What words did he use in doing so?

45. What king sought the alliance of Cromwell? By what armies was the battle of the Dunes fought, and who were victorious? What persecution was stopped? In what year did Cromwell die? Where was he buried, and what was afterwards done with his body?

46. What prevented Cromwell from governing his country well? By whom was Oliver Cromwell succeeded? Why did Richard summon a parliament, and in what year? What disputes arose, and what was the result? What was the end of Richard?

47. What parliament was summoned? What conspiracy was formed? What took place in 1659?

48. How did the government come to fall into the hands of the army? Who had the chief command in Scotland? Who commenced negotiations with Monk? In what year was the Rump Parliament summoned, and what did it order? What became of Lambert?

49. With whom did Monk open negotiations? What was the "Declaration from Breda?" How was this message received by parliament? When did Charles land at Dover, and how was he welcomed?

50. What was "The Convention of Parliament?" Mention one of the most important matters to be settled by parliament? What did parliament grant to Charles? What became of the army? What was the fate of the regicides?

51. What was done with the estates which had changed hands during the Commonwealth? What was done with the royal and ecclesiastical estates? What was postponed?

52. Of whom was the next parliament principally composed? What was to be the parliament's first business? What

conferences were to be held? What became evident? What did parliament vote? What was the "Corporation Act?"

53. What was the "Act of Uniformity?" When was this Act passed? What was the result?

54. Whom did Charles II. marry, and what did his wife receive as a dowry? What town did Charles sell to Louis XIV., and for what sum? Who got the chief blame?

55. How did the Scottish parliament find itself deceived? Why had the Irish good reason for being dissatisfied?

56. What was the "Convention Act?" What was the consequence of this tyrannical statute? Explain the "Five Mile Act."

57. In what year did war with Holland break out, and what was the chief cause of the war? Where did a serious engagement take place, and what was the result? Who commanded the English fleet? What fearful scourge visited London at this time?

58. With whom did the Dutch ally themselves, and in what year? Who commanded the English fleet? What great battle was fought, and who were the victors? What was the result of the second battle? What did De Witt vow?

59. What calamity befel England in 1666? Name some of the buildings destroyed. What was the total loss? What fact was inscribed on the "Monument?" In what year was it erased?

60. What secret negotiation was entered into in 1667? What admiral appeared at the mouth of the Thames? What town did the Dutch raze to the ground? By what treaty was the war ended, and in what year?

61. Since when had Clarendon become unpopular? What things combined to bring about his downfall? Why did Charles abandon Clarendon? What was the fate of Clarendon?

62. What was the Cabal? Mention the most unprincipled of the Cabal. What alliance was concluded, and in what year? For what purpose was this alliance formed? What did Louis XIV. contrive to obtain by the treaty of Aix la Chapelle?

63. To what did the king's extravagance lead? Why did Buckingham begin negotiations with the French king? What were the conditions of the treaty of Dover, and in what year was it concluded? Against what country was war declared? What step did Charles

take to obtain money for the war? Mention the first encounter. Who had advanced as far as Amsterdium? What steps did the Dutch take, and at whose advice? What treaty was concluded in 1674? What promises did the Dutch make?

64. In what year did parliament meet? What was the "Declaration of Indulgence"? What did parliament oblige Charles to do, and what rights did Protestant Nonconformists obtain? Who resigned their office? Who became prime minister?

65. Why did Danby bring about a marriage between William, prince of Orange, and Mary, daughter of James I.? What did Louis XIV. do? Who was Titus Oates? What story did he bring forward? What did Oates in the end venture to do, and who thwarted him? What was the "Papist's Disabling Act?"

66. To what did parliament become thoroughly opposed? How long had parliament been in existence? When did Charles dissolve parliament? What sentence was passed on Danby?

67. Who filled Danby's place in the king's confidence? What was the Habeas Corpus Act? What was the object of one of the bills in parliament? What course did the king take to provide himself with a strong army? Who fanned the hostility towards the Catholic party? Who were the "petitioners" and "abhorers," and to what names were these afterwards changed? Why was parliament dissolved in 1680? Why had the English people good reason to fear the Duke of York? Which charters were abolished, and which substituted?

68. Who thought it possible to secure the exclusion of the prince, and to secure constitutional government? What became of Shaftesbury? What was the Rye House plot? Which lords were arrested, and which were executed? How did Charles govern the country during the last years of his reign? Who recovered his ascendancy at court, and who were released from prison? In what year did Charles II. die? What did he declare on his death-bed?

69. Who succeeded Charles to the throne? In what armies had James II. served? Who had been his first wife, and whom did he marry after his accession to the throne? Say something of the character of James I.

70. In consequence of what declara-

tion did James receive a hearty welcome from the people? How were suspicions soon raised?

71. When did parliament meet? What plan was formed to overthrow the government? Who headed the Presbyterians? Who was to create a rebellion in England? What was the result of this attempt? What was the fate of Argyle?

72. Who was received with enthusiasm at Lyme Regis? What battle was fought, and who were victorious? What was the fate of Monmouth?

73. Why was James not strengthened by the speedy crushing of these insurrections? Who was Jeffreys? Mention the cruelties perpetrated? How is it evident that James approved of these measures?

74. Of what did James resolve to get rid, and what things did he determine to alter? What statesman was dismissed? Why was parliament prorogued?

75. What was the Edict of Nantes? What was the consequence of its revocation? To whom did James continue to give his entire confidence? What did James forbid? What commission did he establish? Where did James establish an army? What was quite evident to the people?

76. What appointment did the king give to a Catholic? Why was the vice-chancellor deprived of his offices and emoluments? Why were the fellows of Magdalen College expelled from the University?

77. What declaration was issued, and in what year? Who signed a petition praying the king to excommunicate the clergy from reading the declaration publicly in their churches? How did James receive the petition? In how many churches was the declaration promulgated? What did James order to be done with the bishops? Before what court were they brought? What was the verdict? What did the people believe with regard to the son of James?

78. Who had been watching the affairs of England? What did the leading whigs resolve upon? What steps did they take? Who signed the invitation to the Prince of Orange? What preparations were made, and by whom was James warned? What proclamation did William send to England, and to what did he pledge himself? What step did James take? When, and where did William land in England?

Where did James collect his forces, and why was he obliged to hasten to London? Where were the queen and James' son sent to, and what became of James? When and where did James II. die?

79. What was the Interregnum? What did the peers and members of parlia-

ment call upon William to do? What conclusion did the Commons come to with regard to James? What was the second resolution of the Commons? What was the result of the discussion? What was the Act of "Settlement"? What was the "Declaration of Rights"? What did William promise?

CHAPTER X.

THE REVOLUTION DYNASTY.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. William III. and Mary (1689-1694). William's general character. Settlement of the nation.</p> <p>2. The revenue. The Mutiny Act.</p> <p>3. The rebellion in Scotland.</p> <p>4. The affairs of Ireland. James' flight into France.</p> <p>5. War in Ireland continued.</p> <p>6. Coalition against Louis XIV.</p> <p>7. War with France; peace of Ryswick.</p> <p>8. The massacre of Glencoe.</p> <p>9. William's difficulties. Death of Mary.</p> <p>10. William III. (1694-1702). Plots against his life; measures displeasing to him.</p> | <p>11. Schemes of dividing Spain.</p> <p>12. Second Act of Settlement. Death of William.</p> <p>13. Anne (1702-1714). Her character.</p> <p>14. Scotland; the Act of Security. Union of Scotland and England.</p> <p>15. Anne forsakes the Whigs and seeks the support of the Tories.</p> <p>16 and 17. Marlborough.</p> <p>18. The War of the Spanish Succession.</p> <p>19. The war continued. Peace of Utrecht.</p> <p>20. Intrigues of the Jacobites. Anne's death.</p> |
|--|---|

1. WILLIAM III. AND MARY.—1689-1694.

1. William, from first to last, had to contend with great difficulties, and even with ingratitude from those who had invited him to England. His manners, it is true, had nothing winning, and, generally, his words were few, but they could always be relied upon, and it cannot be denied that he freed England from the tyranny of the Stuarts, and secured civil and religious liberty, at least to a great extent.

The irregular meeting, or convention, which had given the crown to William, constituted itself as a regular parliament, and at once proceeded to settle the most urgent questions. An act was passed requiring all members of *parliament* and all civil and military officers to take the *oath of allegiance* and supremacy. About four hundred

clergymen refused, and, in consequence, lost their benefices; they were called **Nonjurors**, and caused much trouble to the government. The Nonconformists were benefited by an Act of **Toleration**, which freed them from the penalties to which they had been liable, provided they took the oath of allegiance and signed a declaration against Catholicism. This act of toleration, however, did not apply to either Catholics or Unitarians.



PASS OF KILLIECRANKIE.

2. The next subject was the settlement of the revenue, and it was arranged that the sum of £1,200,000 should be voted yearly in time of peace, and that £600,000 should be paid to the Dutch for their expenses incurred in William's expedition. The mutiny of a Scotch regiment at Ipswich, which had received orders to go to Holland, but started for Scotland, led to the passing of the **Mutiny Act**, whereby a standing army was created and provision made that military offences should be tried by a court martial.

3. In Scotland the Revolution had taken the same course as in England. James II. had been declared deposed, and William and Mary had been asked to fill

the vacant throne. Some attempt was indeed made by Viscount Dundee to foment a rebellion, especially among the Highlanders, but they were met by the royal army at the pass of **Killiecrankie**, where in a fierce and unexpected attack the rebels gained the victory; but as Dundee was mortally wounded they lost heart, and retreated and dispersed among the mountains. By the end of the year 1689 all Scotland, with the exception of some Highland districts, submitted to the new order of things.

4. In Ireland the case was different, for the majority of the people, being Catholics, continued their allegiance to James II., who, being supplied with men and arms by Louis XIV., attempted to recover his kingdom. He landed at Kinsale in March, and Tyrconnel, the governor of Ireland, placed about ten thousand men at his disposal. James summoned a packed parliament at Dublin, and, utterly incapable of profiting by his past experience, caused this parliament to repeal the Act of Settlement, confiscated the estates of all absentees above the age of seventeen, and nearly all the tithes were taken from the Protestant clergy and given to Catholics. Some of the towns, as Londonderry and Enniskillen, which refused to acknowledge James as their king, were besieged, but they defended themselves with extraordinary valour and perseverance. After a siege of nearly four months Londonderry was relieved, and the Enniskilleners defeated a strong body of troops who were sent to seize the town. The number of Irish killed at that time amounted to about two thousand, and four hundred were taken prisoners. In the month of August, Schomberg, one of William's generals, landed with ten thousand men in Ireland; he took several of the northern towns, and entrenched himself near Dundalk, where a large number of his men perished from want and disease. In June 1690, William himself, leaving the government in the hands of the queen, crossed over into Ireland with an army of thirty thousand men, and at once marched *against James*. The Irish army retreated before him,

and took up a strong position on the banks of the **Boyne**. On the 1st of July, William, supported by able officers, utterly defeated his rival. When James found that the battle was lost, he fled to Dublin, and thence to Waterford, where he embarked for France.

5. After this victory of the Boyne, William went to Dublin, and without much difficulty secured the submission of the south of Ireland; he then proceeded to Limerick, where the remaining Irish army was assembled, but not meeting with the expected success, he returned to England, where he was received with demonstrations of enthusiastic joy. The war in Ireland, however, was continued, and brought to a close in 1691 by the **treaty of Limerick**, in which it was agreed that the Irish Catholics should enjoy the same rights and liberties in religious matters as they had enjoyed in the reign of Charles II., and an amnesty was promised to all who testified their submission to William by taking the oath of allegiance. About fourteen thousand Irish soldiers, refusing to take the oath, entered the service of the King of France, where they were known by the name of the "Irish Brigade."

6. The strong feeling aroused against France in consequence of the support given to James in Ireland, led the parliament, which reassembled in October 1689, to join the general coalition against Louis, and £1,000,000 were voted for the army and navy. William himself went over to Holland in the following year to arrange the plans of the allies against France. Before his return the bishops who refused to take the oath of allegiance were turned out of their sees, and their places were filled with men of moderate principles.

7. The war against France was commenced in 1690, and lasted till 1697, being carried on both by land and by sea. In the first two years the allies were unsuccessful, and in the third Louis collected a large fleet, to make a descent upon England, having concerted with the Jacobites (the name given to the adherents of James, Latin, *Jacobus*) a plan of calling forth a rising in England

at the same time. But the conspiracy was discovered, and came to nothing. The French fleet under Trouville met the united English and Dutch fleets off La Hogue, and in the ensuing battle the French lost twenty-five ships, while the English, under the command of Russell, lost none. On land the allies were less successful. In 1694 the English bombarded the coast towns Havre and Dieppe, but their attempt to destroy Brest failed, and the failure was ascribed to the treachery of Marlborough. In the course of the following year St. Malo and Dunkirk were bombarded by the English, and Brussels by Louis; but William performed one of the most brilliant feats in the recovery of Namur. During these bombardments and sieges many thousands of men were killed, and houses and churches were destroyed. At length, both parties being exhausted, the peace of Ryswick, in September 1697, put an end to hostilities, and it was agreed that the fortresses taken by Louis in Flanders and about the Pyrenees should be restored to Spain, that a number of towns in the east of France should be given back to the Emperor of Germany, that Louis should cease to disturb the English king in his possessions, and that neither sovereign should countenance conspiracies against the other.

8. The early part of the year 1692 had been marked by an act of atrocity in Scotland for which William must to some extent be held responsible. The Highlanders who had refused to make their submission to the English king were in the end gained over by bribes and threats, except McLan, the head of the McDonalds of Glencoe, who, being prevented by unforeseen circumstances, was a few days behind the time allowed for taking the oath. Breadalbane and Dalrymple, the secretary of state for Scotland, made the lateness of McLan the pretext for obtaining from William an order to destroy the whole clan. A number of soldiers were sent into the valley, and pretending to be friends to the people, were kindly treated by them, when suddenly, on the 13th of February, the soldiery savagely fell upon the unsuspecting

people and massacred forty persons, including their chief. Those who tried to escape perished from hunger and cold. When the circumstances became known, William inflicted on Dalrymple no other punishment than dismissal. This cruel massacre is a stain on the king's character, for with a little more caution he might have prevented it.

9. Although William was a great benefactor to England, he never was thoroughly popular, partly on account of the coldness of his manners, and partly on account of his being a foreigner. Even some of his first supporters afterwards carried on a treasonable correspondence with James, and parliament also showed little disposition to favour him, for the grants to him were made annually, and after the restoration of peace his foreign auxiliaries were ordered to be disbanded. William perhaps committed the mistake of showing some partiality to his Dutch followers, such as Bentinck, who was made Earl of Portland, Schomberg, Zuylestein, and Auverquerque. Until the year 1693 he had given no special preference to either party in the state, but on the advice of Sunderland, his confidential counsellor, he chose his ministers from among the Whigs. In September 1693, the queen became seriously ill with small-pox, and died on the 28th, leaving William sole king of England.

2. WILLIAM III.—1694-1702.

10. William was greatly affected by the death of Mary, and suffered much from depression; but he roused himself, and it was in the very year after that he recovered Namur from the French. This great success made him for the moment very popular, and in the new parliament which was then elected the Whig party appeared in considerable force. One of the most important measures passed by it was an Act regulating trials for high treason (1696), which clearly defined what treason consists in, gave the accused better opportunities of defending themselves, and required at least two witnesses.

Several plots had already been formed against William's life, partly, it is said, instigated by James, or his agents. In February 1696, the so-called **Assassination Plot** was discovered, the object of which was to murder William and invade the kingdom. Several persons who were implicated in it were condemned to death. But the conspiracy produced one good result, as it led to the formation of a national association for the protection of the king's life. But parliament, fancying that peace was secured by the treaty of Ryswick, reduced the army to ten thousand, contrary to the king's express wish, and further hurt his feelings in 1699, by obliging all not being native-born Englishmen to quit the army, although those men had been of most signal service during the French war.

11. King Charles II. of Spain had no children, and there was danger of the whole of the Spanish dominions falling into the hands of the French. In order to avoid this, a secret treaty was negotiated by William in 1698, by which the dominions were to be divided among three claimants—the French dauphin, the Archduke of Austria, and the Elector of Bavaria. But as the last of these three died soon after, a new division became necessary, but by various intrigues Louis XIV. succeeded in securing all Spain for his grandson, Philip of Anjou. This again led to the formation of a great alliance against him in 1701, and to the **war of the Spanish Succession**, which broke out in the reign of Queen Anne.

12. As William and Mary had no children, the death of the Duke of Gloucester, the only surviving son of Anne, daughter of James II., in July 1700, rendered a new settlement of the succession necessary, in order to secure it to a Protestant; and an Act was accordingly passed in 1701, limiting the inheritance of the crown to the **Princess Sophia**, the Electress of Hanover, and her

11. Charles II., the last of the Hapsburgs on the Spanish throne, died in 1700. The only allies of France during the war about the succession were the Elector of Bavaria and the Archbishop of Cologne. Most of the princes of Germany, England, and Holland, formed the great alliance against France,

heirs. William's health had gradually been failing: a fall from his horse, in which he broke his collar-bone, soon showed alarming symptoms, and on February 26, 1702, he died at Kensington, in the fifty-second year of his age.

3. ANNE.—1702-1714.

13. Anne, the second daughter of James II. by Anne Hyde, married, in 1683, Prince George of Denmark, and deserting the cause of her father, joined the revolutionary party. Her children died early, and in 1704 her only surviving son, William, duke of Gloucester, was likewise carried off at the early age of eleven. Her husband, who scarcely exercised any influence upon the affairs of England, died in 1708. Anne herself was a person of a kind and amiable but weak character, and allowed herself to be guided by her female friends and favourites, of whom the political parties were not slow to avail themselves for their own purposes.

14. Immediately after Anne's accession, the Scotch showed signs of discontent with the existing arrangements between their country and England. The question about a union of the two countries had been considered before, and Anne herself expressed a wish that it should be realised. But there was considerable opposition in the Scottish parliament, which, in 1703, passed what was called the **Act of Security**, providing that, after the demise of the queen, the same person should be incapable of holding the crowns of both kingdoms, unless the Scottish people were allowed to share with the English the full benefits of trade and navigation. This Act called forth great exasperation in England, and in the following year the English parliament by a similar Act deprived Scotchmen of the rights and privileges of Englishmen, and greatly restricted the commercial intercourse between the two countries. In

1. In the year of Anne's accession, Peter the Great became Czar of Russia, which he governed till 1725, bringing Russia within the pale of European civilization,

fact, affairs assumed so threatening an aspect that the English parliament thought it expedient to accept the Scottish Act of Security. The idea of a union, however, was steadily gaining ground, and the opinion of the wisest men on both sides regarded it as a great benefit to both nations. Accordingly, in 1705, the Scotch parliament appointed commissioners to meet with representatives of the English government and discuss the terms on which the union might be effected. When the proposed terms became known in Scotland, nearly all parties were dissatisfied, but with the help of bribes and liberal promises the opposition was silenced, and in 1707 the Union was decreed by both parties, and was to date from the 1st of May. The principal terms were, that the two countries should form one kingdom under the name of **Great Britain**; that the succession should take place in accordance with the settlement made in the reign of William III.; that there should be free communication of trade and navigation; that all rights, privileges, customs, and duties should be the same, unless special arrangements were made; that Scotland should retain her own laws and customs; that she should be represented in the English parliament by sixteen elective peers and forty-five commoners, representing counties and boroughs; and that the Presbyterian Church of Scotland should retain its own form of worship, government, and discipline. The peaceful union thus effected has been of incalculable benefit to both countries.

15. Although Anne sided with the Whig party against her own father, yet she, in her heart, hated them, believing them to be republicans and enemies to the Church of England, to which she was devotedly attached. As it could not remain a secret that her sympathies were with the Tories, that party took courage, and clergymen began to preach violent sermons against toleration and dissenters, whereby the people were so much incited against them that some of the houses of dissenters were plundered, and their meeting-houses destroyed by the mob. Numerous petitions were sent to the queen to support

the more intolerant party of the church, and rid herself of her Whig advisers; and as these petitions coincided with her own feelings, she dismissed all the Whigs with the exception of Marlborough.

16. This man, as Colonel Churchill, had married Sarah Jennings, the queen's most intimate friend from early youth. After the revolution, William had rewarded Marlborough's military talents in the most generous and liberal manner. On her accession the queen was still completely under the influence of Lady Marlborough, and made her husband captain-general of all her forces, in which capacity he carried on the war on the Continent, in conjunction with the allies, against France and Spain.

17. In the new parliament, which met in 1710, the Tories had the majority, and showed their aversion to the Whig party by refusing to pass a vote of thanks for the great military services of the captain-general, and by charging him with peculation. The queen was then prevailed upon to deprive Marlborough of all his offices, and the Whig influence at the court was at an end. The place of Lady Marlborough was filled by a Mrs. Masham, of whose influence the Tories now availed themselves for their own ends. The war, it was said, had been kept up by the Whigs chiefly to gratify Marlborough, and the Tories, now opposing its continuance, commenced negotiations for peace.

18. It is now time to turn our attention to the war called the **War of the Spanish Succession**, which had been carried on by land and by sea ever since the accession of Anne. After the death of Charles II. of Spain, in 1700, the Spanish monarchy, through intrigues, had fallen to Philip of Anjou, grandson of Louis XIV. This led to the formation of the great alliance between England, Austria, and Holland, which was afterwards joined by the German emperor, Portugal, and Savoy. The object was to maintain the claims of the Archduke of Austria. The war was opened in the Netherlands in 1702 by Marlborough, who during the first years was

most successful, capturing town after town, and penetrating into the very heart of Germany, where, in 1704, he gained the brilliant victory of **Blenheim**, a village on the banks of the Danube. We cannot here enter into a detailed account of this complicated and widespread war; suffice it to say that Marlborough, with few interruptions, continued his victorious career until 1711, when he was deprived of his offices through the intrigues of the Tories. His place at the head of the armies was then given to Ormond, who refused to act on the offensive, and, as he separated his troops from those of the allies, the French gained some advantages; but as nearly all parties were exhausted, conferences about peace were commenced as early as the year 1712.



GIBRALTAR.

19. While the war was raging on the Continent of Europe, the English fleet under Admiral Rooke was operating against the coasts of Spain, where, in the first year, it gained considerable advantages. In 1704, Rooke took Gibraltar, and inflicted so severe a blow on the French fleet off Malaga that it did not venture upon *another battle* during the war. In 1708, Admiral Leake

took the island of Sardinia, and in the West Indies large and valuable prizes were gained; but an expedition against the French in Canada, in 1711, commanded by Hill, a brother of Mrs. Masham, proved a complete failure. It ought to be mentioned that in 1708 Louis XIV., in order to create a diversion, gave to the Pretender (son of James II., who called himself James III.) a fleet, with an armed force, to go to Scotland, but Admiral Byng prevented him from landing in the Forth. Louis, ever since 1709, had attempted in vain to come to an arrangement with his enemies, but when the Tories had come into power they showed a strong desire to bring the war to a close, and at **Utrecht a treaty of peace** was concluded in 1713. In it the crown of Spain and its colonies was left to Philip of Anjou, on the understanding that the crowns of France and Spain should never be united; Gibraltar and Minorca were ceded to England, which also received Nova Scotia and St. Kitts. Louis further bound himself to support the Protestant succession in England, and to order the Pretender to quit France. The substantial advantages thus gained by England were considerable, though perhaps not what might have been expected from the many and great victories gained by Marlborough.

20. The remaining short period of Anne's life is filled with the intrigues of the Jacobites to secure the succession of the Pretender, and Anne herself is said to have been favourable to it. The Electress Sophia died in June 1714, and by the Act of Settlement her son George Louis was the heir to the English throne. Soon after this Anne was seized by an apoplectic fit, and on the 1st of August 1714, she expired at Kensington, in her fiftieth

20. In 1701, Frederic I. assumed the title of **King of Prussia**, having until then been Elector of Brandenburg.

During Anne's reign Charles XII. of Sweden carried on the great northern war against Denmark and Peter the Great, but was finally defeated in 1709 in the battle of Pultawa.

In 1711, Charles VI. became Emperor of Germany as successor to the Emperor Joseph I., and reigned till 1740.

In the peace of Utrecht, Philip V. of Anjou received Spain and all her colonies. Austria obtained Naples, Milan, and the Spanish portion of the Netherlands.

year. Her reign had been undisturbed by rebellion, and only one execution for high treason had taken place. Her strong attachment to the church was shown in many ways, and her provision for poor clergymen still exists under the name of "Queen Anne's Bounty."

QUESTIONS.

1. What Act was passed by parliament? Who were the Nonjurors? What was the "Act of Toleration?" To whom did this Act of Toleration not apply?
2. How was the settlement of the revenue arranged? What was the "Mutiny Act," and what led to it?
3. What was the cause of the battle of Killiecrankie? Who gained the victory? What caused the rebels to retreat? In what year did Scotland submit to the new order of things?
4. What was the state of feeling in Ireland? Who supplied James II. with men and arms? Where did James summon a packed parliament, and what steps did the parliament take? What towns were besieged by James? What was the result of the siege of Londonderry? What general crossed over into Ireland? Where did he entrench himself, and what was the result? In what year did William land in Ireland? What great battle was fought, and what was the result?
5. When was the war in Ireland brought to a close? What was arranged by the treaty of Limerick? What is the meaning of the "Irish Brigade?"
6. What amount was voted by parliament for the army and navy, and for what purpose? Why did William go to Holland? What bishops were turned out of their sees?
7. When did the war against France commence, and how long did it last? What success had the allies during the first two years? With whom had Louis concerted a plan of making a descent upon England? What was the result? What was the result of the battle fought off La Hogue? What towns were bombarded, and in what year? To whom was the failure of destroying Brest ascribed? Mention one of William's most brilliant feats? In what year was the peace of Ryswick concluded, and what were its conditions?
8. For what was the early part of the year 1692 marked? How were some of the Highlanders gained over to make their submission to William? Who was behindhand in taking his oath? Give an account of the massacre of Glencoe. How was Dalrymple punished? Why was William to blame?
9. Why was William never thoroughly popular in England? How did parliament show itself little disposed to favour him? What mistake had William perhaps committed? Who was William's confidential counsellor, and what advice did he give William? In what year did Queen Mary die?
10. What great success made William popular for the moment? Mention one of the most important measures passed by parliament, and in what year? What plot was discovered in 1696? What good result did this conspiracy produce? How did parliament hurt the king's feelings?
11. What was the secret treaty negotiated by William, and in what year? What led to the forming of a great alliance, and in what year? What was the cause of the war of the Spanish Succession, and when did it break out?
12. What event rendered a new settlement of the succession necessary? What Act was passed in 1701? What was the cause of William's death, and in what year did he die?
13. Whose daughter was Queen Anne, and whom did she marry? What became of her children, and in what year did her husband die? What was Anne's character?
14. What was the feeling in Scotland as regards England? What was the "Act of Security," and in what year was it passed? What step did the English parliament take in the following year? For what purpose did the Scotch commissioners meet the representatives

of the English government? In what year was the union of England and Scotland decreed? What were the principal terms? What has been the result of this union?

15. What party did Queen Anne hate in her heart? Why did the people plunder and destroy the meeting houses of the dissenters? What petitions were sent to the queen, and with what result?

16. Who was the Duke of Marlborough? In what relation did Lady Marlborough stand to the queen.

17. When did parliament meet? How did the Tories show their aversion to the Whig party? What was the queen prevailed upon to do? Who commenced negotiations for peace?

18. Into whose hands had Spain fallen? What great alliance was formed? What was its object? Who opened the war in the Netherlands, and in what year? When was the famous battle of

Blenheim fought, and who were victorious? How long did Marlborough continue his victorious career? Of what was he then deprived? Who commanded the armies in Marlborough's place? When were conferences about peace commenced?

19. Where was the English fleet, and under what admiral? In what year was Gibraltar taken? Mention where other prizes were taken? What expedition proved a complete failure? To whom did Louis XIV. give a fleet, and for what purpose? Who prevented James from landing in the Forth? When was the treaty of Utrecht concluded? Name its conditions?

20. What intrigues went on during the latter years of Anne's life? Who died in 1714? To whom was the succession to the English throne secured? When did Queen Anne die? What is "Queen Anne's Bounty?"

CHAPTER XI.

THE HOUSE OF BRUNSWICK OR HANOVER.

1. **George I.** (1714-1727). His general character.

2 and 3. Risings in Scotland and the north of England.

4. Failure of the Jacobites.

5. Quadruple alliance and war with Spain.

6. The South Sea Company.

7. War with Spain continued. Death of George I.

8. **George II.** (1727-1760). His general character.

9. Administration of Walpole. Porteous riots.

10. Resignation of Walpole.

11. War of the Austrian Succession. War with France.

12. Rebellion in favour of the young Pretender.

13. The last of the Stuarts.

14. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.

15. War with France. Admiral Byng. Pitt.

16. The Seven Years' War. War against France continued. Conquest of Canada.

17 and 18. Affairs of India. Clive.

19. Death of George II. The Gregorian calendar.

20. **George III.** (1760-1820). His personal character.

21. The family compact. Pitt's resignation.

22. War with Spain. Peace of Paris. Lord Bute's administration.

23. Grenville's. John Wilkes.

24. Rockingham. Pitt (earl of Chatham). Riots in the American colonies.

25. Rupture between the American colonies and England.

26. Declaration of American independence. Death of Chatham. War of Independence.

27. The war continued.

28. Peace of Paris. Recognition of the independence of America.

29. The Gordon riots in London.

30. Reforms of parliament first mooted. William Pitt at the head of the government.

31. The Prince of Wales. The king's illness.

32. Outbreak of the French Revolution.

- tion. War declared against England and Holland.
33. Success of the English arms.
34. Mutiny in the Channel Fleet.
35. Disturbances in Ireland. Union of Ireland with England.
36. Bombardment of Copenhagen. Peace of Amiens.
37. Napoleon's plan to invade England. Battle of Trafalgar.
38. Grenville and Fox. Peace of Tilsit.
39. The French in Spain and Portugal. Arthur Wellesley. Corunna, Talavera.
40. Wellesley victorious in Spain.
41. King George permanently insane. The Prince of Wales regent. Napoleon obliged to abdicate.
42. Congress at Vienna. Napoleon escapes from Elba. The hundred days. Battle of Waterloo.
43. Congress of Vienna continued.
44. War with America.
45. Condition of England. Death of George III.
46. George IV (1820-1830). His general character.
47. Queen Caroline Princess Charlotte. The king's conduct towards the queen.
48. Condition of England. Parliamentary reform again talked of.
- 49 and 50. Daniel O'Connell. Catholic Relief Bill.
51. Military affairs in the reign of George IV.
52. William IV. (1830-1837). His general character.
- 53, 54, and 55. Parliamentary reform.
56. The first reformed parliament. Abolition of slavery. Municipal reform.
57. State of Ireland. Death of William IV.
58. Victoria (1837). Her accession.
59. The Chartists. The French Revolution of 1848.
60. Troubles in Ireland.
61. Rebellion in Canada.
62. Sir Robert Peel's administration.
63. The Corn Laws.
64. Liberal measures.
65. War in Syria.
66. The Crimean War.
67. War with China. The Indian Mutiny.
68. Death of the Prince Consort.

1. GEORGE I.—1714-1727.

1. Immediately upon the death of Anne, in accordance with the Act of Settlement, George Louis was proclaimed king as George I., for he was the son of Ernest Augustus, Elector of Hanover and Duke of Brunswick-Lüneburg, by Sophia, grand-daughter of James I. When he arrived from the continent in his new kingdom he was heartily welcomed, his accession being regarded as a guarantee for the maintenance of the Protestant religion. He was then fifty-four years old, and was married to Sophia Dorothea of Zelle, by whom he had two children, George (who succeeded him as George II.), and Sophia (afterwards Queen of Prussia, and mother of Frederick the Great). His wife, being suspected of an intrigue with Count Königsmark, had been imprisoned in the castle of Alden, where she remained for thirty-two years, and died a few months before her husband. King George was totally ignorant of the English language, and seems to have had *an aversion* to English manners and customs; his own *manners* were coarse and awkward, and he always pre-

ferred living in his continental dominions. His mind was uncultivated, his tastes low, and his society consisted chiefly of persons who pandered to them. Although he punished his wife severely on mere suspicion, he himself did not scruple openly to live with and lavish his favours upon mistresses. It must at the same time be stated that he was not without valour, as he had shown in the war of the Spanish Succession, and that he was of frugal habits and anxious to preserve peace.

2. On Anne's death eighteen lords justices, mostly Whigs, were appointed to conduct the regency until the arrival of the new king on the 18th of September. He at once identified himself with the Whig party, and his principal ministers were Lord Townshend, brother-in-law of Robert Walpole, and General Stanhope. The Jacobite party, which was strong among the Tories and the clergy, had been taken by surprise by the sudden death of Anne; and steps were taken immediately by the new government to punish her late ministers for having intrigued with the Pretender and with France. Oxford, Bolingbroke, and Ormond were impeached for high treason, and Oxford was arrested, while the other two escaped by flight. These proceedings created alarm among the Jacobites. The exiled nobles hoped to obtain assistance and support from Louis XIV., but his death, on Sept. 1, 1715, deprived them of this hope. However, they nevertheless resolved to attempt a rising in Scotland and the north of England against the Hanoverian dynasty. The Pretender was then living in France under the name of Chevalier de St. George. The first to raise the standard of revolt in the north of Scotland was the **Earl of Mar**, who was soon joined by an army of ten thousand men, with which he made himself master of nearly the whole of Scotland north of the Forth. But he was defeated November 13, 1715, by an inferior force under the Duke of Argyle at Sheriffmuir.

2. Louis XIV. was succeeded by his great-grandson, Louis XV., who was only five years old on his accession, and Philip of Orleans was made regent. Louis XV. reigned till 1774.

3. In the north of England, Mr. Foster, the Earl of Derwentwater, and other nobles advanced with a force as far south as Preston, but were compelled to surrender to General Carpenter on the same day, November 13, on which Mar was defeated in Scotland. About a month later the Pretender himself landed at Peterhead, but finding that Mar had failed, and being himself unable to inspire his followers with confidence, he and the earl embarked for France, leaving the army to take care of itself. Lords Derwentwater, Kenmure, and about twenty-six other leaders of the rebellion were executed.

4. This rebellion gave rise to an important change in the constitution. In 1694 an Act had been passed that a new parliament should be elected every three years, but, as it was now feared lest the Jacobites should be brought in in great numbers, an Act was passed declaring that a new parliament should be elected every seven years (**Septennial Parliaments**), which is still the law. The Jacobites, however, did not yet give up the hope of ultimate success, and remained, in fact, troublesome throughout the reign of George I. In 1722 they formed a plan of seizing the Tower, the Bank, and other public buildings, and proclaiming the Pretender simultaneously in different parts of the country; but the scheme failed, and Atterbury, whom Anne had made Bishop of Rochester, was deprived of his see and banished for having taken part in the plot.

5. George I. always looked upon his continental possessions as of more importance to him than England, and, in order to increase them, he purchased the secularised bishoprics of Bremen and Werden, which Denmark had taken from Sweden, for £150,000. Charles XII. of Sweden then entered into intrigues with Philip V. of Spain to promote the restoration of the Stuarts. But Stanhope, who had in the meantime become prime minister, formed what is called the **Quadruple Alliance**, with Austria, France, and Holland, for the avowed purpose of preserving the peace of Europe. The Spaniards *had* already seized upon Sardinia, and, being bent upon

recovering what they had lost by the peace of Utrecht, they sent out a fleet to conquer Sicily; but Admiral Byng defeated them off **Cape Passaro** in 1718. In revenge for this, the Pretender was treated at Madrid as a legitimate king, and a fleet was got ready to escort him to England. But the little armada was dispersed by a storm, and only two ships reached Scotland, which of course could effect nothing. As Spain was everywhere unsuccessful, Philip at last gave in, and, in 1720, joined the quadruple alliance.

6. At home the administration was carried on by Stanhope in a liberal spirit. The Prince of Wales had been excluded from the court ever since 1717, but Stanhope, in 1720, brought about a reconciliation between the king and his son, which, however, never became cordial. In the same year **Robert Walpole** also entered the ministry, and assumed the chief direction of affairs, in which position he maintained himself for twenty years. He took prompt measures to punish the offenders in the South Sea Company, by which thousands of people had been ruined. The government was charged with having abetted the swindle, but Stanhope defended himself with such vehemence that he was seized with apoplexy, and died the next day, 1721.

7. While the government was thus threatened in parliament, a general war seemed to be on the point of breaking out, for a confederacy was formed at Vienna between Spain and the German Empire to compel England to give up Gibraltar and Minorca. In order to counteract this movement, England concluded, in 1725, at **Hanover**, a defensive alliance with France and Prussia, which was afterwards joined by Sweden and Holland.

6. The South Sea Company, also called the South Sea Bubble, was formed in 1710. It was a company of state creditors who received from the government the privilege of a trading monopoly in the South Sea. The Company, in spite of the opposition of Spain, flourished, and offered to pay off the entire National Debt if certain privileges were granted. The shares rose to an enormous height, and everybody was anxious to become a shareholder. When at last the scheme collapsed, there was immense excitement and indignation all over the country, and the directors of the Company were severely punished.

7. In 1725, Peter the Great of Russia died.

Spain spent a large amount of money upon a fruitless attempt to recover Gibraltar. However, a reconciliation was brought about by the French government in 1727. But Spain refused to join it, and the state of hostility between England and Spain continued, until, in 1729, a peace was concluded, in which no mention was made of Gibraltar.

In June 1727, George I. was going on one of his usual visits to Hanover. When on the road he was seized with a fit of apoplexy, and died in his carriage before he reached the palace of his brother, the Bishop of Osnabrück; this took place June 11, 1727.

2. GEORGE II.—1727-1760.

8. George II., the son of George I., was born at Hanover, and thirty years old when he arrived in this country with his father, so that at his accession he was in his forty-fourth year. He spoke English fluently, but at heart was as much a German as his father. Like him, also, he was always most anxious to maintain the hereditary possessions of his family in Germany. In his habits he was quite regular, and always remained attached to those who had once gained his esteem. His queen, Caroline of Anspach, was handsome and well educated, and during her husband's visits to Hanover she managed the affairs of the kingdom. George II. had five daughters and two sons: Frederick, prince of Wales, and William Augustus, duke of Cumberland, both of whom died before their father.

9. Sir Robert Walpole was retained by the new king at the head of the government, and maintained his post until 1742, notwithstanding a powerful and ever-increasing opposition. His policy was one of peace, and, on the whole, very beneficial to the country. The leader of the opposition was the great **William Pitt**. In 1733, Walpole carried several financial measures, but had to give up a most important excise bill, by which he intended to *stop enormous frauds committed upon the revenue*. The

year 1736 is marked by the **Porteous riots** at Edinburgh, caused by the fact that Captain Porteous had fired upon the people while they were trying to rescue a criminal. Porteous was tried for murder and condemned to death, but was reprieved, whereupon the mob broke into the prison, dragged forth the unfortunate man, and hanged him. Many other excesses were committed by the rioters, in consequence of which the Lord Provost was deposed and the city fined.

10. For a long time the English had carried on a very lucrative contraband trade with the Spanish colonies. Spain, which thus lost a very considerable portion of its revenue, endeavoured to prevent this systematic smuggling by searching English vessels, during which process English crews were sometimes rather roughly treated. The parliamentary opposition, regarding such things as insults to the English name, forced Walpole, in 1739, to declare war against Spain. Operations were commenced against the Spanish colonies, but as they were nearly everywhere unsuccessful, the government was blamed, and the new parliament, which assembled in 1741, was so hostile to Walpole that he felt obliged to resign; but the king, who reluctantly accepted his resignation, created him Earl of Orford. Walpole, however, did not long enjoy this honour, as he died three years later, 1745. He was succeeded by Carteret, afterwards **Earl Granville**, a very able, but somewhat inconsistent statesman.

11. About the time of the fall of Walpole, events occurred on the continent which involved England in a war about the Austrian succession. According to an arrangement called the **Pragmatic Sanction**, Maria Theresa, in 1740, succeeded Charles VI. of Austria as Empress of Germany. But the Elector of Bavaria, who claimed the succession for himself, was supported by

11. The war of the Austrian Succession lasted from 1741 till 1748. On the death of Frederick William I. of Prussia in 1740, his son Frederick the Great ascended the throne, who was born in 1712, and reigned till 1786. Maria Theresa was the daughter of the Emperor Charles VI. who died in 1740, and she reigned till 1780.

France. As George II. had promised to uphold the "Pragmatic Sanction," parliament voted a large subsidy for Maria Theresa, and five millions to carry on the war. In 1742, the Earl of Stair entered Germany with an army of forty thousand men, partly English and partly German allies. In the following year George himself joined the army, just in time to save Stair, who, by unskilful management, had allowed himself to be shut up in a valley near **Dettingen**, on the Main, by the French, under Noailles. A battle was fought there in 1743, in which the French were defeated with the loss of six thousand men. This battle delivered Germany from the French, but led to a declaration of war by France against England, early in 1744. The first campaign was opened the following year in Flanders, under the command of the Duke of Cumberland, and as the English were deserted by their allies, the great battle of **Fontenoy** was won by the French, who thereby became masters of Flanders.

12. This seemed to be a favourable moment for the younger Pretender, **Charles Edward**, to venture upon an attempt to gain the crown of England. James, the old Pretender, had given up all hope, but his son, who had received promises of support from France, made preparations to throw a considerable army upon the coast of Kent. The French fleet had actually anchored off **Dungeness**, when the greater part of it was wrecked during a storm. After this disaster the French government abandoned the undertaking, but the Pretender started with two ships, one of which was lost during the voyage, and landed with seven men on the coast near **Inverness**. He there gained over some Highlanders, and with about sixteen hundred followers he marched southward and defeated a body of the king's troops at **Prestonpans**, near **Edinburgh**, 1745. This success made him master of nearly all Scotland, and largely increased the number of his followers. He was, however, determined to conquer England as well, and marched towards **Carlisle**, which surrendered to him. He then advanced as far as **Derby**. *But the English government had not been idle, and three*

armies gathering around him, he found it impossible to reach London, where many friends were awaiting him. His own followers urged him to return to the north, and near **Penrith** he gallantly checked the army of Cumberland who was pursuing him. Thence he proceeded to Glasgow, Stirling, and Inverness. His army had, in the meantime, been much diminished, and being attacked by Cumberland on **Culloden Moor**, in 1746, his men were utterly routed. After this battle the Pretender, despairing of success, dismissed his followers, became a fugitive, and after many romantic adventures escaped to the Continent. Cumberland treated the vanquished followers of the Pretender with merciless cruelty, whence he was nicknamed "The Butcher;" more than eighty of them were executed, among them Lords Kilmarnock, Balmerino, and Lovat, and many were transported.

13. After this no more serious attempt was made by the Stuart family. James, the old Pretender, died in 1765, and his son, Charles Edward, who was notorious for his dissolute life on the Continent, died at Rome in 1788; his brother, Henry, the only survivor of the family, lived at Rome as Cardinal York until his death in 1807.

14. The war with France was continued in the meantime both by land and by sea, until, in 1748, the peace of **Aix-la-Chapelle** was concluded; in it the "Pragmatic Sanction" was maintained, and France and England were ordered each to restore the conquests they had made during the war. This peace lasted, indeed, for seven years, but there were several causes which kept up an ill-feeling between the two countries; and it was especially in their colonies in India and America that disputes about the boundaries and commercial interests were of constant occurrence.

15. When at length it became evident that a fresh war could not be avoided, George II., fearing for his Continental possessions, concluded alliances with Russia, Hesse-Cassel, and Prussia, while France secured the alliance of Austria. The Duke of Newcastle, who was then prime minister, annoyed the French in many ways,

while he seems to have been unaware of their plans of operation. When, therefore, the French were trying to conquer Minorca, **Admiral Byng** was sent with an insufficient force of ten ill-equipped and ill-manned ships. In the ensuing action, Minorca was lost and Byng withdrew to Gibraltar. This failure created great indignation in England, and all the blame was thrown upon the admiral, who was tried by court-martial and shot in Portsmouth Harbour on the ground of his not having done his duty. The ministry of Newcastle was broken up in 1757, and **William Pitt** undertook the administration of affairs in conjunction with **Henry Fox** (afterwards **Lord Holland**), and the **Duke of Newcastle**. The period during which **Pitt** guided the helm of the state is perhaps the most brilliant in English history.

16. In 1756, the Seven Years' War broke out on the Continent between **Frederick the Great** and **Maria Theresa**, in which **George II.** supported the Prussian king with an army and a subsidy of £670,000. In the first campaign the **Duke of Cumberland** was driven out of **Hanover** by the French, in consequence of which he incurred the displeasure of his father, and had to withdraw from the court. **Pitt** was at the time planning war on a gigantic scale, which was to be carried on simultaneously in nearly all parts of the world against France. The English arms were successful at **Brest**, **Havre**, **Dunkirk**, and at **Quiberon**, where, in 1759, the French would have been completely annihilated, had it not been for the misconduct of **Lord George Sackville**, which enabled them to escape.

In Africa, the island of **Goree**, at the mouth of the **Senegal**, was taken from the French in 1758, and in America, **General Wolfe** with a small body of troops attacked **Quebec**, **Sept. 13, 1759**, and although he was mortally wounded, his men, encouraged by his heroic

16. There had already been two wars about the possession of **Silesia**, but in this last great war, which lasted from 1756 till 1763, **Silesia** was gained by **Prussia**. In this war **Frederick the Great** had to contend against **Austria**, **Elizabeth of Russia**, **France**, and **Sweden**.

conduct, forced Quebec to capitulate. The conquest of Canada was completed in 1760.

17. The French settlements in India, on the coast of Coromandel, were governed by Dupleix, who tried to win over the native princes and with their assistance to humble the English. But he found an able and worthy opponent in **Robert Clive**. In 1756, Calcutta was attacked by Dowlah, the rajah of Bengal, and when it became clear that the place would be compelled to surrender, all the Europeans with the governor took to flight, leaving behind about two hundred men to shift for themselves. When the city was taken, the conquerors threw one hundred and forty-six Englishmen into what is called the **Black Hole**, a military prison, eighteen feet square, with only a small barred opening to admit air. This happened at the hottest season of the year, and when the dungeon was opened the next morning, only twenty-three men were found alive. Calcutta was sacked, and Englishmen were forbidden ever again to settle in the place.

18. When the tidings of this fiendish proceeding reached Clive, who was then governor of Fort St. David, an expedition was got ready at Madras, and at the head of nine hundred Europeans and one thousand five hundred native troops (Sepoys) he retook Calcutta without the loss of a single life, and then drove the French from Chandernagore. At length, though his forces did not amount to more than three thousand men, he gained the glorious victory of **Plassey** in 1756, over an army of fifty thousand natives. This battle made the English masters of Bengal, and the last French possessions in India were taken from them in 1761. From that time the British dominions in India have been increasing almost without interruption. Clive himself, after some further successes, returned to England and received the honour of a peerage.

19. While Pitt's administration thus saw the English arms victorious in every part of the globe, and while England was everywhere successful, George II. died of a rupture of the heart, October 25, 1760, at Kensington.

Until his reign the English had retained the Julian

year, which had been reformed, in 1582, by Pope Gregory XIII., and had been adopted by all European countries, except England, Sweden, and Russia. In 1752, however, the English also reformed their calendar, and the year was made to commence on the 1st of January instead of the 25th of March; eleven days had, however, to be suppressed (from September 3rd to the 13th) in order to bring the calendar into harmony with the solar year.

3. GEORGE III.—1760-1820.

20. George III. was the eldest son of Frederic Louis, prince of Wales, who had died in 1751. His education had been rather neglected, as he had been kept in great privacy, that he might not be contaminated by the general profligacy of the time; and it was probably the result of these early habits that his court was perhaps the purest in Europe, and afforded an example which could not but have a good influence, not only upon the higher classes, but upon the nation generally. His intentions were always good and his habits simple, and in the discharge of his public duties he always showed a more than common activity; but he was obstinate, and tenaciously clung to once formed opinions, whereby he sometimes injured the interests of the country. Both George III. and his queen, Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz, were distinguished for their sincere piety.

20. On his accession, George was twenty-two years old, and married the year after. The throne was now again occupied by a king born and bred in England, and owing to Pitt's bold and successful administration, the country had reached its highest glory. In 1761, the English conquered Dominica in the West Indies, and Belleisle off the coast of Brittany. France was at the time desirous to negotiate for peace, and Pitt, bent upon the recovery

19. It was in the reign of George II. that John Wesley and George Whitfield inaugurated a religious revival in England and became the founders of the Wesleyans or Methodists. Many scientific inventions also were made during that period, and the British Museum was established in 1753.

of Minorca, offered Belleisle in exchange. But the French king objected to this, because he was engaged in forming what is called the **Family Compact**, by which the three branches of the house of Bourbon, France, Spain, and Naples, guaranteed their possessions to one another. Pitt, on receiving information of this compact which was clearly aimed at England, at once proposed to declare war against Spain, for he knew that that country was making great warlike preparations. As this proposal was rejected, Pitt resigned, and Lord Bute, who had long enjoyed the special favour of the court, became prime minister.

22. As soon as the Spanish fleet returned from the West Indies, Spain declared war against England, 1762, and Bute was now compelled to do what Pitt had foreseen. An English force was sent out to assist the Portuguese, our old allies, who were attacked by the Spaniards, and succeeded in repelling them beyond the frontiers. At the same time our forces in the West Indies took the Caribbean Islands and Havannah, and in the East the Philippine Islands were captured. The English arms were victorious everywhere, and a vast amount of booty was taken. But Bute was nevertheless most anxious for peace, which at length was concluded at **Paris, in 1763**, and also put an end to the seven years' war. In this peace Minorca was restored to Britain in return for Belleisle; Havannah and the Philippine Islands were given back to Spain in return for Florida and Porto Rico. In the West Indies, also, the islands Guadaloupe, Martinico, and St. Lucia were restored to Spain, while England retained Tobago, Dominica, St. Vincent, and Grenada.

23. This peace was opposed by Pitt and received with little favour by the people, who thought that, considering our great successes, the terms were not sufficiently advantageous, and as Bute had been its chief promoter, he became very unpopular and had to resign. His place was taken by George Grenville, whose administration fell on troubled times. **John Wilkes**, a member of parliament and editor of a newspaper called the "**North**

Briton," had written scurrilous articles on Bute and the peace, and had made offensive comments on a speech of the king. Grenville had him arrested on a "general warrant," which was illegal; but Wilkes was nevertheless expelled from the House and outlawed. After a few years he came back to England, and, in 1768, was returned to parliament for Middlesex. As, however, he was not allowed to take his seat, the people regarded the proceedings against him as a violation of popular freedom. Wilkes became the idol of the mob, which looked upon him as the persecuted champion of liberty, and tumults arose in various parts of the country, in which several persons were killed. It was not till 1774 that Wilkes was allowed to take his seat in the House.

24. Another more serious blunder of Grenville's was committed in 1764, when, for the sake of increasing the revenue, he imposed duties on several articles of American commerce, and at the same time proposed to extend to the American colonies the English stamp duties. This last tax seems to have been especially hateful to the colonists, for when the measure became known in America, it created the greatest excitement: meetings were held in all the colonies, and resolutions were passed denying to the mother country the right to tax the colonies without their consent. The bill was passed in 1765, and in the same year the administration was undertaken by the Marquis of Rockingham, who, on the advice of Pitt, in 1766, repealed the Stamp Act, and thus restored peace for a time. But the ministry of Rockingham had to give way to Pitt, who, on entering on his second administration, was created Earl of Chatham. As, however, his health began to fail, the chief business devolved upon Charles Townshend, who, in order to raise the revenue, in 1767, imposed import duties in America on glass, paper, painters' colours, and tea. The scenes of 1765 were repeated, and riots occurred in several places. In consequence of this the British government, giving way, abolished the above-mentioned duties ~~and~~ those on tea. This did not diminish the

irritation, and the colonists, determined not to pay the duty, formed associations pledging themselves not to use the taxed articles.

25. In the meantime there were frequent changes of the ministry. Townshend died in 1767, and was succeeded by **Lord North**. Chatham resigned his place in 1768; but, when he was restored to health, he came forward as a vehement opponent of the government. The Americans for a time remained quiet, and it was not till 1773 that serious disturbances occurred. In that year three ships laden with tea arrived at Boston, when a number of men, disguised as Indians, boarded them, and threw the cargoes into the sea. Some stringent measures, adopted in consequence of this outrage, completed the rupture between the colonies and the mother country. In May 1775, Massachusetts, with eleven other colonies, sent delegates to Philadelphia, where they resolved to cut off all commercial intercourse with England, so long as the hated statutes were not repealed.

26. The cause of the colonies was supported in the British Parliament by the ablest men, as Chatham, Bute, and C. J. Fox; but their advice was not heeded, and measures of coercion were adopted. The congress at Philadelphia had appointed **George Washington** commander-in-chief, and the first blood had been shed in April, in an affair at Lexington, where General Gage had a conflict with the Massachusetts militia; and a few days later a regular battle was fought at **Bunker's Hill**, between an army of ten thousand Englishmen under the command of Gage, and the Americans under Washington, in which the English suffered very severely. The war was now carried on by the Americans with great vigour. Canada was invaded and Quebec blockaded, though the Canadians showed little sympathy with the revolted colonies. On the 4th of July 1776, the congress issued the formal declaration of the **Independence of the North American States**. The war was continued with

25. In 1774, Louis XV. died, and was succeeded by his grandson, Louis XVI. In the year before this, Pope Clement XIV. abolished the order of the Jesuits.

unabated vigour, and Washington was generally very successful, though he had often to contend with great difficulties. When, in 1777, the Americans had gained the great battle of **Saratoga**, Louis XVI. of France openly espoused their cause, and allowed Lafayette and other nobles to enter the American service. We cannot here follow the war in its details; it is sufficient to state that, owing to the almost uninterrupted success of the colonists, Lord North was inclined to make peace on any terms short of the independence of the colonies. **Chatham**, though in feeble health, opposed such a peace with all the powers of his eloquence, although he, too, acknowledged the rights of the colonies. This effort was too much for him; he fainted in the House, and died soon after at **Hayes**, in **Kent**.

27. The Americans declined entering into any negotiations with England, and the war was continued for five years longer. In 1779, **Spain**, and afterwards **Holland**, also became involved in the war, so that England had to contend not only against America, but against France, Spain, and Holland. The French even contemplated an invasion of England. In America fortune seemed to favour the English arms; but when, in 1781, Lord **Cornwallis** with seven thousand men capitulated, and surrendered **York Town**, the war on land was virtually at an end; but at sea it was continued on a grand scale—in the **North Sea** against the Dutch, in the **British Channel** and the **Mediterranean** against France and Spain. **Minorca** surrendered to the enemy, after a brave defence, in 1782; but **Gibraltar** maintained itself most gallantly under **General Elliot**, against fearful odds.

28. The successes gained by the English at sea put an end to the war with France and Spain; and with America a separate preliminary peace was concluded at **Paris**, towards the end of 1782, and finally settled in the following year. In this peace England recognised the independence of the American States, and various restitutions were made in the **West Indies**, **Africa**, and **India**. **Spain** received the two **Floridas** and **Minorca**; to France

was given the island of St. Pierre, Miquelon, Chandernagore, Pondicherry, and other possessions. The Dutch also received back what they had lost. This protracted war with America added a hundred millions to our national debt, and was for the time a great calamity to England; but the results of the American independence have in the end become a blessing to both nations.

29. It is now time to turn our attention to the state of affairs at home. In 1778, the penal laws enacted against the Catholics in the time of William III. were repealed, and this repeal created among the Protestants, especially in Scotland, such an alarm, that immediately associations were formed to oppose the Act. In London the anti-Catholic party was headed by **Lord George Gordon**, a half-witted fanatic, who assembled in St. George's Fields a meeting of about sixty thousand persons, who walked in procession to Westminster to petition parliament to repeal the recent Act in favour of the Catholics. As this was refused, the mob attacked and destroyed the Catholic chapels, forced open the prisons, and set fire to several parts of the town. For several days London was entirely at the mercy of the mob. At last, however, the rioters were overpowered by the military, though not until nearly five hundred persons had been killed or wounded. Twenty-one of the ringleaders were executed, and Lord Gordon ended his days in Newgate.

30. In 1782, Lord North resigned his premiership, and was succeeded by **Rockingham**. About the same time there gradually arose a desire for constitutional reforms, in consequence of which the two great political parties of Tories and Whigs became more sharply marked, while a third, or Radical party, was headed by such men as **Wilkes** and **Horne Tooke**. **William Pitt**, the second son of Chatham, and the leading spirit among the Whigs, proposed a reform of the system of electing members of parliament; but, although such a reform was reserved for a later period, some substantial improvements were introduced in the House of Commons, which are still the law of the land. **Rockingham** died in the same year in

which he had entered upon his second ministry, and was succeeded by Lord Shelburne, under whom Pitt became chancellor of the exchequer; but, after some further changes, Pitt rose to the head of the government, and maintained his position, with one brief interruption, until his death in 1806. His great ability and popularity at once secured him a large majority in parliament, and many of the great measures passed a generation later, such as parliamentary reform, Catholic emancipation, the abolition of slavery, and others, were for the first time brought forward by that eminent minister.

31. George III. was a thorough Conservative, or Tory, in his sentiments; while his son George, the Prince of Wales, threw himself into the arms of the Whigs, and in other respects led a life which could not but excite the displeasure of his father. He incurred enormous debts by his extravagance, and his residence in London was the scene of disgraceful revelries and debauchery. These things brought about an estrangement between father and son. In 1788, the king was seized with an attack of mental derangement; but while parliament was discussing the regent to be appointed, the king recovered.

32. The year 1789 is marked by the outbreak of the great French Revolution. We cannot here enter into the causes and the progress of that mighty outburst of popular indignation against oppression and the abuses of centuries. But the shock of the convulsion did not affect France alone: it was felt more or less in all the countries of Europe. At first the movement found many and powerful sympathisers in this country, especially among the Whigs; but the frightful excesses of the Parisian mob soon filled all reasonable men with horror and disgust. In 1792, the French republicans called upon all nations to assert their freedom, and promised their support, and democratic clubs were formed in several parts of England. When at length, in January 1793, Louis XVI. was executed, all the monarchies of Europe

31. In 1786, Frederick the Great died, and was succeeded by his nephew, Frederick William II., who reigned till 1797.

looked upon the bloody deed as a crime that ought to be avenged. While our government was still hesitating what to do, the French declared war against England and Holland, and their armies overran the countries bordering on France. The Duke of York, the king's second son, was sent out with an army into Belgium, but could effect nothing, and returned home. The English fleet, under Admiral Hood, took possession of Toulon, which was held by the French royalists; but, as the town became untenable, the fleet withdrew, and took Corsica; while Lord Howe defeated the French fleet off Ushant in 1794, capturing twelve ships of the line. An attempt on the part of England to conclude peace came to nothing.

33. Plans were now formed for an invasion of England. Two of these proved failures: one expedition, led by Hoche, attempted to make a descent upon Ireland, and the other intended to land an army on the south coast of England. As Holland had been conquered by the French, and Spain had allied itself with them, the attack was now to be made by their combined fleets. That of Spain, though vastly superior to the English, was attacked, under the command of John Jervis, off **Cape St. Vincent**, in February 1797, and completely defeated. Horatio Nelson, who had already distinguished himself in the capture of Corsica, was mainly instrumental in gaining this victory. The French and Dutch fleets experienced a similar fate off Camperdown.

34. While the English arms were thus victorious everywhere, affairs at home were anything but satisfactory. Owing to the enormous expenses of the war, public credit had sunk very low, and the Bank of England had to suspend cash payments. In addition to this, the seamen of the Channel fleet in 1797 mutinied, partly because of their low pay, and partly on account of the severity of the discipline. When, however, the grievances of the men were remedied, the ships, one after

89. In 1795, Poland was cut up and finally divided among Russia, Austria, and Prussia, a measure which has caused discontent and rebellions down to the most recent times.

another, returned to their duty; and Parker and other leaders of the mutiny were executed, while the rest were pardoned.

35. In 1798, General Bonaparte undertook his famous expedition to Egypt. Nelson followed him, and almost totally destroyed the French fleet in the battle of the Nile. At home the government had to contend with revolutionary agitations, and to prosecute men for sedition; while Ireland, which had long been in a very unsettled state, had been incited by the French Revolution to demand extensive reforms. Several privileges were granted, or rather old restrictions were removed; but, not being satisfied with these measures, the Irish entered into a treasonable correspondence with the French, the result of which was the above-mentioned attempt of Hoche to land a force in Ireland. In 1797 the country had been placed under military law; for the Irish were aiming at nothing less than an Irish republic, independent of England. In 1798 a general insurrection was planned; but it was betrayed, and put down with a great deal of cruelty and bloodshed. The rebellion was finally crushed by General Lake at Vinegar Hill, near Wexford. It had, however, become evident that some decisive measures were absolutely necessary, and in May 1800, Pitt proposed the Union of Ireland with Great Britain, which was accepted by the English parliament, and carried through that of Ireland by means of bribes and threats; for the Irish generally had a strong dislike to the measure. However, the union took effect on January 1, 1801, and Ireland henceforth sent one hundred members to the English parliament, and thirty-two Irish peers, elected for life, to the House of Lords. The Irish and English Protestant churches were united, so as to have the same doctrines and the same forms of worship.

36. In 1800, Malta was surrendered to the English,

35. In 1799, the war against France was continued on the Continent, and Bonaparte took forcible possession of the French Republic with the title of First

after a blockade of two years. Russia, Denmark, and Sweden agreed upon an armed neutrality in the war against Bonaparte. When in the following year the united parliament of the three kingdoms met, Pitt proposed to make certain concessions to the Irish Catholics; but, as the king refused, Pitt resigned, thinking at the same time that his retirement might facilitate the conclusion of peace with France. He was succeeded by Addington. As Prussia now also joined the northern league, an English fleet was sent into the Baltic, which, by the bombardment of Copenhagen, detached Denmark from the confederacy; but the league was soon after broken up, and a new one was formed between Britain, Sweden, and Denmark. On the whole, England may be said to have been successful during that year; for not only had the northern league been broken up, but the French had been defeated at Alexandria. At length a peace with France was concluded, in March 1802, at **Amiens**, in which England agreed to give up all her colonial conquests except Ceylon and Trinidad, to restore Egypt to Turkey, Malta to the knights of St. John, and the Cape of Good Hope to Holland.

37. But Napoleon soon found reasons to pick a fresh quarrel, complaining that Malta was not evacuated quickly enough, and that French refugees found an asylum in England. After the peace, large numbers of English had gone to France, and Napoleon now ordered them all to be arrested. This completed the rupture, and Napoleon formed the plan of invading England from **Boulogne**. A large camp was formed, a flotilla of gunboats was assembled, and most extensive preparations were made in all the French ports. The insolence and the outrages committed by Napoleon at last led all the European states to unite against him, with the exception of Prussia, which, by keeping aloof, hoped to obtain Hanover, which was then in the hands of the French. At Boulogne everything was ready, and the fleets from

37. In 1804, Napoleon was crowned at Paris by the Pope as Emperor of the French.

Toulon and Spain were to sail to the West Indies, there to assemble, and thence to return to Europe. It was expected that their united efforts would be able to defy any English armament. But this scheme was thwarted by Sir Robert Calder, who gained a victory over the returning fleets, not far from Cape Finisterre, in 1805. Nelson had in the meantime twice attacked the fleet at Boulogne without success, and had in vain pursued the fleets on their way to the West Indies; but on the 21st of October he fought the splendid battle of **Trafalgar**, and compelled the French admiral Villeneuve to take shelter in Cadiz. The victory was complete, but Nelson was killed. "Thank God! I have done my duty," were the last words spoken by the dying hero, as he closed a career of fame by a death of glory, and established a clear and unquestioned title to the first place in the proud roll of England's most illustrious naval commanders. This victory put an end to all fear of invasion; but the joy of the English people was marred by the news of the gallant Nelson's death.

38. The great army assembled at Boulogne was now suddenly turned against Austria. Pitt, who had displayed the utmost energy in prosecuting the war against the unprincipled enemy, was worn out by the excitement of the times, and died in 1806. He was succeeded by Lord Grenville, of whose ministry Fox was the leading spirit; but Fox too died in the same year. The military achievements of England during this year were not great, while the ambition and success of Napoleon on the Continent were unbounded. He was now resolved to ruin the commerce of Britain by shutting it out from all com-

38. Some of the German princes, forming what was called the Confederation of the Rhine, placed themselves under the protectorate of Napoleon, 1806. This broke the last link which had kept together the German States, and the emperor, Francis I., who had ascended the imperial throne in 1804, withdrew from the German Empire, and took the title of Emperor of Austria. This was the end of the ancient "Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation." In the same year the power of Prussia was broken in the battle of Jena, and England was cut off from the Continent by the so-called "Continental System" of Napoleon, whose success seemed to be unbounded. In 1808 he made his brother Joseph King of Spain, while other brothers were made Kings of Naples and West-

mercial communication with the Continent. The peace of Tilsit, in 1807, between Napoleon and Russia, contained a secret article placing the fleet of Denmark at the disposal of France. In order to prevent this, a powerful English armament was sent out to demand the surrender of the Danish fleet. As this was refused, Copenhagen was invested and bombarded, and the Danish fleet had to be brought out.

39. Meanwhile, in 1808, Portugal was overrun by a French army, and Joseph, Napoleon's eldest brother, was made King of Spain. The British government sent an army, under Sir Arthur Wellesley, afterwards Duke of Wellington, to Spain, and, after two battles, the French, by the convention of Cintra, were obliged to evacuate Portugal. The French rule was by no means popular in Spain: but still, when in 1809 the British army, under Sir John Moore, advanced from Portugal into Spain, he did not meet with the support he had expected, and had to face fifty thousand French, commanded by Soult. Moore fell in the battle of Corunna, and his forces withdrew, leaving the French masters of the country. Wellesley now took the command of Spain, and gained the brilliant victory of Talavera, in which the French lost ten thousand men. But, while success was thus beginning to dawn upon our forces, an expedition to Walcheren, which was designed to take Antwerp, utterly failed, and the armament had to return home, after the loss of about seven thousand men from fever.

40. In 1810, Napoleon, having made peace with Austria, was enabled to turn a very large force into Spain, and hoped thereby to drive the "English leopards" into the sea. Massena, with eighty thousand men, met Wellesley at Busaco, and lost five thousand; but the

40. In 1812, Napoleon undertook the disastrous expedition into Russia, where nearly his whole army was destroyed by cold and famine. Henceforth Napoleon's star forsook him. Germany rallied and defeated him in October 1813, in the great battle of Leipzig. In the next year the allies entered Paris; Napoleon abdicated and went to the island of Elba. The Bourbon, Louis XVIII., was restored to the throne of his ancestors. This was the effect of the first peace of Paris, in which France was reduced to the frontiers it had had in 1792.

English fell back on the famous lines of **Torres Vedras**, which had been constructed by Wellesley, and the French, being unable to follow them there, were obliged to retreat. In the beginning of 1811, Wellington advanced from these lines, and pursued his victorious career as far as the Pyrenees, gaining victory after victory, until, towards the end of 1813, Soult was driven back into France.

41. In England, Grenville had been succeeded by the Duke of Portland, and, upon the death of the latter in 1809, Spencer Perceval became prime minister. In 1810 George III. became permanently insane, and the Prince of Wales henceforth governed the kingdom as regent during the remaining years of his father's life. Perceval was shot in the lobby of the House of Commons in 1812, and was succeeded by Lord Liverpool. About the same time America declared war against England, on account of some commercial disputes; but of this we shall have to speak hereafter. The same year witnessed the gigantic but disastrous expedition of Napoleon into Russia. Having lost in that campaign nearly half a million of men, he made a last effort at **Leipzig** in 1813, and, being thoroughly defeated there, he returned to France, whither he was followed by the allies, and forced to sign his **Abdication at Fontainebleau** in 1814. Being allowed to retain the title of emperor, Napoleon retired to Elba, and Louis XVIII., brother of Louis XVI., was proclaimed King of France. A peace was then concluded at Paris, in which England, after all her losses in men and money, and after so many brilliant victories, obtained little more than Malta, the Cape of Good Hope, Mauritius, Ceylon, and some West Indian islands. During these events Wellington, having gained the brilliant victories of Talavera, Albuera, Ciudad Rodrigo, Badajoz, Salamanca, and Vittoria, pursued the enemy into France, and defeated them again at Orthez and Toulouse. After the conclusion of the peace he spent some time in Spain to settle the affairs of that country, and then returned to *England*, where honours and wealth were showered upon

him by a grateful people for the noble victories he had won over an unscrupulous usurper and tyrant, who had trodden down nearly all Europe under his iron foot.

42. In the peace of Paris it had been arranged that a European congress should meet at Vienna to settle all the remaining details. The congress assembled on January 1, 1815, and had not far advanced, when it was surprised by the news that Napoleon had escaped from Elba, had landed at Cannes, and was received with popular acclamations. The troops, deserting the royal standard, joined Napoleon, who entered Paris, while the king took to flight. The congress at Vienna immediately declared Napoleon a public enemy, and all the states there represented agreed to unite their forces against him. Armies at once set out to meet him, and, after several minor engagements, the battle of **Waterloo** was fought, June 18, 1815, in which the allies, commanded by Wellington, completely defeated the French army. Napoleon, having lost thirty thousand men, fled to Paris, and, finding that his life was not safe, he abdicated in favour of his son. Thus ended the famous **hundred days** of his second empire, from March 21 to June 29. Napoleon surrendered to Captain Maitland, of the *Bellerophon*, and threw himself upon the hospitality of the English; but, on the advice of the allies, he was conveyed to the island of St. Helena, where he died in 1821. The **second peace of Paris**, which was signed towards the end of 1815, settled the affairs of France, but left England pretty much in the position already assigned to her.

43. The congress of Vienna continued its sittings, and distributed the countries of Europe among the different sovereigns, apparently without any regard to nationality or the wishes of the people, which, some years later, led to fresh disturbances. The enormous expenses incurred during the protracted war against Napoleon had increased our national debt to nearly eight hundred millions.

44. It has already been mentioned that in 1812 a war broke out between this country and the **United States**

D. 1820.]

4. GEORGE IV.—1820-1830.

46. The accession of George IV. was little more than a change of title, as he had already reigned for ten years as prince regent. He was born in 1762, so that on his accession he had attained the age of fifty-seven. Until his eighteenth year he had been kept in great seclusion, and almost in a state of pupilage; but when he gained his freedom he broke through all restraint, indulging in extravagance and dissipation, and parliament had to pay his debts more than once. His mind, however, was highly cultivated, and his manners very polished, and in social intercourse he was generally kind and amiable; but his good qualities were spoiled by his habits of dissipation.

47. In 1795, he married Caroline of Brunswick, to whom he conceived a great dislike. The only child of his union was the Princess Charlotte, born in 1796; and soon after her birth the parents separated. The Princess Caroline lived for some years in England, partly at Marlton and partly at Blackheath. In 1806 she was accused of unchastity; but though the royal commission appointed to inquire into the matter acquitted her of the principal charge, her conduct was censured as unbecoming her station. After this she withdrew to the Continent. When in 1820, on the accession of her husband, she returned to England to claim her rights as queen, a bill of pains and penalties was passed against her in the House of Lords, but was abandoned by the ministers, because the popular excitement was intense, and there was no hope of carrying it through the Commons. On the day of the coronation she made her appearance at Westminster Abbey, but was repulsed, and little more than a fortnight later death put an end to her troubled life. The conduct of the king towards his wife during these proceedings deprived him of the last remnant of popularity among his subjects.

48. The distress prevailing in England, in consequence of the Napoleonic wars and the depression of commerce

of America. It arose from the fact that Napoleon, by cutting off all Continental commerce with England, had provoked the English government to measures of retaliation, in consequence of which the commerce of America was nearly destroyed. This was keenly felt by the Americans, who stopped all intercourse with England. As, moreover, the English claimed the right to search all American vessels, in order to prevent English sailors serving in them, war was declared. An attack was made on Canada in 1813, and the Americans captured Toronto; but in the following year they were unsuccessful, and Washington was taken by General Ross, who burned a great part of the city. He himself was afterwards killed in an attack upon Baltimore, and the English suffered serious reverses both there and at New Orleans. This unhappy war was brought to a close by the peace of Ghent, in December 1814, in which it was settled that both countries should give up the conquests they had made.

45. England had in the meantime greatly suffered from the stoppage of commerce, and the consequent dearth of provisions, combined with heavy taxes, which were rendered unavoidable by the exigencies of the war. The agitation for parliamentary and other reforms was spreading, and the country was altogether in an uneasy condition. George III. continued in his state of mental aberration until his death, on January 29, 1820, after a reign of nearly sixty years, the longest in English history. One of his sons, the Duke of Kent, was married to Victoria, princess of Saxe-Coburg, the mother of our present queen. The Princess Charlotte, the only daughter of the prince regent, was married to Prince Leopold of Saxe-Coburg, afterwards King of the Belgians; but she died in 1817, deeply lamented by the whole nation, as she was universally beloved and the heir-presumptive to the English throne.

45. Louis XVIII. reigned in France from 1814 to 1824, when he was succeeded by Charles X., who was expelled in 1830, on the outbreak of a second revolution, which placed Louis Philip of Orleans on the throne of France.

4. GEORGE IV.—1820-1830.

46. The accession of George IV. was little more than a change of title, as he had already reigned for ten years as prince regent. He was born in 1762, so that on his accession he had attained the age of fifty-seven. Until his eighteenth year he had been kept in great seclusion, and almost in a state of pupillage; but when he gained his freedom he broke through all restraint, indulging in extravagance and dissipation, and parliament had to pay his debts more than once. His mind, however, was highly cultivated, and his manners very polished, and in social intercourse he was generally kind and amiable; but his good qualities were spoiled by his habits of dissipation.

47. In 1795, he married Caroline of Brunswick, to whom he conceived a great dislike. The only child of this union was the Princess Charlotte, born in 1796; and soon after her birth the parents separated. The Princess Caroline lived for some years in England, partly at Charlton and partly at Blackheath. In 1806 she was accused of unchastity; but though the royal commission appointed to inquire into the matter acquitted her of the principal charge, her conduct was censured as unbecoming her station. After this she withdrew to the Continent. When in 1820, on the accession of her husband, she returned to England to claim her rights as queen, a bill of pains and penalties was passed against her in the House of Lords, but was abandoned by the ministers, because the popular excitement was intense, and there was no hope of carrying it through the Commons. On the day of the coronation she made her appearance at Westminster Abbey, but was repulsed, and little more than a fortnight later death put an end to her troubled life. The conduct of the king towards his wife during these proceedings deprived him of the last remnant of popularity among his subjects.

48. The distress prevailing in England, in consequence of the Napoleonic wars and the depression of commerce,

still continued during the reign of George IV., and was increased by heavy taxation and unfavourable harvests. In addition to all this, a fearful commercial crisis occurred in 1825, a result of excessive speculation and over-trading. Many banking establishments failed, and hundreds of persons who had lived in easy circumstances were at once reduced to poverty. To mitigate the evil, systematic emigration was devised, which caused a great influx of colonists into Canada and Australia. But this and other measures could not wholly remove the evil. People began to look about for further remedies, and the opinion began to spread that the only effectual remedy lay in a reform of the system of parliamentary representation.



WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

49. This and the question of Catholic emancipation seemed absolutely to demand some kind of solution.

48. The great continental powers, in 1815, concluded the so-called Holy Alliance for mutual protection against the aspirations for political freedom which had been liberally promised when the countries were overrun by the French. Some of the most eminent men in Germany who dared to remind the governments of their promises were imprisoned, or otherwise punished.

In 1821 began the war of liberation in Greece, which ended in Turkey being obliged, in the peace of Adrianople, in 1829, to recognise the independence of

George Canning, who had been in the ministry since 1822, became prime minister in 1827. He had already given his support to a bill brought in by Sir Francis Burdett to repeal the disabilities under which the Catholics were still suffering, and the Liberal party now looked to him for such a measure; but the king declared that such a thing was incompatible with his coronation oath, and that he would resist it. Canning died the same year, and was succeeded by Viscount Goderich, who resigned after a few months, and made room for the **Duke of Wellington**, who was known to be opposed to all concession. In Ireland a regular organization had been formed by the eloquent **Daniel O'Connell**, under the name of "The Catholic Association," for the purpose of obtaining a repeal of the Catholic disabilities. A great stimulus was given to this movement in 1828, by the repeal of the old **Test and Corporation Act**, whereby Protestant dissenters were greatly benefited.

50. Just at this time O'Connell had been elected to represent the county of Clare in parliament, and it was felt that, if he were not allowed to take his seat, it might lead to very serious consequences. Such was Wellington's view, which induced him to announce a **Catholic Relief Bill**, which was brought forward by Sir Robert Peel, and passed both houses of parliament against a formidable opposition, in 1829. By this bill the Catholics were admitted to equal rights with the Protestants, except that no Catholic could become regent, lord chancellor, or viceroy of Ireland; they likewise still remained excluded from appointments in colleges and universities. In like manner the old law remained in force that an English king or queen could not marry a Catholic without the forfeiture of the crown. This bill obtained the sanction of George IV., but with great reluctance and vexation; for in the question about Catholic emancipation he had completely adopted the views of the Tories. During the latter part of his life he lived in seclusion at Windsor, where he died on June 26, 1830.

Besides the two great measures already mentioned,

members, and the remaining two to new boroughs, each of which returned one member. The constituences also were enlarged, for tenants of land with a rental of £50 a-year received a vote for the county, and householders paying a yearly rent of £10 received a vote for the borough. Similar acts were afterwards passed for Scotland and Ireland, though with some differences, especially in regard to Ireland.

56. The first reformed parliament in 1833 carried several important measures, for the Tory party seemed almost paralysed. Ten Irish bishoprics were abolished; the trade to India and China, which had hitherto been monopolised by the East India Company, was thrown open to private enterprise, and £20,000 were voted to promote elementary education. But the great measure of the session was an Act for the entire abolition of slavery in the West Indies, which was effected at a cost of £20,000,000 as compensation to the slave owners.

During the session of 1834, Lord Grey resigned, and Lord Melbourne, who succeeded him, carried an important measure for the amendment of the poor law, by which out-door relief was almost entirely done away with, while the local overseers were controlled by a central poor law board in London. The old system of granting relief to the poor had in reality been an encouragement to vice and indolence, and had demoralised the lower orders to an incredible extent. Towards the end of this year the king suddenly dismissed his ministers, and sent for Sir Robert Peel, who undertook the administration on so-called Liberal-Conservative principles. But as he was not generally trusted, and was unable to command a majority in the House, he resigned in 1835, and Lord Melbourne returned to office. Under his administration a measure for municipal reform was carried, the business of boroughs having hitherto been managed, or, rather, mismanaged, by cliques, for their own benefit. The constituencies were enlarged, and henceforth town councils were appointed by popular election. Among other improvements introduced at the same time we may men-

tion the institution of civil marriages, and the general system of registering births, marriages, and deaths, which were passed in 1836.

57. Ireland, however, still remained a source of trouble to the government, for O'Connell now headed a new agitation for the repeal of the union with England, which gave rise to many disorders, in consequence of which coercive measures had to be adopted.

William IV. died on June 20, 1837, and was succeeded in England by his niece, the Princess Victoria, and in Hanover by his brother Ernest, duke of Cumberland, as by the Salic law females are excluded from the succession in Hanover.

6. VICTORIA—1837.

58. Queen Victoria is the daughter of Edward, duke of Kent, brother of William IV., and of Victoria, daughter of Francis, duke of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, and was born on May 24, 1819. She lost her father when only nine months old, but was educated in the most careful and judicious manner by her mother. Three years after her accession, 1840, she married Prince Albert, son of the Duke of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, who afterwards obtained the title of Prince Consort. It is unnecessary here to dwell upon the public and private virtues, and the truly constitutional spirit with which Queen Victoria rules her vast domains, for they are known and appreciated by all, and we shall confine ourselves to a brief statement of the principal events which have occurred during her reign.

59. The Reform Bill of 1832, which many thought had gone too far, was considered by others not to have done enough for the people; and the latter, or radical party, were not a little irritated at the declaration of Lord John

57. It was in 1834 that the German Zollverein was formed by Prussia—a first step towards a union of the several states of that country. In Austria, Francis I. died in 1835, and was succeeded by Ferdinand.

58. By the accession of Queen Victoria, Hanover, where, by the Salic Law, she could not reign, became an independent kingdom; under Ernest Augustus, Duke of Cumberland.

Russell, in 1837, that that measure was final. The more violent portion of the party obtained the name of **Chartists**, from the fact that at a meeting held at Birmingham, in 1838, they demanded a people's charter, containing six points—universal suffrage, vote by ballot, triennial parliaments, equal electoral districts, the abolition of property qualification, and salaries for members of parliament. Their agitation was not always carried on in a lawful and constitutional manner, and the violent way in which they endeavoured to force their opinions upon the country, rendered severe measures unavoidable. Some of the leaders who openly advised the people to have recourse to physical force—Frost, Williams, and Jones—were arrested and transported for life. The result was that for some years they remained quiet, but the outbreak of the French Revolution, in 1848, gave them fresh courage, and, headed by Feargus O'Connor, they hoped by a monster demonstration to frighten the government into the concession of their demands. Some twenty thousand men, with a gigantic petition, containing, it is said, five millions of signatures, walked to Westminster. London was alarmed, and all business suspended, but a vast number of special constables and the military, stationed in various parts of the town, prevented disorders; and the mob, having delivered the petition, dispersed, without having done much mischief. Effectual precautionary measures thus put an end to what might have become formidable and dangerous.

59. In 1840, Frederick William III. of Prussia died, and was succeeded by Frederic William IV., who reigned till 1861.

Two years later China and Japan were opened to commerce with European nations.

The revolution of 1848 in France led to the abolition of royalty and the establishment of a Republic, which in its turn was overthrown by Louis Napoleon, who, in 1851, made himself Emperor of the French, imitating the example of his uncle. Hungary rises against Austria and declares itself independent; but with the assistance of Russia Haynau conquers Hungary.

In 1848, Germany also was agitated by revolutionary commotions. The German National Assembly at Frankfort; war of Germany against Denmark for the protection of Schleswig-Holstein.

In 1859, Victor Emanuel and Napoleon at war with Austria, at the end of which Austria withdraws from Lombardy.

In 1860, Savoy and Nice are ceded to France.

60. In Ireland the agitation for a repeal of the union was continued. The Catholic Relief Bill passed in the previous reign did not satisfy the Irish, and an association was formed to restore a separate Irish parliament. This association spread very rapidly, and assumed formidable dimensions; monster meetings were held, and O'Connell pledged himself to have an Irish parliament before the end of the year 1843. At last the government felt it to be its duty to interfere and forbid such meetings. The ringleaders—O'Connell, his son, and eight others—were brought to trial, and condemned to fines and imprisonment; but on their appeal to the House of Lords, the verdict was annulled. From this time the agitation ceased, until, in 1848, it grew into a rebellion, which had to be put down by main force, and Mitchell and other ringleaders were condemned to penal servitude. In 1866, the so-called Fenian conspiracy threatened to become dangerous, but again was successfully combated.

61. In the very year of Queen Victoria's accession, a rebellion broke out in **Canada**, originating in disputes between the two nationalities (French and English) of the two Canadas, which led to resistance against the constituted authorities. The rebels were supplied with troops and stores from the United States, until the unlawful proceeding was stopped by a proclamation of the president. With the help of the troops stationed in the country, and the loyal support of the inhabitants of the upper province, the insurrection was put down, and in the following year, 1838, **Lord Durham** settled the affairs of the country in a conciliatory spirit, and endeavoured to establish the union of the provinces by a popular constitution; but, being assailed by his enemies at home, he resigned. His successor, Poulett Thomson, afterwards Lord Sydenham, however, adopting the same policy, succeeded in accomplishing what Lord Durham had attempted. The two provinces were united, and the seat of government was at the same time removed from Quebec to Montreal.

62. The ministry of Lord Melbourne, whose wise and moderate councils had guided the young queen during the first years of her reign, came to an end in 1841, and was followed by that of Sir Robert Peel, who, by his liberal and moderate views, had, in the meantime, secured the confidence of the nation. The poorer classes suffered periodically from the high prices of provisions, which were the natural result of the many restrictions upon trade. In 1842, the great distress prevailing all over the country, especially in the manufacturing districts, gave rise to disturbances in some places, and the government began seriously to consider the matter. Sir Robert Peel, being at length convinced of the necessity of remedying this evil, proposed and carried a series of measures calculated to encourage commerce and manufacture, and reduced the taxation on numerous articles necessary in ordinary life. In order to make up the deficit thereby created in the revenue, he imposed a property and income tax, which fell only on the upper and middle classes, and which has been maintained ever since, being sometimes diminished and sometimes increased according to the exigencies of the state.

63. A few years' experience showed the wisdom of Peel's policy, and the idea of free trade was gaining ground every day; but what pressed most heavily upon the poorer classes were the **Corn Laws**, which did not allow the importation of foreign grain, except at a high duty. Peel therefore introduced a sliding scale, that is, in times of a bad harvest the duty was lowered, but rose again when there had been an abundant harvest. It had, however, become evident that what was called protection of native industry was a delusion, and that free trade would be the best policy. The Anti-Corn-Law League, which had been founded, in 1838, by Richard Cobden, made every effort to induce parliament to abolish those obnoxious laws. Cobden was ably supported by Villiers and John Bright. A deficiency in the harvest in 1845, and the blight which affected the potato crop, both in ~~England~~ *England* and Ireland, greatly aided the efforts of the

League, and, in 1846, Peel, in spite of the most desperate opposition of the protectionists, succeeded in carrying the abolition of the Corn Laws, leaving only one shilling duty per quarter. The opposition to their repeal had been very powerful to the last, for farmers and landowners imagined that such a measure would be their ruin. But the result has proved the contrary.

64. After having carried this and other useful measures, Sir Robert Peel retired from office, and was succeeded by Lord John Russell, who continued the commercial policy of his predecessor. Legislation has been carried on in the same liberal spirit ever since, down to the present day: the franchise has been greatly extended, by a second Reform Act in 1868, by which household suffrage has been established; the last grievances of dissenters have been removed; the Irish church has been disestablished; the universities have been thrown open to all Her Majesty's subjects, without any distinction of creed; and a law has been passed providing elementary education for the whole nation; it is only to be regretted that this last law did not precede the extension of the franchise.

65. While at home the reign of Victoria has thus been characterised by steady progress, it has not been altogether free from the troubles and horrors of war. We have already mentioned the rebellion in Canada; three years later, 1840, the English government became involved in a war between the Sultan and Mehemet Ali, pacha of Egypt, who had cast off the allegiance to his master and conquered a portion of Syria. As England would not allow the Turkish empire to be dismembered, Commodore Napier was sent out with a fleet, and having taken the principal port towns of Syria, and bombarded Acre, compelled the pacha to give up his conquests and content himself with the position of hereditary viceroy of Egypt.

66. A more formidable war broke out with Russia in 1854. The rulers of that country, being the heads of the Greek Church of Russia, had for more than a century

aimed at gaining possession of Constantinople, as the most important and convenient centre of the nations belonging to the Greek Church. The affairs of Europe were now in such a state that no power seemed likely to come to the assistance of Turkey, and a dispute between the Greek and Latin Christians about certain holy places at Jerusalem seemed to the Emperor Nicholas a favourable opportunity for attacking the "sick man," as he called the Turkish Empire. He claimed the right to act as the head of the Greek Church in Turkey, and, as this was rejected, he marched a force across the Pruth, in 1853, into Moldavia and Wallachia, whereupon the Sultan declared war against him. England and France, being opposed to the dismemberment of Turkey, now likewise declared war against Russia, and a force under Lord Raglan was sent into the Crimea, while a fleet under Sir Charles Napier sailed into the Baltic, to keep the Russians engaged in that quarter also. In this war the British soldiers gained imperishable renown by their bravery in the battles of the Alma, Balaclava, and Inkerman, but suffered severely through lack of organization and foresight, especially in regard to the commissariat and other things which have to be provided on the outbreak of a war. In 1855, the King of Sardinia also joined the allies. But the capture of the strong fortress of Sebastopol, and some other places, brought the war to a close, and a peace was concluded at Paris, in 1856, in which Russia gave up the claims which had been the cause of the war, and was further obliged to dismantle the fortifications of Sebastopol, to give up her protectorate over the Danubian principalities, and to withdraw her fleet from the Black Sea.

67. In the East wars had been carried on against the Chinese, Afghans, and Indian chiefs, almost from the commencement of the reign of Victoria, and on some occasions the British soldiers suffered severe defeats, but the ultimate consequences were generally favourable to England and the cause of civilization. Thus, although *the war against China* was scarcely justifiable, the peace

which was concluded in 1842 gave to England the island of Hong Kong, and opened several Chinese ports to English merchants. The accounts of these Eastern wars belong to the history of the East rather than to that of England, still we cannot leave unnoticed the outbreak of the terrible **Indian Mutiny**. No sooner had the Russian war ended in the humiliation of Russia, than news reached Europe of a terrible mutiny in India, which was accompanied by most horrible cruelties perpetrated by the natives against Europeans. The real cause of this mutiny lay, no doubt, in the general want of sympathy of Europeans with the native population, and it did not require much to cause a general rising. The mutiny was crushed, after much bloodshed and cruelty on both sides, in 1859; but one of its good results was, that the government of India was transferred from the East India Company to the crown, in consequence of which a secretary for India was appointed, who is assisted by a council of fifteen.

68. In 1861, the Prince Consort died of a fever at Windsor, leaving behind him a reputation for wisdom and discretion such as few men in his position could have achieved; for although on his first arrival in England he was met by much ill-feeling, simply because he was a German, he ended in being beloved and respected by all classes of Englishmen. His beneficent influence had made itself felt in every department of social life; he had been a true promoter of art and literature, and gave to British industry in particular a great and lasting impulse by the first great International Exhibition in Hyde Park, in 1851. Literature, industry, and the arts, both high and industrial, had found in him a sincere and intelligent patron.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was George I.? How was his succession regarded? Whom did George I. marry? Who were his children? Why was George's wife imprisoned? Say something of George's character. When did he show that he was not without valour?

2. Who were the principal ministers of George I.? With what party did he identify himself? What steps did the new government immediately take? What proceedings alarmed the Jacobites? Whose death deprived the exiled nobles of the hope of assistance? Where was the Pretender? What name did he go by? Who was the first to raise the standard of revolt in Scotland? Where was he defeated?

3. Who were forced to surrender at Preston? What became of the Pretender and Mar? What lords were executed?

4. What Act had been passed by parliament in 1694? What is a septennial parliament? What plan was formed by the Jacobites? In what year was this plan formed, and what was the result? Who was banished?

5. What bishoprics did George purchase, and for what purpose? Who entered into intrigues to promote the restoration of the Stuarts? What was the "quadruple alliance," and for what purpose was it formed? Where were the Spaniards defeated, and in what year? How was the Pretender treated at Madrid? What became of the fleet got ready to escort him to England? In what year did Philip join the quadruple alliance?

6. How was the administration carried on, and by whom? Who had been excluded from the court, and who brought about a reconciliation? Who entered the ministry? What offenders did he take measures to punish? How was Stanhope's death brought about?

7. What confederacy was formed, and for what purpose? With what countries did England form a defensive alliance, and in what year? When was a reconciliation brought about? What country refused to join it? For how long did the state of hostility continue between England and Spain? When did George I. die?

8. How old was George II. when he came to the throne? What possessions

was he most anxious to maintain? Who was George's queen? Name their children.

9. Who was retained by the new king at the head of the government? Who was the leader of the opposition? What bill was William Pitt obliged to give up? What were the Porteous riots?

10. Why did the Spaniards search the English vessels? What war was declared in 1739? Why did Walpole resign? What honour did the king confer upon Walpole? In what year did he die? By whom was he succeeded?

11. In what war was England involved? What was the "Pragmatic Sanction?" By what country was the Elector of Bavaria supported? What sum was voted by parliament to carry on the war, and to assist Maria Theresa? What took place in 1742? Where was a battle fought, and what was the result? Where was the first campaign opened, and what great battle was won by the French?

12. Who made preparations to throw an army upon the coast of Kent? What disaster befel the French fleet, and what was the result? Where did the Pretender land in Scotland? What great victory did he gain, and what was the result? What was the Pretender's determination? How far did he advance into England? Where did he check the army of Cumberland? What was the result of the battle of Culloden Moor? Why was Cumberland nicknamed "The Butcher?"

13. When did the old Pretender die? What became of Charles Edward, his son, and of Henry, Charles' brother?

14. Where, and in what year, was peace concluded? What was maintained by this peace, and what were France and England ordered to do? How long did the peace last? Where were disputes especially kept up?

15. With what countries did George II. conclude an alliance? What country allied itself with France? Who annoyed the French? What failure of Admiral Byng's created general indignation in England? What was the fate of the admiral?

16. What war broke out in 1756? Which side did George II. support? Why was the Duke of Cumberland obliged to withdraw from court? Who

was planning war on a gigantic scale? Where were the English armies successful? What prevented the French fleet from being completely annihilated? What island was taken from the French in 1758? What town was forced to capitulate in America, and what general was mortally wounded? When was the conquest of Canada completed?

17. By whom were the French settlements in India governed, and what was the desire of the governor? Who was Robert Clive? What town was attacked by the Rajah of Bengal, and what was the result? What was the Black Hole? What was done to Calcutta?

18. What step did Clive take, and what town did he recover? What great victory did Clive gain in 1756? What was the result of this victory? What became of Clive?

19. When did George II. die? What was the Julian year? When did the English reform their calendar?

20. Who was George III.? How had he been educated? What was the character of George III.? Who was his queen?

21. Owing to whose administration had England reached its highest glory? What conquests were made by the English in 1761? What did Pitt offer for the recovery of Minorca? What was the "Family Compact?" Why did Pitt resign his office? Who became prime minister?

22. What war was declared in 1762? Where was an English force sent, and what success did it meet with? What was the success of the English forces everywhere? Where, and in what year was peace concluded? How were affairs settled by this peace?

23. Why did Bute resign? Who undertook the administration of affairs? What was the "North Briton," and by whom was it edited? What was done with the editor? When did Wilkes return to England? How was he regarded by the mob? When was Wilkes allowed to take his seat in parliament?

24. What did Grenville do for the sake of increasing the revenue? What tax did he extend to the American colonies? What resolutions were passed in the colonies? Who undertook the administration in 1765? What bill was passed? When was the Stamp Act repealed, and at whose advice? To whom did the Rockingham ministry give way? On whom did the chief business devolve? What did Townshend do in

order to raise the revenue? What was the result?

25. When did Townshend die, and by whom was he succeeded? Why did Chatham resign, and in what year? What completed the rupture between the colonies and the mother country? What took place in 1775?

26. By what men was the cause of the colonies supported? What measures were adopted? Who was appointed commander-in-chief by the congress at Philadelphia? What was the result of the battle of Bunker's Hill? What declaration was issued, and in what year? What was the result of the battle of Saratoga? Who joined the American cause? Who was inclined to make peace? What views did Chatham take, and what became of him?

27. Who declined entering into negotiations with England, and how long was the war continued? What other countries had England to contend against in 1779? What country contemplated an invasion of England? When was the American war virtually ended on land? Against what countries was the war continued at sea? When did Minorca surrender? Under what general did Gibraltar maintain itself gallantly?

28. What put an end to the war with France and Spain? What peace was concluded at Paris, and in what year? What arrangements were made by this peace? What were the general results of the American war?

29. The repealing of what laws caused alarm among the Protestants, and especially in Scotland? Who was Lord George Gordon, and what meeting did he assemble? What steps did the mob take? What was the result of the riots, and what the fate of Lord Gordon?

30. When did Lord North resign his premiership, and by whom was he succeeded? What caused the two political parties of Tories and Whigs to become more marked? What party was headed by Wilkes and Horn Tooke? Who was the leading spirit among the Whigs? What reform did Pitt propose, and what was the result? By whom was Rockingham succeeded in the ministry? To what position did Pitt rise, and till when did he retain it? Mention some of the measures which were first brought forward by William Pitt.

31. To which political party did George III. belong? To which party did the Prince of Wales belong? What

brought about an estrangement between the king and the Prince of Wales? What was the state of the king's health in 1788?

32. For what event is the year 1789 remarkable? What happened in 1792? Who was executed in the following year? Against what countries did the French declare war? What English prince was sent with an army to Holland, and with what result? Of what island did Admiral Hood take possession? Who defeated the French off Ushant, and in what year?

33. Who led the expedition to make a descent upon Ireland? Where did another army intend to land? What countries became allies in order to invade England? What was the result of the battle fought off St. Vincent? Who was mainly instrumental in gaining this victory? What was the result of the fight off Camperdown?

34. What caused public credit to sink very low in England? What was the cause of the mutiny in the fleet, and what was the result?

35. By whom was an expedition to Egypt undertaken, and in what year? What was the result of the battle of the Nile? With what had the government to contend at home? What did the Irish demand? What had been the cause of Hoche's attempt to land a force in Ireland? At what was Ireland aiming? In what year was an insurrection planned, and by whom was it crushed? What measure did Pitt propose, and what was the result? When did the union of Ireland with England take place? How many members do the Irish send to the English parliament?

36. In what year was Malta surrendered to the English? What countries agreed to an armed neutrality in the war against Bonaparte? Why did Pitt resign, and by whom was he succeeded? What country joined the northern league? What bombardment detached Denmark from the confederacy? What new league was formed? Where had the French been defeated? When was the treaty of Amiens concluded, and what was agreed?

37. What reason did Napoleon find for picking a quarrel? What completed the rupture? What led to the European states forming an alliance against Napoleon? What country kept aloof, and with what object? What scheme was thwarted by Sir Robert Calder, and

where was a great victory won in 1805? Who won the famous battle of Trafalgar? What were the last words of Nelson? What marred the joy of the English people on hearing of the victory of Trafalgar?

38. Against what country was the great army at Boulogne turned? When did Pitt die, and by whom was he succeeded? Whose ruin was Napoleon determined upon? What was the peace of Tilsit, and in what year was it concluded? Why did the English demand the surrender of the Danish fleet, and what was the result?

39. In what year was Napoleon's brother made King of Spain? Who led an army into Spain? What were the French obliged to do? By whom was the English army commanded at the battle of Corunna? What was the result of the battle, and who was killed? Who gained the victory of Talavera? What expedition utterly failed?

40. What peace was concluded in 1810? Where did Wellesley lose five thousand men? What place did he fall back upon, and what was the result? What success attended the English? In what year was Soult driven back into France?

41. Who became prime minister upon the death of the Duke of Portland? When did George III. become permanently insane? Who was made regent? Who was shot in the House of Commons in 1812? Who became prime minister? What country declared war against England? What disastrous expedition took place? Where was Napoleon defeated, and in what year? In what year was Napoleon forced to sign his abdication? To what island did Napoleon retire? Who was proclaimed King of France? What did England obtain by the peace of Paris? What victories did Wellington gain? How did the English receive Wellington on his return after so many brilliant victories?

42. What had been arranged at the peace of Paris? What news surprised the congress at Vienna? What took place at Paris? What did the congress agree to do? When was the battle of Waterloo fought, and what was the result? What was Napoleon obliged to do? How long did the second empire last? To what island was Napoleon conveyed? When did he die? When was the second peace of Paris concluded?

43. What measures were taken by

the congress at Vienna? To what sum was the national debt in England increased?

44. What led to the renewal of war with America? What right did the English claim? What place was captured by the Americans? What town was taken by General Ross? Where did the English suffer serious reverses? What was settled at the peace of Ghent? In what year was this peace concluded?

45. What caused England to be in an uncomfortable position? When did George III. die? How long had he reigned? Whom did the second son of George III. marry? Whom did the Princess Charlotte marry, and when did she die? Why was her death deeply lamented?

46. When was George IV. born, and how old was he when his father died? What was the general character of George IV.?

47. Whom did George IV. marry? Who was the only child of George IV.? Why did the Princess Caroline retire to the Continent? What bill was passed against her in 1820? What happened on the day of coronation, and what became of the queen?

48. How was the distress occasioned by the Napoleonic wars increased? What was advised to mitigate the evil? What opinion spread with regard to a remedy?

49. What questions demanded some kind of solution? Who became prime minister in 1827? To what bill had the prime minister already given his support? Who declared he would resist the bill? By whom was Canning succeeded in the ministry, and when did the new minister resign? Who became prime minister? What was the Catholic Association, and who had formed it? What Act was repealed, and what was the result?

50. What induced Wellington to announce the Catholic Relief Bill? By whom was this bill brought forward, and when was it passed? Explain the Catholic Relief Bill? What were the views of George IV. with regard to the bill? Where did George pass the latter years of his life, and when did he die? What great improvements were made in this reign? What measures were discussed, but postponed to a later date?

51. Mention the military undertakings in the reign of George IV. When was the battle of Navarino fought, and what was the result?

52. Who was William IV.? Say something of his character. Whom did William marry?

53. What demand had become pretty general in England? In what year had the younger Pitt attempted reforms? What hope did the prevailing distress inspire? Why was the Duke of Wellington obliged to resign? By whom was he succeeded?

54. Why were reforms absolutely necessary? What bill was rejected by the Lords, and what was the result? What disease visited England?

55. In what year was the Reform Bill brought in again? Who prevailed upon the king to persuade the opposition peers to abstain from voting? What laws were contained in the Reform Bill?

56. What measures did the first reformed parliament carry? What was the greatest measure of the session of 1833? What sum was given as compensation to the slave owners? In what year did Lord Grey resign, and by whom was he succeeded? What important measure was carried by Lord Melbourne? Who undertook the administration when William dismissed his ministers, and on what principles? What was the result? What measure was carried by Lord Melbourne? What other bills were passed in 1836?

57. What gave rise to disorders in Ireland? When did William IV. die, and by whom was he succeeded?

58. Who is Queen Victoria, and when was she born? Whom did Queen Victoria marry?

59. What irritated the Radical party? Who were the Chartists? What rendered severe measures unavoidable? Who were transported for life? What gave the Chartists fresh courage, and by whom were they headed? What step did the Chartists take, and what was the result?

60. What bill did not satisfy the Irish? What association was formed, and who pledged himself to have an Irish parliament before the end of the year 1843? What sentence was passed on the ringleaders, and what was the result? When did the rebellion take place, and what sentence was passed on the ringleaders? What conspiracy threatened to become dangerous in 1866?

61. What originated the rebellion in Canada? What unlawful proceeding was stopped by a proclamation of the

president? How was the insurrection put down? Why did Lord Durham resign? Who succeeded in accomplishing what Lord Durham had attempted? To what place was the seat of government removed?

62. In what year did Lord Melbourne's ministry come to an end, and by whom was he succeeded? What was the cause of the suffering of the poorer classes? What gave rise to disturbances? What measures were carried by Sir Robert Peel? What tax was imposed upon the upper and middle classes?

63. What is a sliding scale, and why did Peel introduce it? By whom was the Anti-Corn-Law League founded? What laws did the Anti-Corn-Law League try to abolish? By whom was Cobden supported? What aided the efforts of the League? What did Peel succeed in doing? What did farmers and landowners imagine?

64. By whom was Sir Robert Peel succeeded? What was the reform of 1868? Mention what other laws have been passed?

65. In what year did England become involved in the war between the Sultan and Mehemet Ali, pacha of Egypt? What would England not allow? Who was

sent out with a fleet, and what was the result?

66. What was the cause of the war with Russia? What moment seemed favourable to the Emperor Nicholas for attacking Turkey? What did the emperor claim? When did he march into Moldavia and Wallachia, and what was the result? What countries declared war against Russia? Who commanded the force sent to the Crimea, and who commanded the fleet? In what battles did the British soldiers gain imperishable renown for their bravery? From what did they suffer? What king joined the allies in 1855? What brought the war to a close? What was settled by the peace of Paris in 1856?

67. What wars were carried on in the East, and what was the result? What did England gain by the peace of 1842? What news reached Europe at the close of the Russian war? What was the cause of the mutiny? In what year was it crushed? Mention one of the good results of the Indian mutiny.

68. When did the Prince Consort die? Give a general outline of his character. How did he give a great and lasting impulse to British industry?



ALBERT MEMORIAL.

SKETCHES OF THE PROGRESS

IN

LITERATURE, ART, SCIENCE, COMMERCE,
MANUFACTURE, &c.

THERE is nothing more astonishing in the history of the world than the story of the progress of England from the earliest times until now. Long before Cæsar landed, the Phœnicians had come from the far East to possess themselves of the mineral treasures of the Scilly Isles; and there are some who think it by no means improbable that English metal may have been used in the construction of Solomon's temple. Be that as it may, the people themselves made but slight use of their mineral wealth. Their implements were at one time made of stone; though at a later period we find them making knives, swords, and arrowheads out of bronze—a mixture of copper and tin, which is said to have been imported into Britain. Their clothing consisted of the skins of beasts, except in the south, where they were sometimes visited by Gallic merchants, from whom they learned something of civilization. Before Cæsar's galleys appeared off the coast of Kent, the Briton could carry his biggest ship upon his back, for it consisted only of wicker-work covered with hide. How strikingly do these facts contrast with the use now made of our mineral wealth, and with the naval glory of which we are in these days so proud!

The Romans were the first to teach the useful arts to the Briton; but he was slow to learn, and it was not till the bold and enterprising Saxon appeared in the land that what we must call the real progress of England commenced.

I. THE SAXON PERIOD. (410—1066.)

LITERATURE.—Of the earlier portion of this period there is little to tell. It was only after the introduction of Christianity that a literature began to develop. The monasteries then became the schools, and the friars the teachers, of the time. Books were few and precious, and generally were written in the Latin language. The most notable prose writer was the **Venerable Bede**, a monk of Wearmouth, who wrote in Latin *The History of the Church of the Angles*, which, as has been mentioned, was afterwards translated into Anglo-Saxon by **King Alfred**. This distinguished sovereign became the translator and editor of several other well-known Latin works, such as **Boethius' Treatise on the Consolation of Philosophy**, and the *History of Orosius*. The only poet of note who wrote in Anglo-Saxon was **Caedmon**, a cowherd in connection with a monastery at Whitby. His poetry consists of paraphrases of portions of the Bible. Among the few other remarkable persons may be mentioned the name of **Gildhas**, the first historian of Britain; of **Aldhelm**, the famous Latinist; of **Alcuin**, the confidential friend and adviser of Charlemagne; and of **John Scotus**, the most celebrated scholar of his day. It was during this period that the two great English universities are said to have been founded.

INDUSTRIES.—The occupations of the bulk of the Anglo-Saxons were the breeding of cattle, war, and the chase. Their wants were simple and easily supplied. Their houses, though strong, were rudely built, and their manner of life was coarse and almost savage. The females were more industrious than the men, and made what articles of clothing were then in use. A few foreign workers in glass had arrived at Wearmouth; but the people were utterly ignorant of the art. Painting on glass, bell-making, etc., were often the occupations of the leisure hours of the friars, a knowledge of these arts having been derived from the Continent.

COINAGE.—The silver coins of the Anglo-Saxons were

called **pennies**, and were equal in value to two shillings of our money. The **styca** was the only copper coin, and was rather over the value of our penny. The money, both silver and copper, was miserably made, and the designs were curious and grotesque.

II. THE EARLY NORMAN PERIOD (1066—1154.)

LITERATURE.—William the Conquerer was fond of learning, and brought with him from Normandy several scholarly men, who did great service to the cause of education and literature. Among these were **Lanfranc** and **Anselm**, who occupied high positions in the church, and, both by practice and precept, encouraged the people to greater diligence in their studies. Schools were now, for the first time, established apart from monasteries. French became the court language, and every effort was made to make it the language of the country; but the Saxons held most obstinately to their own expressive tongue, and ultimately compelled their conquerors to speak it too. The best history of this period is to be found in **The Saxon Chronicle**, which was compiled at various times by monks in the different monasteries to which they belonged. The greater number of the writers of this time still wrote in Latin. The principal authors were **William of Malmesbury** (1095-1150), **Henry of Huntingdon** (1108-1168), and **Geoffrey of Monmouth** (died in 1130), all of whom were chroniclers. The last-mentioned author wrote a history so fanciful as to be entirely unworthy of credit; but it is, nevertheless, remarkable as containing *The Story of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table*, from which so many poets have taken material for some of their most successful productions. The Normans were the first to introduce romances, so called because they were written in a language derived from the Roman, or Latin tongue. They told of the wonderful adventures of heroes, in delivering the unfortunate from giants, monsters, etc.

INDUSTRY.—The invasion of a people like the Nor-

mans, who, during their sojourn in France, had adopted the language and manners of the Romanised Gauls, was certain to have a civilising effect upon the Anglo-Saxons. We now find their manners undergoing a gradual change for the better; and a certain degree of etiquette is introduced which had a very refining influence. The progress of industry exhibited itself in improvements in the construction of new roads and bridges. At this time, too, began the trade in wool; which, ere long, was to be the principal article of commerce.

COINAGE.—There was little or no change in the money, except that silver **halfpennies** were occasionally used. These were of the value of about one shilling of our money.

III. THE PLANTAGENET, OR LATER NORMAN PERIOD. (1154—1485.)

LITERATURE.—During this period we have the gradual amalgamation of the Saxons and the Normans. This change is very perceptible in the language of the country, which is now called **Semi-Saxon**. This change consists partly in the introduction of French words, but more especially in the modifications which took place in the old Saxon. Thus the plural endings *as* and *en* now become *es*, the pronoun *hine* is changed into *him*, and *to* is introduced before the infinitive. The best examples of these changes are to be found in the *Brut* of **Layamon**, a Worcestershire priest; a rhyming translation of a French poem relating to Britain. As the language lost more and more of its Germanic inflections, and became simpler in its grammar, it became what has been called **Old English** and **Middle English**, to mark two stages in its advance towards the **Modern English** which we now speak and write. Old English seems to have been used in the thirteenth century, and the best illustration of it is the rhyming chronicle of **Robert of Gloucester** (1230-1285); *but there were many similar chronicles about this time.* **Middle English** was spoken for a much longer period

than that last mentioned, and the authors are of much greater importance. **Gower** (1320-1402) wrote well in the three languages then common in the country, viz., French, Latin, and English. But all previous poets were now eclipsed by **Geoffrey Chaucer** (1328-1400), who has been styled the Father of English Poetry. His principal work is *The Canterbury Tales*, a series of stories supposed to be told by pilgrims on their way from London to the shrine of Thomas à Becket, at Canterbury. The *Prologue*, or opening poem, is very valuable, as containing animated descriptions of the various characters of the time. **Sir John Mandeville** (1300-1372) wrote contemporaneously with Chaucer, and is the first English author on the subject of foreign travel. His work, like Gower's, was written in three languages. **John Wycliffe** (1324-1372), the earliest English reformer, is notable as having written the *First English Translation of the Bible*, which was not only the largest prose work that had yet appeared, but was of singular value on account of the important results which came of it. In Scotland, **John Barbour** (1320-1395) had written a very readable poem about King Robert Bruce.

ART.—The only art of any consequence was that of **architecture**. The pointed arch, and other Gothic characteristics hitherto in vogue, were somewhat altered by the introduction of the rounded arch, usually styled Norman.

SCIENCE.—The sciences were as yet in their infancy, although there were earnest men like **Roger Bacon** (1214-1292) and **Michael Scott**, who were trying hard to get light. But these men were regarded as wizards; and Bacon was imprisoned by ignorant priests, who thought he must have something to do with Satan. To Roger Bacon we are indebted for the magnifying-glass. The students of the stars, in those days, looked up to the sky as to a book of fate; and regarded the planets, not to gain a knowledge of them, but to find out what influence they had, or were thought to have, on the lives and destinies of men. This so-called science was named

Astrology, and became the parent of astronomy. In like manner, **Alchemy** preceded chemistry. It was the popular belief that, by means of certain chemical combinations, a stone might be made which would change the baser metals, iron and lead, into gold. The alchemists also endeavoured to discover an Elixir of Life, by the drinking of which men might live for ever. These wonderful things were never found out; but in the search for them a knowledge was gained which was to prove invaluable.

During this time, candles were substituted for torches; gunpowder was invented by Schwartz at Cologne (1340), and the first cannons were used by Edward III. at the Battle of Crecy (1346).

TRADE AND INDUSTRY.—As the Saxons and the Normans were gradually becoming one people, they began with singleness of purpose to advance the interests of England. Trade was showing progress. France now found a market for her wines; Russia, for her furs; the Netherlands, for woollen and linen goods; while the far countries of the East sent gold, silk, and spices. England, on the other hand, exported wool, tin and lead, salmon, and sometimes even slaves. Before the time of Richard I., the Jews were the goldsmiths, jewellers, and bankers of the people; and **letters of credit** were used for the first time in the reign of John.

The only manufacture of any consequence as yet, was the making of woollen goods at Worsted and Norwich; but it does not seem to have thriven at first, for we find Edward III. inviting more Flemish weavers to settle in England centuries after their predecessors had originally come to the country. The mining operations were of a very limited nature. The tin mines of Cornwall had been wrought for a long time, and iron had been used in tolerable quantity; but so long as the people lacked a sufficiency of fuel for smelting purposes, the progress must have been slow. Coal was discovered at Newcastle in 1233 (in Scotland, earlier), but it was by no means a *favourite*; for we read that when, in the fourteenth cen-

tury, the London brewers tried the new fuel, the smoke was found so disagreeable that an Act was passed forbidding the use of it. Those who had tried it, however, found it to do so well that they persevered in spite of the new law. The government then declared that the burning of the new mineral would be considered a capital crime; and it is on record that at least one man was executed for continuing the use of coal. At present, the Londoners burn more than seven millions of tons of coal annually.

COINAGE.—In the reign of Edward III., gold nobles were introduced. These were of the value of six shillings and eightpence, and are considered to be really beautiful coins.

IV. THE LANCASTRIAN AND YORKIST PERIOD.

(1369—1485.)

LITERATURE.—In consequence of the wars with France in the earlier portion of this period, and the civil strife of the later, the literary progress of England was slow. **Fortescue** (1395-1485) and **Lyttleton**, two lawyers of the time, wrote works on the subject of the English Constitution; but the poets, in England at least, were scarcely worthy the name, being mere rhymsters who wrote on historical subjects. Of these **Occleve** and **Lydgate** (1375-1461) are best remembered, because they helped to modernise the language which belongs to Middle English. There were no rules for spelling, every one having an orthography to suit himself. The **English Drama** was now in its infancy. The clergy of the time taught their people the stories of the Bible by performing them in the churches. These performances are called **Miracle Plays**. In the reign of Henry VI., **Moral Plays** took the place of the miracles. They were performed by men who personated qualities, such as Virtue and Vice. They were like the persons we read about in Bunyan's "Pilgrim's Progress." Plays of this kind were called allegorical. In Scotland the leading author was **James V.**

who strove hard to advance learning among his subjects. During his imprisonment in Windsor Castle he became very fond of Chaucer's works, and has imitated him in his own manner of writing. *The King's Quhair*, or book, is his principal poem, and it describes the romantic story of his love. The universities of **St. Andrews** and **Glasgow** were founded during this period; the former in 1411, and the latter in 1451.

It is needless to add that the introduction of printing by William Caxton (1410-1491) gave an impulse to literature such as it had never yet received; and it will be seen, when we come to discuss the next period, how rapidly the results of it began to manifest themselves.

SCIENCE.—Little that is new has to be recorded of this time. **Surgery** seems to have been an unpopular study; for there was only one surgeon, with a few assistants, to attend to the wounded at the Battle of Agincourt. The study of the stars, however, seems to have advanced; for we find **Halley's comet** first observed in England in 1456. This comet appeared when the Turks were carrying all before them, and were threatening to become the masters of Europe. It was regarded as an evil omen, and a prayer common at the time was, "Save us from the devil, the Turk, and the comet!"

TRADE AND INDUSTRY.—At the close of the Plantagenet period, the folly of Richard II. had done much to check the progress of commerce, and the wars of the succeeding dynasties also had an evil effect upon trade. But it did not stand still, notwithstanding these hindrances. Villeinage (slavery) having been abolished, there were more persons interested in commerce than before. Wool was still the staple commodity; but it had now become so excellent in quality as to rival the fine wools of Spain, and was therefore in greater demand than ever. To the exports must now be added guns and gunpowder; and to the imports, wines from Spain and Portugal. Among the most successful merchants were **Cannyng** and **Whittington**, whose story is well known in connection with his cat. Suffice it to say, that these men became very wealthy,

and spent their money worthily in erecting fountains, in founding hospitals, and in contributing liberally to the charities of the time.

The art of glass-making had become by this time well known; and the improvements in the art of shipbuilding were important, the largest vessels being now about 900 tons burthen. But the art, of all arts the chief, was that of printing. This invention is variously ascribed to the Dutchman, **Lawrence Coster**, and to the German **Gutenberg**, of Mainz. However that may be, the use of type was first introduced into England in 1474, by **William Caxton**, who set up a printing-press in Westminster, and produced the first book ever printed in this country. It was called *The Game and playe of the Chess*.

COINAGE.—The nobles coined in the reign of Edward III. were increased in value to ten shillings, and were called **rials**; and what had formerly been named nobles were now called **angels**. In the time of Edward VI. **crowns** and **half-crowns** were first coined. They were so called on account of the device of a crown stamped on similar coins in circulation on the Continent. It is worthy of remark that, previous to this period, the money had been merely punched out of the solid metal, and had, therefore, a certain raggedness about the edges. In Elizabeth's time a new machine—the **Mill and Screw**—was invented, by which coins were made to have neatly-indented edges, as most of our silver coins now have.

V. THE TUDOR PERIOD. (1485—1603.)

LITERATURE.—As has been already stated, the invention of printing was of invaluable service to the cause of learning and literature; but there was now also a great revival in the study of Latin, Greek, and Hebrew. Numerous schools and colleges were being founded by **Wolsey** and others. The old monasteries fell in the time of Henry VIII., and with them the schools so long attached to them. Students stood between the old ways

of thought and the new, scarcely knowing which were better. It was a time of transition. It is remarkable that during this period the ladies of England were more studiously inclined than ever before or even since. Queen Mary and Queen Elizabeth knew the classical languages, and two or more modern ones; and the unfortunate Lady Jane Grey derived consolation in the hour of death from her Greek Testament. Such excellent examples made the ladies of the land, if only for fashion's sake, to study with diligence.

The language is greatly indebted to **Sir Thomas Wyatt** and **Henry Howard**, afterwards **Earl of Surrey** (1516-1547), for the grace and smoothness which, till now, it had lacked. The latter poet is notable as having been the first to introduce the **English sonnet**, a poem fourteen lines long, with peculiarities in the arrangement of the rhymes. For the first time also, **blank verse** was introduced by Surrey in his translation of a portion of **Virgil's *Aeneid***. This blank verse is so called because it has no rhymes. Within a comparatively short period the New Testament was translated by **Tyndale** (1485-1536), and the whole Bible was afterwards (in 1535) published by **Miles Coverdale**. This last translation was rendered necessary because Wycliffe's version had become almost unreadable. Of the Scottish poets there were two who merit distinction; these were **William Dunbar** (about 1500) and **Gavin Douglas** (about 1510), both priests, the latter a bishop. The former wrote allegorical poems, and the latter first translated the whole of **Virgil's** great poem into English.

Modern English is considered to have begun about the middle of the sixteenth century, and the most noteworthy fact in connection with its beginning is the rapid development of dramatic literature. The **Miracle** and the **Moral Plays** were over, and now began the real drama. The earliest **tragedy** was ***Gorboduc***, or ***Ferrex and Porrex*** (1562), and was written by **Sackville**; the earliest **comedy**, ***Ralph Royster Doyster*** (1551), written by **Udall**; but, only fourteen years later, a much more

amusing production followed, called *Gammer Gurton's Needle*, by **John Still**. This last brings out, very humorously, the fuss made about the loss of a needle—at that time a most rare and valuable instrument. Until then the dramatic authors were but as the faint stars of the morning hours, for ere long **William Shakespeare** rises like the sun in his glory, and eclipses them all. This illustrious poet was born at Stratford-on-Avon in 1564. He was part proprietor of one of the earliest theatres—the Globe, London; wrote thirty-seven plays, besides sonnets and other poems, and died at his birthplace in 1616. His poetry exhibits the deepest knowledge of human nature, and contains more wisdom than any other English book. Contemporary with Shakespeare was **Christopher Marlowe** (1562-1593), a young man who lived a dissolute life, but who, had he conducted himself otherwise, might have rivalled the great dramatist himself. As it is, he is second only, in point of merit. Among the allegorical poets, **Edmund Spenser** (1553-1598) stands first. His poem, called *The Faerie Queen*, although for the most part written in modern English, contains hundreds of words which the author made to suit himself, and to give his work an ancient aspect. Each couplet consists of nine lines, eight of which have ten syllables in each; while the last, called an Alexandrine, has twelve, this, with a peculiarity in the arrangement of the rhymes, is called the Spenserian Stanza. Among the other poets was the gallant and generous **Sir Philip Sydney** (1554-1586), who, like Surrey, wrote *Sonnets*, as also a prose romance called *Arcadia*. He is best remembered for his kindness to the dying soldier at Zutphen. The notable prose writers were **Sir Walter Raleigh** (1552-1618), **Richard Hooker** (1553-1600), and **Francis Bacon** (1561-1627). The unfortunate **Sir Walter** was one of the wonders of the age. He was courtier, soldier, sailor, discoverer, coloniser, and literary man, by turns, and excelled in almost every case. His greatest work was *The History of the World*, which he wrote while unjustly detained as a prisoner in the Tower by

James I. Hooker wrote the *Ecclesiastical Polity*, a book about the Church of England; but Bacon, although he had now written his famous *Essays*, did not produce his great book till the next period.

ART.—The architecture of the time is known as **Tudor**, or **Elizabethan**, and is sometimes called the **Florid Style**, on account of the elaborate ornamentation which was then the fashion. **Music** now began to be cultivated, and **Tallis** was the most notable composer. **Painting**, too, was being patronised; for we find **Hans Holbein**, the German painter, at the court of Henry VIII.

SCIENCE.—The progress in science was not very rapid, in England at least, at this period. In consequence, however, of the wonderful discoveries made by **Galileo**, the Italian philosopher, **Astrology** was to change its name, and to become a science indeed. **Medicine**, too, was making progress; for we find the royal doctors, headed by a medical minister named **Linacre**, forming themselves into a society or college in 1518. This was named the **Royal College of Physicians**, because the king granted them a charter. The object was to keep quacks from meddling with medical matters, and to prevent the use of other than wholesome drugs.

TRADE.—In consequence of the decline of the feudal system, the character of the sovereigns, who were now nearly absolute, had a greater effect on the interests of the country than at any former time. Thus Henry VII. was a money-loving king, and, in order to fill his treasury, became one of the keenest merchants in the land. New commercial treaties were arranged, and trade became brisk. During this reign, obscure villages, such as Liverpool and Manchester, were beginning to give evidence of growth, and were becoming every year more important. In the matter of maritime discovery, Henry VII. made some effort to imitate Spain. England narrowly escaped the honour of sending out **Columbus**; but, perhaps, she thereby escaped that "curse of gold" which at length reduced Spain to a mean position among the nations of Europe. Henry sent out **Sebastian Cabot**, who

discovered the mainland of America in 1497, but, beyond the honour, there was no immediate gain. The character of Henry VIII. was exactly the reverse of that of his father, and yet even his extravagance was of advantage to trade. He scattered abroad the treasures to which he fell heir, and in this way did excellent service to business by the increased circulation of money. His love of finery, too, was imitated by his courtiers and by the wealthier classes among the people; hence the finest cloths were imported, and the most skilful foreign workmen brought into the country. The natives regarded these with jealousy; but, having an eye to the business of the future, they got laws passed prohibiting foreigners from employing other than English apprentices, so that their skill might at length become the property of the nation. The size and tonnage of vessels had now considerably increased, and merchants were thus enabled to trade with countries far distant from home. Commercial companies were got up; some to work the Newfoundland fisheries, and others to bring to England the produce of Russia—a country at that time scarcely better known than Central Africa is now. Among the many methods of money-making, it is curious to note that the lending of money for interest was strictly forbidden, as it was deemed a direct violation of Divine law; and in the reign of Edward VI., any person lending money for usury was liable, not only to the forfeiture of his loan, but to be fined and imprisoned as for a crime. This law continued in force for twenty years; but, although it was then repealed, the interest on money was limited to ten per cent. At this time, too, an old law, making it unlawful for foreign vessels to carry English goods, was repealed, and commerce was thereby greatly benefited. In Elizabeth's time there was developed a spirit of enterprise such as no other nation had exhibited. India being now regarded as the home of wealth, numerous efforts were made to discover the shortest possible route from England. **Vasco di Gama** had already found out the Cape route; but it was believed for many a century afterwards

that there was a yet shorter way round by the north of North America, and thence by the Pacific to China and India. This route it was the object of such men as **Martin Frobisher** and **Sir John Davis** to discover. They did not find it, however; but they gained vast stores of geographical knowledge, while their names will ever be associated with the places they visited. **Sir Francis Drake** was the first to sail round the world (1577), and **Sir Thomas Cavendish** soon afterwards did the same. Raleigh had crossed the ocean, and had in vain endeavoured to found a colony in that part of America now known as Virginia. It was during Elizabeth's reign that a charter was granted to the East India Company, giving them the sole right to trade with Hindostan.

AGRICULTURE, etc.—Great improvements were taking place in the tillage of the soil. Much of the land was under pasture; and it is worthy of notice, as a contrast to the dear times in which we live, that beef and mutton sold at a halfpenny per pound, and veal and pork at three-farthings! Clover and hops were imported for the first time, and, in 1586, Raleigh introduced the potato. In the reign of Henry VIII. some of our principal fruit-trees were brought from Flanders, and planted in Kent—among these, plums, apricots, gooseberries, and currants; and at the close of the sixteenth century roses, carnations, and gillyflowers were brought from France.

MANUFACTURES.—The woollen goods of English manufacture could now compete with those of Flemish make, and exports of this kind were highly valued on the Continent. Silk had been introduced, but was merely used in hand-knitting, and in the production of such articles as cauls (nets for the hair), laces, etc. In 1589, Lee, a Cambridge student, invented the stocking-loom, by which the manufacture of silk stockings became an important branch of industry. Paper mills were first erected in Hertfordshire, about 1490, but the most important one was built at Dartford. The owner of this mill had a licence for “the sole gathering for ten years of all rags, etc., necessary for paper-making.” Coach-making became

a branch of English industry in 1564. It is recorded that "a coach was a strange monster in those days, and the sight of it put both horse and man to amazement." The **iron trade**, destined before long to be one of the most important, was as yet confined to the county of Sussex. There were iron districts in other parts of the country, but their distance from London prevented their being extensively wrought. The mining operations in Sussex were of the simplest character; the fuel used in smelting was charcoal made from the oaks of the forest; while the fan was driven by water-power. The guns made here were at first formed of pieces of metal strongly hooped together, but in 1543 they were cast in a mould by **Hogge**, a master founder in Sussex. So very extensive had **gun-making** become, that during Elizabeth's reign cannon were exported in large numbers. The result was that England's enemies were found firing at her with guns made by herself. The foreign trade in these weapons had therefore to be forbidden.

COINAGE.—A gold coin worth two rials was made in the reign of Henry VIII., and was called a **sovereign**. At the same time, also, the **testoon** or **shilling** came into use. It was of the same value as our own.

VI. THE STUART PERIOD TILL THE RESTORATION. (1603—1660.)

LITERATURE.—At the commencement of this period Shakespeare and Raleigh were yet alive. The famous **Ben Jonson** (1574-1637) was the most important poet of the reign of James I. He had been student, bricklayer, soldier, and actor, and was now a play-writer; his principal comedy is *Every Man in His Humour*. Two close friends, twin names in literature, were **Beaumont** (1586-1615) and **Fletcher** (1576-1625). Together they composed very clever and sparkling plays. **Philip Massinger** (1584-1640), a poor man, who had a hard fight for bare existence, wrote a comedy entitled *A New Way to Pay Old Debts*. Other poets there were, Royalists and

Puritans. Among the former may be named **Herrick**, **Carew**, **Suckling**, and **Lovelace**, who are called **lyric poets**, because they wrote song-like poems. There were no very famous Puritan authors; but there were religious poets, most of whose writings possess that queerness of illustration which has led to their being called **metaphysical poets**. Their odd fancies were called **conceits**. Their names were **Quarles**, **Herbert**, and **Crawshaw**. In Scotland, **Drummond** of Hawthornden was the most conspicuous of the poetical writers.

Of the prose authors, **John Milton** (1608-1674) and **Francis Bacon** were undoubtedly the greatest. Of the former we shall soon have more to tell; meantime it is sufficient to record, that he wrote some telling pamphlets against king-worship, and also in favour of the freedom of the press. **Bacon** now produced his greatest work, the *Novum Organum*, which is esteemed one of the wisest and most useful books ever written; for, by the aid of his new system of **induction**, he put a lamp into the hands of students of science, which guided them to many useful inventions and discoveries. **Jeremy Taylor**, **Joseph Hall**, and **Thomas Fuller** were three distinguished divines notable in literature for their theological works. *The Authorised Version of the Bible* was published under the patronage of James I., and in the same reign fly-sheets containing news were occasionally printed and circulated. They were the forerunners of the newspapers of the present day.

ART.—In **architecture**, the greatest name is that of **Inigo Jones**, who designed the banqueting house at Whitehall. **Painting** was more extensively patronised, especially during the reign of Charles I., who had **Vandyke** and **Rubens**, the great Flemish artists, at his court. The former was so successful in painting the portraits of the King and the Royal Family, that he found more work to do than he could well manage. **Music**, too, had made some progress, and **Bull**, **Gibbons**, and **Bird** were the *principal* composers.

SCIENCE.—Perhaps the most wonderful scientific dis-

covery of the time was that of the circulation of the blood, by **William Harvey**, a London doctor, and one of the lecturers in connection with the College of Physicians. He had explained his discovery to his students in 1619, but did not let the world know about it till 1628. On the Continent, many important discoveries were made. **Kepler** had found out the laws that guided the planets in their motion round the sun; **Snellius**, the laws of the refraction of light; **Huygens**, the way of applying Galileo's discovery of the pendulum to the art of clock-making; and **Guericke** had invented the air-pump.

TRADE.—Compared with the energy displayed during the reign of Elizabeth, the progress now made was not great. There were various ways of accounting for this. In consequence of the granting of monopolies, much business was kept in the hands of a few individuals; then England was at war with Spain and Holland—countries with which there had hitherto been a good trade. The civil war had much to do with it, as had also the strong rivalry of the Dutch, even when there was amity between our nation and theirs. The old dislike to paying interest returned, and the old ten per cent. was reduced first to eight, and afterwards to six per cent. To the dishonesty of Charles I. we are indebted for the introduction of **banking**. Hitherto the merchants had kept their savings in the Mint (the place where the money is coined); but Charles, being needy, seized upon their store, saying he only wished the loan of it. After this, business men would trust the Mint no longer; but entrusted their gains to the goldsmiths, who gave them interest for the use of the money. Indirectly, the events that led to the civil war were of great service to commerce, for they were the cause of the planting of those colonies in America which have since proved so valuable to the trade of this country. Letters were conveyed on horseback, and a letter posted in London would reach Edinburgh in rather more than three days.

MANUFACTURES.—It was during the early portion of this period that **Manchester** rose into importance in con-

nection with cotton. A silk mill had been erected at Derby (1620), and a tapestry factory at Mortlake. Ship-building was progressing, though it is curious to note that Glasgow, now so celebrated for the number and magnificence of the vessels she has built, owned at this time a fleet of only twelve ships; and the Clyde was so shallow, that no ship of any size could approach nearer than fourteen miles from the town. Of the coal and iron business some interesting facts may be stated. No effort had been made to use coal for smelting purposes till the want of charcoal began to make itself felt. Now, since wood was still the fuel of the country, the people of the metropolis became alarmed lest the Sussex iron-smelters should use too much of it. The number of ironworks was therefore reduced, and immediately afterwards the smelters sought other iron-yielding districts, where there was also abundance of timber, as, for example, in South Wales. It was not till 1620 that any success attended the efforts made to utilise the coal. Proper appliances appear to have been contrived in that year by Dud Dudley, natural son of the Earl of Dudley. His works were at Cradley in Staffordshire, and he was soon able to turn out more smelted iron in a week than those who still used the charcoal. Never did a man fight so doggedly as he through difficulties, persecutions, and misfortunes innumerable. His neighbours were jealous of him; the mob hated him; the floods demolished his works; his rivals worried him with lawsuits; and, to crown all, the civil war broke out. This put an end to the coal-smelting for a time, and it almost put an end to the entire iron trade of the country; for during the Commonwealth it was at a standstill. Cromwell himself tried to get Dudley's secret of coal-smelting from him; but he would not divulge it to a Puritan. After the Restoration Dudley published a book, with the intention of revealing his secret; but the language in which it was written was so mysterious that it hid the very thing it was intended to explain; and hence the whole business had to be re-discovered.

COINAGE.—Copper farthings were issued for the first time during the reign of James I., and were the first copper coins since the styca. Charles I. issued two large and splendid silver coins of the value of ten shillings and twenty shillings respectively; but they were too heavy to remain long in use. In the same reign the guinea was introduced. It was so-called because the gold of which it was made came from Guinea, in Africa. Its value at that time was only twenty shillings. During the Commonwealth there was no change of importance.

VII. THE STUART PERIOD, FROM THE RESTORATION TILL THE REVOLUTION. (1660—1688).

LITERATURE.—The enforced goodness which prevailed during the Commonwealth was succeeded by a period of wild dissipation and wickedness. The abominations of the age are stamped upon the literature. If authors wished to live, they must write to suit the depraved tastes of the people. The stage was now very different from that of the Tudor time. Hitherto, female parts had been played by men; they were now performed by women. The scenery, hitherto plain and paltry, gave place to that which was fairly painted and pleasant to look upon. But, while these were improvements, the plays and the acting of them were vile in the extreme. Many of the dramatic authors were, doubtless, very clever, and their plays sparkle with wit and humour; but they are now unreadable in decent society. The laureate of the period was John Dryden (1631-1700), who wished to write differently from what the age demanded, but dared not. Then there were Rochester, Wycherley, and Congreve, all dramatists, and all panders to the fashionable sins. But out from amongst this abomination there rose a poem, pure, holy, and beautiful. It was the *Paradise Lost* of the blind old Puritan—John Milton. This is the grandest epic in our language. Now it was that Butler (1612-1680) wrote his quaint and humorous poem called *Hudibras*, in which he makes fun

of the sad-faced Roundheads. Among the prose writers we have **Bunyan** (1628-1688), notable for his *Pilgrim's Progress*; **Locke** (1632-1704), for his famous *Essay on the Human Understanding*; **Sir Isaac Newton** (1642-1727), for his splendid scientific works; and **Edward Hyde**, earl of Clarendon (1608-1674), for his *History of the Rebellion*.

ART.—**Christopher Wren** was the great architect of the time. Not only did he design St. Paul's Cathedral, in London, but he may be said to have been the architect of London itself. The city had been almost entirely destroyed by the great fire in 1666, and when it was rebuilt, the plans were made by Wren. **Painting**, which had not thriven in Puritan times, revived with the Restoration of Charles II. **Sir Peter Lely** and **Sir Godfrey Kneller** were the two most famous portrait painters. **Music** had also suffered a severe check during the Commonwealth; but when it was over, there was a great revival in the art, and ere long it became more popular in England than it had ever been before, or has been since, until now. The *National Anthem* was the production of this time; and **Purcell** was the greatest composer.

SCIENCE.—This was the age when the **steam-engine** was to be invented and utilised. The first to invent one in this country was the **Marquis of Worcester**. One day he saw a tight-fitting kettle-lid blown off by steam, and rightly imagined that the force which could blow off a lid could be turned to some good use. The engine he invented may be briefly explained thus:—He had a boiler of water placed on a fire, and from it a tube leading into a cylinder, or long iron drum, inside of which a piston was to move up and down. The steam was led through the tube to the lower part of the cylinder, and by its pressure caused the piston to rise to the top. But it could not get down again until the steam beneath had been removed. A stop-cock was therefore opened, and it *escaped*, while at the same moment a jet of steam was *introduced above* the piston to make its descent more

rapid. This second volume of steam had to be let out by a stop-cock placed above, before the piston would rise again. The continual opening and shutting of these stop-cocks had to be performed by the hand, and so, though the contrivance was ingenious, it was but a slow affair, and incapable of doing much important work. Towards the close of this period, **Sir Isaac Newton** discovered the **Laws of Gravitation**. **Astronomy** was advancing, and in 1671 the now world-famed **Observatory** was erected at **Greenwich**.

COMMERCE, ETC.—It is marvellous to consider how the commerce of England was increased at this time. The persecutions in France and in Holland had the effect of driving skilled workmen over to this country, which accordingly reaped the full advantage of their skill. But there were persecutions in England itself, and here the hand of Providence is visible. In other countries, mischief has come upon trade and commerce by the enforced exile of the artizans; but England reaped the benefit, and when her own artizans were exiled in a similar way, they became, as we have seen, the founders of colonies which have been a gain and not a loss to the mother country. There were other causes of prosperity. The six per cent. interest was still continued; the monopolies were gradually done away with; and the postage of letters had become cheaper than before. A letter could now be sent a distance of eighty miles for two-pence. The **shipping** was double what it had been during the reign of Elizabeth; the revenue was trebled, and the merchants were becoming men of wealth. The **tea-trade** was started, but only some two thousand pounds were consumed during the first six years. As wealth increased, the people desired to see more of the country than hitherto, and hence **stage-coaches** were placed on the highways to meet the want. In cities, too, it became necessary to have vehicles for hire; thus **hackney-coaches** came into use, although the streets were so badly paved that **sedan-chairs**, borne by men, were far more comfortable.

MANUFACTURES.—Up to the year 1667, woollen goods, though still highly valued, had to be sent to the Continent to be dyed; for the English chemists had not as yet discovered the proper method. At this time, the **muslins**, **chintzes**, and **calicoes**, sent home by the East India Company, became the fashion in England, insomuch that woollen and other manufactures were left in the background. In these circumstances it was deemed expedient to pass an Act limiting the trade in these foreign goods; but merchants saw that these cotton goods had taken well, and so began to imitate them at home. **Calico-printing** was first started in London. Patents were now granted for the making of **blue paper for sugar-makers**, and for paper “as white as anything the French or Dutch can produce.” **Sugar-refining** was beginning to be associated with Bristol. In 1319, sugar had been used for the first time, honey having previously served the same purpose. In 1676, the British planters of the Barbadoes had a fleet of four hundred vessels engaged in bringing sugar to England. **Coal** was now more extensively used as fuel for domestic purposes; but the **iron** business was still very poor, four-fifths of the entire quantity of the metal required being imported from Sweden.

COINAGE.—**Copper halfpennies** were coined by Charles II., though copper pennies were not made till the reign of George III. It was at this time that the figure of Britannia was first stamped on English money.

VIII. FROM THE REVOLUTION TILL THE DEATH OF GEORGE II. (1688-1760).

LITERATURE.—In consequence of the Revolution, every department of labour received an impulse which made progress leap forward with rapid strides. A feeling of freedom and freshness pervades the literature; for it is now no longer necessary to pander to depraved tastes in order to obtain a living. The authors were more *manly* and independent than heretofore. **Alexander**

Pope (1688-1744) was the greatest poet of his day. He was weakly in constitution, and therefore, perhaps, waspish in temper. His chief works were *The Rape of the Lock*, and a *Translation of Homer's Iliad* into English verse. Two Scottish poets of repute were **James Thomson** (1700-1748) and **Allan Ramsay** (1686-1758), the former of whom wrote *The Seasons*, and the latter *The Gentle Shepherd*, a pastoral drama (one referring to shepherd life). To this period we are indebted for the **first daily newspaper**, the **first novel**, the **first magazine**, and the **first English dictionary**. *The Daily Courant* (London, 1709) was the first newspaper of its kind. The earliest novel of any consequence was *Robinson Crusoe*, written by **Daniel Defoe** in 1719. Many other writers of fiction follow. Among them were **Richardson** (1689-1761), author of *Pamela*; **Fielding** (1707-1754), of *Tom Jones*; and **Smollet** (1721-1771), of *Peregrine Pickle*, etc. Early in the eighteenth century, a small literary paper, called *The Tatler*, made its appearance. It was under the management of **Sir Richard Steele** (1676-1729), an accomplished and sprightly Irishman. The most noteworthy contributor was **Joseph Addison** (1672-1719), who was remarkable for the purity and beauty of his English. Other publications—*The Spectator*, etc.—followed, but it was not till 1731 that **Cave** started the first real magazine. It was called *The Gentleman's Magazine*. In 1755, **Dr. Samuel Johnson** published the first English dictionary, a ponderous volume, full of erudition, but neither so easy to understand, nor so accurate in its etymology, as the sixpenny dictionary of our own day. *Gulliver's Travels*, by **Dean Swift** (1667-1731), and *Tristram Shandy*, by **Laurence Sterne** (1713-1768), are both works of fiction. but have a political and philosophical significance which the ordinary reader may fail to observe.

ARTS.—In **architecture**, it may be noted that St. Paul's Cathedral, London, designed by Wren, was now completed after thirty-seven years of labour and an expenditure of £1,000,000. **Music.**—There were two

great composers at the beginning of the eighteenth century. These were **Handel**, a German, resident in England, and **Dr. Arne**. The former is known for his grand oratorios, which, though unpopular at first, have become great favourites with the people; the latter, perhaps, is best known as the composer of *Rule Britannia*. **Painting**.—The artists of the time are nearly all English, and towards the close of the period, **The English School of Painting** rises into distinction. The painters were principally employed in painting pictures on walls and ceilings. Of this class **Sir James Thornhill** was the chief. But **William Hogarth** (1698-1764) was the genius of the time. He did for his age what Chaucer did for the time in which he lived, except that Hogarth accomplished with the brush and the graving tool what Chaucer did with his pen; in other words, he painted and engraved pictures which reveal the manners and customs of the period.

SCIENCE.—In 1721, **inoculation** was introduced into England by Lady Mary Wortley Montagu, who had seen it successfully adopted in the East. It had been discovered that, if a little matter were taken, after the eighth day, from a person suffering from small-pox, and were pricked into the skin of a healthy person, the latter would take the disease, but in so mild a form as not to endanger life. Now, the ravages of this disease had been so frightful, that, after a little, this new protection was gladly adopted. It had only one drawback: inoculated people suffering from small-pox were safe themselves, but they could communicate the contagion to uninoculated persons, to whom the result might be fatal. In **geographical science**, very rapid progress was made, in consequence of the discoveries of such men as **Cook**, **Berkeley**, **Bruce**, and **Park**, all of whom contributed information which was of great value to other sciences, such as botany and astronomy. On the continent, great experiments had been made in connection with **electricity**; but the first invention making it useful to man was that of the **lightning-rod**, by **Dr. Franklin**, in 1760.

This rod was to protect buildings from being struck by lightning, the electricity being conducted into the earth, by the greater attractive power of the metal used in making it. It was during this period that the **thermometers of Fahrenheit and Reaumur** were invented. The former has been adopted in England, the latter in France and other countries.

COMMERCE.—Trade felt the same impulse to which we have alluded as having sprung from the Revolution; and, by the union of England and Scotland, the commerce of both countries was much improved. Greatly to the disgust and annoyance of the Goldsmith Bankers, a Scot, named **Paterson**, established the **Bank of England** in 1694. It speedily became the popular bank, and it now guides all the other banks of the country. For the convenience of trade, **canals** now began to be made. The **Earl of Bridgewater's Canal**, in Lancashire, in 1758, was the first ever made in England. For the guidance of vessels approaching dangerous parts of our coasts, **lighthouses** were erected. The first Eddystone lighthouse—soon after destroyed—was built in 1696. The failure of the South Sea scheme and multitudes of similar companies proved very disastrous to thousands of merchants who had been too keen in the "race for riches." The commerce suffered for a little, and men of business were taught to be more careful and less credulous than they had hitherto been.

MANUFACTURES AND INVENTIONS.—Societies were now formed for the encouragement of industry, and every effort was made to facilitate progress. The most noteworthy advance took place in the manufacture of silk in 1718. Before this, "**thrown silk**," (silk formed into threads), had been made in Italy, and in this state it was brought to England. It was considered that this manufacture had not a chance of success, till the English could "throw" silk for themselves; so a man named **John Lombe** went to Italy in 1715, and, overcoming many difficulties, he managed, in the guise of a common labourer, to get access to one of the mills. Here he

kept a keen watch on every part of the process, and drew plans of the machinery when he got home at night. At last, however, the Italians found out what he was doing, and he had to flee for his life. But he had won this secret, and when he got home to Derby, he set up a machine by which "thrown silk" could easily be made. The cotton manufactures were gaining ground. The spinning of the cotton into thread was as yet a very slow process, every thread having to be spun between finger and thumb. In weaving, again, the shuttle required the use of both hands; the one, to send it across the web; and the other, to send it back again. In 1733, **John Kay** invented the **fly-shuttle**, by means of which much time was saved. The shuttle could now be driven forwards and backwards by a single jerk of the hand; but the weavers, who believed in the old slow way, broke into the inventor's house, destroyed his loom, and would have killed himself, had he not managed to escape to Paris, where he afterwards died in poverty. His fly-shuttle soon came into general use, but it wove so rapidly that the hand-spinners could not supply the weavers with enough of thread, and hence they were often kept idle. It will soon be seen that ere long they would have little excuse for idleness. The use of coal for smelting purposes now became imperative. A Quaker, named **Abraham Darby**, made considerable use of coal in his iron furnaces, in the year 1713; and his example was speedily followed all over the country. Darby did for **pot-making** and other hollow castings what **Lombe** did for silk-throwing. He went over to Holland, where the work was secretly conducted; and by dint of shrewdness and perseverance managed to discover the method which has ever since been in use. **Type-casting** also took its place among the industries of the time. The **steam-engine** of the Marquis of Worcester being of little service, it was improved upon by **Savery**, a miner, in 1698, who rendered it capable of pumping water out of coal-pits. A still greater improvement was effected by **Newcomen**, a blacksmith, in 1705. It is well known

that the atmosphere has a pressure of from 12 to 15 lbs. on the square inch. Newcomen took advantage of this fact, and made his **atmospheric engine**. But before the air could drive down the piston, the steam had to be got out from beneath it. This was effected by injecting cold water into the cylinder, and thereby condensing the steam (turning it into water). This caused the cylinder to be alternately heated and cooled, a plan which required time; and so, although the new engine was able to pump better than Worcester's or Savery's, it was but slow compared with the speed it was yet to attain.

COINAGE.—There was no change in the coinage, except that, while Sir Isaac Newton was Master of the Mint, the money was better made than before.

IX. THE REIGN OF GEORGE III. (1760—1820).

LITERATURE.—As the printing press becomes more capable of performing work, the great authors crowd upon each other to such an extent that it becomes difficult to mention the names which it will be of most benefit to remember. Perhaps the most useful book of the time was **Dr. Adam Smith's** (1723-1790) *Wealth of Nations*. In it, many wise counsels were given as to the right method of conducting the commerce of a country; and it also showed the necessity for **Free Trade**, that is, having no restrictions—such as duties—on the exports or imports of the nation. Dr. Smith lived to see the government learn the lessons he had taught. This period is remarkable for the number of its **great historians**. **Hume** (1711-1776) wrote his *History of England*; **Robertson** (1721-1793), his *History of Charles V.*, etc.; and **Gibbon** (1737-1794), his *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*. **Goldsmith** (1728-1774) penned *The Vicar of Wakefield*, one of the most charming novels ever written, and wrote also a most excellent comedy, *She Stoops to Conquer*. These, together with his poetical works, make him one of the most noted men of his time. **William Cowper** (1731-1800), towards the close of the eighteenth century, wrote his *Task*, a didactic poem (one

fitted to teach or instruct). The greatest poet was **Robert Burns**, the lyric poet of Scotland. He was an Ayrshire ploughman; but though of low degree, he expressed the emotions of the human heart so well that his name will be ever dear to his countrymen, in whatever region of the globe their lot may be cast. He was born in 1759, and died in 1796. Another poet of the highest eminence was **Percy B. Shelley** (1792-1822). Chief among the **essayists** of the time was **Edmund Burke** (1730-1797), who now wrote his splendid *Essay on the Sublime and Beautiful*.

ART.—At the commencement of this period the fashionable style of **architecture** was after the manner of Italian villas—very pretty to look at, but scarcely suitable for the climate of this country. The toy-like and uncomfortable dwellings now erected soon gave place to the more substantial and more comfortable houses of our own time. **Painting.**—The painters had by this time become so numerous and so successful that they clubbed together in 1768, received a royal charter, and, under the presidency of **Sir Joshua Reynolds**, started the **Royal Academy** for the encouragement of art. **Reynolds** was famous as a **portrait-painter**; **Sir Benjamin West** as a **historical painter**; and **Gainsborough** as a **landscape painter**. There was a great demand for copies of the works of great artists, and hence **engraving** began to be practised more extensively than hitherto. **Bewick**, the illustrator of a *History of British Birds*, was one of the most successful engravers. **Sculpture**, which, till then, had been almost exclusively in the hands of foreign artists, was to be carried on henceforward by native talent. **Flaxman** (1755-1826) was the best-known sculptor of this time. **Pottery** made great progress. This was owing principally to the genius of **Josiah Wedgwood** (1730-1795), who introduced the art of **painting on earthenware**, and who was also instrumental in changing the homely fashion of our more common pottery for the more elegant designs of ancient Greece and Rome. **Music.**—**Handel's** stately *oratorios* were becoming more popular, while **music-**

clubs and concert-giving were the order of the day. The great composers besides Handel were **Arnold** and **Mornington**. **English Opera**, which has never thriven, was now originated.

SCIENCE.—In **Medical Science** the discovery was made by **Dr. Jenner**, in 1795, that farm servants, who caught infection from sores on the udder of a cow, though they did suffer slightly, were safe from the attacks of small-pox. **Vaccination** (from **vacca**, a cow) was the result; and it was found that, while vaccine matter taken direct from the cow had the effect desired when pricked into the skin of a healthy person, the matter taken from a person thus vaccinated would be quite as useful. So slight are the usual effects of vaccination that infants can easily endure them. **Chemistry.**—**Henry Cavendish**, a wealthy member of a noble family, gave himself up heart and soul to the study of chemistry. He discovered that **hydrogen** was the **lightest gas**, and that **water** was composed of **hydrogen and oxygen**. The former of these discoveries led to various experiments in balloon-travelling. **Astronomy.**—**William Herschel** (1738-1822) was a German music-master, who came to England to teach his art; but he loved science better than art. He made a telescope by which he discovered **new planets**, and ere long became so notable as to be employed as astronomer by George III., who afterwards made him **Sir William Herschel**.

COMMERCE.—During the earlier portion of the reign, commerce was considerably injured in consequence of the American war. After peace had been proclaimed (1782), the loss was happily more than covered by the rapid increase of trade which succeeded; for, during the following ten years, the business with the colonies was nearly doubled, as was also the number of vessels employed in the traffic. But the French war, which took place towards the close of this reign, was a sad blow to this prosperous state of things; and it is wonderful that British commerce was able to survive it. It was Napoleon's object to ruin our trade, and he very nearly

succeeded. Not France alone, but every European nation which had hitherto done business with England, was ordered by the conqueror to give up the connection. The result was so ruinous, that, if the Government had not helped the merchants, our commercial prosperity would have become a thing of the past. "But the darkest hour often precedes the dawn." When peace was proclaimed, the demand for British produce was so tremendous, that the disheartened merchants were cheered; and henceforward "the tide led on to fortune."

MANUFACTURES AND INVENTIONS.—No period in the previous history of the kingdom had been so fruitful in invention as this; and the discoveries made were more useful than those of any former time in the history of the world. The cotton manufacture received incalculable benefits from the ingenuity of four men. As we have seen, thread was wanted in sufficient quantity to keep the weavers going. In 1767, **Hargreaves**, a weaver, invented a machine which could spin thread very rapidly. He called it the **Spinning Jenny**, out of compliment to his wife, whose wheel had first suggested to him the idea of his new machinery. **Arkwright**, once a Preston barber, contrived a machine in 1769 which could card the cotton so as to produce threads of different quality. The invention was called the **Water-frame Throstle**. **Crompton**, in 1775, combined the two machines—Hargreaves' and Arkwright's—so that carding and spinning could go on together. The new device was called the **Spinning Mule**. In 1787, **Dr. Cartwright**, an ingenious clergyman, was able to make a machine which was capable of performing the whole process of weaving. This was called the **Power-loom**. Now, therefore, we have machinery that will card, spin, or weave; and, within a very few years, the steam-engine will cause it to work so rapidly that hand-labour will go out of fashion. It was the prospect of such an issue that made the spinners and weavers so vicious against these inventors; for, with the exception of Arkwright, all of them suffered severely for their pains. The generations of the future were to

be the great gainers. In 1769, the value of the cotton manufactures did not exceed £200,000 a-year; in 1824, it had risen to more than £33,000,000. **James Watt**, a Glasgow mechanic, perfected the steam-engine in 1769. He had got a model of one of Newcomen's engines to repair, and soon saw that the heating and cooling of the cylinder would never do, if the piston was to work with speed. In process of time he invented the **condenser**, in which the steam could be condensed outside of the cylinder, which would thus remain without change of temperature. After this, there was nothing too difficult for the steam-engine to accomplish, where mere force was necessary. To quote a well-known writer:—"The steam-engine pumps water, drives spindles, threshes corn, prints books, hammers iron, ploughs land, saws timber, drives piles, impels ships, works railways, excavates docks; and, in a word, exerts an almost unbounded supremacy over materials which enter into the daily use of mankind, for clothing, for labour, for defence, for household purposes, for locomotion, for food, or for instruction." Less than forty years afterwards, Watt's engine was used for the propulsion of vessels. The first **steamboat** seems to have been the **Charlotte Dundas**, the contrivance of **William Symington**, in 1802. In 1807 a man named **Fulton** built a steamer (on specifications drawn up by Symington), which plied successfully between New York and Albany, on the Hudson River. The first really useful steamer in Britain was the **Comet**, which was designed by **Henry Bell**, an Helensburgh inn-keeper, in 1811. This vessel plied on the Clyde, between Glasgow and Greenock. Soon after, **Napier**, of Glasgow, constructed marine engines which would work well in the stormiest weather, and hence seagoing steamers began to be built. **Coal** was now produced in greater quantity, and **Gas-making** was added to the industries of the country. The curious discovery had been made by **Murdoch**, of Cornwall, in 1792, that the inflammable gas known to exist in coal could be used for illuminating instead of candles. When prejudices had been got over,

coal-gas came into general use. But the gas existing in coal-pits was the constant cause of disaster, as explosions frequently took place when the flame of the collier's lamp set fire to it. This was in a great measure prevented by the use of the **Safety-lamp**, invented by **Sir Humphry Davy** in 1816. It remains to be recorded that **Lithography** was invented at Paris in 1796, and **Stereotyping**, in Germany, in 1797.

COINAGE.—**Copper pennies** were coined for the first time during this reign. The silver money was much neglected, being worn so smooth that both image and superscription had become almost invisible.

X. FROM 1820 TILL THE PRESENT TIME.

LITERATURE.—The authors are now so numerous that it is necessary to classify them. It will be convenient, therefore, to arrange them in the following order: Poets, Novelists, Dramatists, Critics, Historians, and writers on other subjects.

I. Poets.—First in order of time comes **Sir Walter Scott** (1771-1832), whose stories in verse are fresh and invigorating as a sea-breeze. The best-known poems are *The Lady of the Lake*, *Marmion*, and *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*. Next we have **Wordsworth** (1770-1850), **Coleridge** (1772-1834), and **Southey** (1774-1843), usually called **The Lake Poets**, because they resided near each other at the Cumberland lakes. Wordsworth's great poem was *The Excursion*; Coleridge is best known as the author of *The Ancient Mariner*; and Southey, though he wrote an epic, is better remembered as having written such poems as *Mary, the Maid of the Inn*, *Lord William*, etc. Great, however, as these poets were, they do not take so high a position in literature as **Lord Byron** (1788-1824), whose narrative poems are the finest productions of the century. Among his numerous works, *Childe Harold* may be named as one of the best. Contemporary with Byron was the Irish poet **Moore** (1779-1852), who, though he never visited the far East, wrote

an excellent Oriental poem entitled *Lalla Rookh*. His most popular work was his *Irish Melodies*. **Thomas Campbell** (1777-1844), a poet belonging to Glasgow, is well remembered as the author of *The Battle of the Baltic*, *Ye Mariners of England*, etc., though his *Pleasures of Hope* and *Gertrude of Wyoming* are, both of them, highly meritorious poems of a more ambitious kind. **Percy Bysshe Shelley** and **John Keats** were poets whose wealth of imagery has never been surpassed. The *Queen Mab* of the former, and the *Endymion* of the latter, afford excellent illustrations of their respective styles. **Mrs. Felicia Hemans** (1794-1835), was one of the most noteworthy among the lady poets; her *Better Land* is well known to young people. Coming nearer to our own time, the greatest poet is, perhaps, **Alfred Tennyson** (born in 1809), the Poet-Laureate. He writes with great power, and in the most expressive English. His principal poems—*In Memoriam*, *Maud*, *The Princess*, those regarding the Arthurian legends, and *Enoch Arden*, are very popular. **Mr. Robert Browning** and **Mrs. E. Barrett Browning** (1809-1861) are the most remarkable poets after Tennyson. The humorous writer of greatest repute was the kind and genial **Tom Hood**, whose *Bridge of Sighs* and *Song of the Shirt* are well remembered.

II. Novelists.—The most powerful novelist of the century was **Walter Scott**, whose admirable series of *Waverley Novels* will continue to be read with eagerness, long after the thousand and one yellow-boarded novels of our own time shall have been consigned to the oblivion they deserve. Among the earlier lady-novelists of repute were **Miss Austin** and **Miss Edgeworth**, whose works were intended more for instruction than amusement. In our time, **Dickens** (1812-1870) and **Thackeray** (1811-1863) occupy the front rank, and next to them come **Charlotte Bronte**, **Miss Evans** (George Eliot), **Charles Kingsley**, **Charles Lever**, **Anthony Trollope**, **Wilkie Collins**, and **Bulwer Lytton**, who was perhaps the finest writer of them all. He died in January 1873.

III. Dramatists.—In tragedy, the most successful

author was **Sheridan Knowles**; in comedy, **Douglas Jerrold**, **Robertson**, and **Tom Taylor**; and **Bulwer Lytton** distinguished himself also by the production of such dramas as *Richelieu*, *The Lady of Lyons*, etc.

IV. **Critics**.—Reviews had, very early in the present century, begun to exercise a healthy supervision in regard to literature. The writers of the period were almost innumerable, and the public required to be guided as to what was worth reading and what was not. Greatest among these guides were **Lord Jeffrey**, **Hazlitt**, **Cole-ridge**, and **De Quincey**.

V. **Historians**.—The best writers of **English History**, during this period, are **Lord Macaulay** (1800-1859), and **J. A. Froude**; of **Continental History**, **Sir Archibald Alison** and **Hallam**; and of **Greek History**, **Thirlwall** and **Grote**. There yet remain to be mentioned the names of authors who have excelled in other departments of literature, thus: **Dr. Thomas Chalmers**, in **Theology**; **Thomas Carlyle**, in **Philosophy**; **John Stuart Mill**, in **Political Economy**; **G. H. Lewes** and **Forster**, in **Biography**; **Sir C. Lyell** and **Hugh Miller**, in **Geology**; **John Ruskin**, in the literature of **Architecture** and **Painting**. The **Newspaper Press** has now an immense influence on all matters of public importance, and the rapidity with which news can be transmitted and printed constitutes one of the wonders of our day. In contrast to the slow-going, creaking old press of **Caxton's** time, we have smart machines, driven by steam, which can print twenty thousand copies of a newspaper in an hour's time.

ARTS.—In **architecture** there is, during the present time, a great want of originality of design. Many splendid buildings are erected, but they are principally fashioned after styles in vogue long ago. **Sir Gilbert Scott** is one of the greatest architects of our time. **Painting**.—Among the great artists who have made the **English school of painting** so important in the nineteenth century, the following may be named: **Turner**, the prince of *landscape* painters; **Landseer** and **Herring**, who

excel in animal painting; and Sir David Wilkie, Maclise, Frith, Sir Noel Paton, Millais, and Holman Hunt, who are famous as figure painters. Music is much cultivated, although it has been found almost hopeless to compete with the success it has attained on the Continent, and hence it is to foreigners we are mainly indebted for the best compositions, and nearly also for the best performers—vocal and instrumental. Bennett, Balfe, Costa, Sullivan, and Wallace, are among the most notable composers. In sculpture the most important names are those of Sir Francis Chantrey and Gibson.

SCIENCE.—Of the very numerous benefits resulting from science, we can only give a few.—Photography is a discovery of this century. By its means, the features of those we love are accurately delineated by a rapid and inexpensive process. Chemistry does good service in discovering dyes for cloths; in preparing new bleaching processes; in finding out disinfectants; in making use of articles hitherto deemed useless; and, in short, lending a helping-hand to every department of industry. One of the most important discoveries of modern times has been chloroform, which has done so much to lessen human suffering. Astronomy has become one of the grandest sciences, and, by its aid, the wonders of the universe are daily made better known to us. It was now that Lord Rosse erected his gigantic telescope, by which new wonders were revealed. Geology, a science yet in its infancy, gives the world some knowledge of the earth's crust. The study of the atmosphere (Meteorology) is found to be of immense service; and the system devised by the late Admiral Fitzroy, by predicting the approach of storms, has doubtless saved many a vessel from shipwreck. Closely allied to scientific inquiry is geographical research. The most distinguished in this department are—Sir John Franklin, who lost his life in trying to discover the North-west passage, the possibility of reaching which is now considered almost hopeless, since the return of the expedition of the *Alert* and *Discovery* (1876),

under Captain Nares; **Speke, Baker, and Grant**, the explorers of the Nile; and **Dr. Livingstone**, who most perseveringly endeavoured to find out the real source of that mysterious river, and has given us more knowledge of Central Africa. That great explorer has since died in the midst of his labours; but he has had worthy successors in the field of African research in **Stanley** and **Lieutenant Cameron**; the latter of whom crossed the entire continent from east to west.

COMMERCE.—It is during this period that we reap the full benefit of our insular position, our mineral treasures, our fertile soil, and the industrious habits and inventive skill of a free people. More than sixty thousand vessels now ply between England and the various quarters of the globe. Our great sources of wealth are our manufactures. But these received a great impulse in the early part of the present reign, from the finding of gold in Australia, which caused thousands of emigrants to leave our shores, and thus to create a new market for our goods.

MANUFACTURES AND INVENTIONS.—The cotton manufactures take the lead among the industries of the land; their annual value being reckoned at £60,000,000. The woollen and linen trades come next. Many important improvements have taken place in the machinery connected with these departments of business, but we cannot here enumerate them. The iron trade has very rapidly developed. The invention of the hot blast by **Nielson** caused the process of smelting to be carried out much better than before, and without such waste of fuel. In 1825, **George Stephenson** had invented the locomotive engine, and the first railway, between Stockton and Darlington, was opened to the public. Since then, the country has been covered with a net-work of lines, over which trains may now travel at a speed of sixty miles an hour! Marine engines are every year becoming more excellent in design, so that steamers are now able to cross the Atlantic in little more than nine days! A great triumph of invention was the electric telegraph, first used for the transmission of news in 1837. Scien-

tific men had long been engaged in examining the nature of this wonderful agent, **electricity**; but it was not till about the year mentioned that it was made the means by which men, miles apart, could communicate with each other almost instantaneously. In 1866, a cable was successfully laid along the bottom of the Atlantic between England and America: and there is every probability that there will soon be a line of electric communication right round the world. In laying the submarine cables the **Great Eastern** has been employed. She is the largest vessel afloat, being 22,500 tons burthen. Her immense size may be judged from the fact that a promenade round her deck involves a walk of more than a quarter of a mile. She is built of iron, a metal now commonly in use for shipbuilding purposes. There is yet one important event to notice in connection with the progress of industry. In 1851, the nations of the earth were invited to send specimens of their arts and manufactures to London. The **Great Exhibition Palace**, where these were shown, was itself a triumph of art, being wholly built of glass and iron. On its eight miles of tables were exhibited every variety of home and foreign industries and inventions, while its courts were embellished with the choicest works of art which the time could produce. On one occasion there were present in the building at one time no fewer than ninety-three thousand persons. In the time of William I. that number would have represented a twentieth part of the entire population of England. Since 1851, such universal exhibitions have been held in nearly all the capitals of the civilised world.

COINAGE.—In the reign of William IV., **fourpenny-pieces**, or **groats**, were coined. In Victoria's reign, the **guinea** has been withdrawn; the **silver florin**, or **two-shilling piece**, introduced, as also the **threepenny piece**; and for the clumsy old copper pennies and halfpence, the lighter and more elegant **bronze money** has been substituted.

GENERAL QUESTIONS.

I. THE SAXON PERIOD

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Who was the most notable prose writer? | 5. What were the occupations of the bulk of the Anglo-Saxons? |
| 2. Who wrote, and who translated "The History of the Church of the Angles?" | 6. What were often the occupations of the friars during leisure hours. |
| 3. Mention a poet of note. | 7. What were the Anglo-Saxon pennies? |
| 4. Mention some other remarkable persons. | 8. What was the stycas? |

II. THE EARLY NORMAN PERIOD.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Who were Lanfranc and Anselm? | Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table?" |
| 2. What language became the court language? | 6. Who introduced romances, and why are they so called? |
| 3. Which is the best history of this period? | 7. What trade began at this time? |
| 4. Mention the principal writers of this period. | 8. What was the value of silver half-pennies. |
| 5. Who wrote "The Story of King | |

III. THE PLANTAGENET, OR LATER NORMAN PERIOD.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. What amalgamation took place during this period? | 18. What science became the parent of astronomy? |
| 2. What was the language of the country called? | 19. What preceded chemistry? |
| 3. In what did the change partly consist, but how did it show itself more especially? | 20. What was the popular belief? |
| 4. What was the "Brut" of Layamon? | 21. What did the alchemists try to discover? |
| 5. What two stages marked the advance of the language to Modern English? | 22. What was substituted for candles during this period? |
| 6. Mention the best illustration of Old English. | 23. By whom was gunpowder invented, and in what year? |
| 7. When did Gower live? | 24. When were the first canons used? |
| 8. Who was Geoffrey Chaucer? | 25. How did the Saxons and Normans advance the interests of England? |
| 9. What are "The Canterbury Tales"? | 26. What did England export? |
| 10. For what is the "Prologue" valuable? | 27. Who were the bankers of the people before the time of Richard I.? |
| 11. When did Sir John Mandeville live? | 28. When were letters of credit first used? |
| 12. Who was the earliest English reformer? | 29. What people did Edward III. invite to settle in England? |
| 13. Why was the first translation of the English Bible of singular value? | 30. Where was coal discovered, and in what year? |
| 14. Who was John Barbour? | 31. What Act did parliament pass with regard to the use of coal? |
| 15. Mention the only art of consequence. | 32. How much coal is burnt by Londoners at the present time? |
| 16. Who was Roger Bacon, for what are we indebted to him? | 33. What coins were introduced in the reign of Edward III.? |
| 17. Who was Michael Scott? | |

IV. THE LANCASTRIAN AND YORKIST PERIOD.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When did Fortescue and Lytton live? 2. For what are the poets Oceve and Lydgate best remembered? 3. What were the Miracle Plays? 4. What were the Moral Plays, and when were they introduced? 5. Who wrote "The King's Quhair?" 6. When were the universities of St. Andrews and Glasgow founded, and by whom? 7. When was Halley's comet first observed in England? 8. What prayer was common at this time? 9. What had an evil effect upon trade? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10. Mention the imports and exports. 11. Who were Cannyng and Whittington? 12. What art had become well known? 13. Mention to whom the invention of printing is ascribed. 14. When was type introduced into England, and by whom? 15. Who produced the first book ever printed in this country, and what is it called? 16. What were rials? 17. When were crowns and half-crowns first coined, and why were they so called? 18. What was the Mill and Screw. |
|--|--|

V. THE TUDOR PERIOD.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. What great revival took place? 2. Who founded schools and colleges? 3. What examples made the ladies of England study with diligence? 4. To whom is the language greatly indebted for the grace and smoothness which it possesses? 5. Who introduced the English sonnet? 6. What other verse was introduced? 7. By whom was the New Testament translated? 8. Mention two Scottish poets. 9. About what time did they live? 10. When is Modern English considered to have begun? 11. Mention the most noteworthy fact in connection with its beginning. 12. Mention the earliest tragedy, and by whom it was written. 13. Who wrote the earliest comedy, and in what year? 14. What was "Gammer Gurton's Needle?" 15. When was Shakespeare born? 16. Mention a contemporary of Shakespeare's. 17. Who stands first among the allegorical poets? 18. What is the Spenserian Stanza? 19. Mention the works of Sir Philip Sydney. 20. Mention the notable prose writers. 21. Mention the greatest work of Sir Walter Raleigh. 22. Who wrote the "Ecclesiastical Polity?" 23. By what name is the architecture of the time known? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 24. Mention the most notable composer of music. 25. What other art was patronised? 26. Who was Galileo? 27. What was the Royal College of Physicians, and when was it founded? 28. Who was Columbus? 29. Who was Sebastian Cabot? 30. How was the lending of money for interest regarded in the reign of Edward VI.? 31. Who discovered the route round the Cape? 32. Who were Martin Frobisher and Sir John Davis? 33. In what year did Sir Francis Drake sail round the world? 34. Who sailed round the world shortly afterwards? 35. In whose reign was a charter granted to the East India Company? 36. By whom was the potato introduced into England, and in what year? 37. In whose reign were our principal fruit trees brought from Flanders? 38. For what was silk used? 39. In what year did Lee invent the stocking-loom? 40. In what year were paper mills first erected in Herefordshire? 41. When did coach-making become a branch of English industry? 42. To what county was the iron trade confined? 43. Who was Hoggs? 44. Why was the foreign trade in guns forbidden? 45. What gold coin was made in the reign of Henry VIII.? 46. What was the testoon? |
|---|---|

VI. THE STUART PERIOD TILL THE RESTORATION.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -1. When did Ben Jonson live? 2. Mention his chief work. 3. By what two friends were some clever sparkling plays written? 4. Mention the work of Philip Massinger. 5. Mention some lyric poets. 6. Mention some metaphysical poets. 7. When was John Milton born? 8. Who wrote the <i>Novum Organum</i>? 9. Mention three divines notable in literature. 10. Under whose patronage was "The Authorised Version of the Bible" published? 11. Who designed the banqueting house at Whitehall? 12. Mention the great artists at the court of Charles I. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 13. Mention the principal composers of music. 14. Who was William Harvey? 15. In what year was his discovery made known to the world? 16. Who were Kepler, Snellius, Huygens, and Guericke? 17. To whose dishonesty are we indebted for the introduction of banking? 18. How were letters conveyed? 19. When was a silk mill erected at Derby? 20. Who tried to contrive proper appliances for the use of coal? 21. When were copper farthings first issued? 22. Why was the guinea so called? |
|---|---|

VII. THE STUART PERIOD, FROM THE RESTORATION TILL THE REVOLUTION.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Mention the laureate of the period. 2. Mention other dramatists. 3. What did John Milton write? 4. When did Butler live? 5. Mention some prose writers, and give a list of their respective works. 6. Who was Christopher Wren? 7. Who were the most famous portrait painters? 8. Who composed the National Anthem? 9. Who invented the steam-engine in this country? 10. Mention the discovery of Sir Isaac Newton. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 11. When was the Observatory at Greenwich erected? 12. Mention some of the causes of the prosperity of commerce at this time. 13. Why was it deemed expedient to pass an Act limiting the trade in muslin, chintzes, and calicoes? 14. With what town is sugar-refining associated? 15. When was sugar used for the first time? 16. By whom were copper halfpennies coined? 17. When were copper pennies made? |
|--|--|

VIII. FROM THE REVOLUTION TILL THE DEATH OF GEORGE II.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When did Alexander Pope live? 2. Mention his chief works. 3. Mention two Scottish poets. 4. When did <i>The Daily Courant</i> first appear? 5. Who wrote the earliest novel? 6. Mention some other novelists who followed. 7. When did Richard Steele live? 8. When did Joseph Addison live? 9. Who started the first real magazine, and in what year? 10. When did Dr. Samuel Johnson live? 11. Mention his chief work. 12. Who wrote "Gulliver's Travels?" | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 13. When did Laurence Sterne live? 14. Mention two great musical composers. 15. Who wrote "Rule Britannia?" 16. How were the painters of this time principally employed? 17. Mention the genius of the age. 18. Who introduced inoculation into England, and in what year? 19. Who were Cook, Berkeley, Bruce, and Park? 20. Who discovered the lightning-rod, and in what year? 21. Who were Fahrenheit and Reaumur? |
|--|---|

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>22. Who established the Bank of England, and in what year?</p> <p>23. Mention the first canal ever made in England.</p> <p>24. When was Eddystone lighthouse built?</p> <p>25. Who was John Lombe, and what did he discover?</p> | <p>26. When was the fly-shuttle invented?</p> <p>27. Who did for pot-making what Lombe had done for silk-throwing?</p> <p>28. Who effected a great improvement upon the steam-engine in 1705?</p> <p>29. Who was Master of the Mint at this time?</p> |
|---|---|

IX. THE REIGN OF GEORGE III.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Who wrote the "Wealth of Nations?"</p> <p>2. Mention some of the great historians.</p> <p>3. Mention two of Goldsmith's principal works.</p> <p>4. Who wrote the "Task?"</p> <p>5. When did Robert Burns live?</p> <p>6. Mention the chief essayist of the time.</p> <p>7. When was the Royal Academy started, and under whose presidency?</p> <p>8. Mention some of the great painters.</p> <p>9. Mention one of the most successful engravers.</p> <p>10. Who was the best-known sculptor of the time?</p> <p>11. Who introduced the art of painting on earthenware?</p> <p>12. Mention the great composers of music?</p> <p>13. What is vaccination, and when was it discovered?</p> <p>14. What discoveries did Henry Cavendish make in chemistry?</p> <p>15. Who was William Herschel?</p> | <p>16. How was commerce greatly injured?</p> <p>17. What was Napoleon's great object with regard to our trade?</p> <p>18. What is the Spinning Jenny?</p> <p>19. What machine did Arkwright contrive?</p> <p>20. What is the Spinning Mule, and who contrived it?</p> <p>21. Who contrived the Power-loom?</p> <p>22. What was the value of the cotton manufactures in 1769, and what the value of the same in 1824?</p> <p>23. Who invented the condenser?</p> <p>24. By whom was the first steamboat contrived, and in what year?</p> <p>25. Who designed really the first useful steamer, and in what year?</p> <p>26. What did Murdoch of Cornwall discover?</p> <p>27. When was the safety-lamp invented?</p> <p>28. When was Lithography invented?</p> <p>29. When was Stereotyping invented, and in what country?</p> <p>30. When were copper pennies coined?</p> |
|---|--|

X. FROM 1820 TILL THE PRESENT TIME.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Mention some of the poems of Sir Walter Scott.</p> <p>2. Who were the Lake Poets?</p> <p>3. Mention Wordsworth's great poem.</p> <p>4. For what work is Coleridge best known?</p> <p>5. Mention two works of Southey.</p> <p>6. Whose narrative poems are the finest productions of the century?</p> <p>7. Mention two of Moore's works.</p> <p>8. Mention some of the works of Thomas Campbell.</p> <p>9. Who wrote Queen Mab?</p> <p>10. Who wrote Endymion?</p> <p>11. Mention the most noteworthy among the lady poets.</p> <p>12. Who is the Poet-Laureate?</p> <p>13. Mention some of his works.</p> <p>14. Mention a remarkable poet and poetess.</p> | <p>15. Who was the most humorous poet?</p> <p>16. Who was the most powerful novelist?</p> <p>17. Mention two of the earlier lady novelists.</p> <p>18. Mention the principal novelists of our time.</p> <p>19. Mention the most successful author in tragedy.</p> <p>20. Mention the most successful authors in comedy.</p> <p>21. Mention the greatest critics.</p> <p>22. Mention the best writers of English history.</p> <p>23. Mention the best writers of Greek history.</p> <p>24. Who has excelled in Theology?</p> <p>25. Who has excelled in Philosophy?</p> <p>26. Mention some others who have</p> |
|--|--|

excelled in different departments of literature.

27. Who is one of the greatest architects of our time?

28. Mention some of the great painters.

29. Name some of the most notable composers of music.

30. When was Photography discovered?

31. In what ways does Chemistry do good service?

32. Mention one of the most important discoveries of modern times.

33. What is Meteorology?

34. Name the most distinguished in geographical research.

35. What are our great sources of wealth?

36. What is the annual value of the cotton manufactures reckoned at?

37. When was the locomotive engine invented, and by whom?

38. When was the electric telegraph first used for the transmission of news?

39. In what year was a cable successfully laid along the bottom of the Atlantic between England and America?

40. When was the first great exhibition?

41. What coins have been introduced?

MONARCHS OF ENGLAND.

Reign & Regn.

SAXONS AND DANES.

827	Egbert	reigned 10 years.
837	Ethelwulf	" 21 "
858	Ethelbald	" 2 "
860	Ethelbert	" 6 "
866	Ethelred I.	" 5 "
871	Alfred, the Great,	" 29½ "
901	Edward I., the Elder,	" 24 "
925	Athelstane	" 15 "
940	Edmund I.	" 6 "
946	Edred	" 9 "
955	Edwy	" 4 "
959	Edgar	" 16 "
975	Edward II., the Martyr,	" 3 "
978	Ethelred II., the Unready,	" 38 "
1016	Edmund II., Ironside,	" 1 "
1017	Canute, the Great,	" 19 "
1036	Harold I., Harefoot,	" 4 "
1040	Hardicanute	" 2 "
1042	Edward III., the Confessor,	" 24 "
1066	Harold II.,	" 9 months.

NORMAN.

1066	William I., the Conqueror,	" 20yrs.10 mths. 25 dys.
1087	William II., Rufus,	" 12 " 10 " 24 "
1100	Henry I.	" 35 " 4 " "
1135	Stephen, of Blois,	" 18 " 10 " 25 "

PLANTAGENET.

1154	Henry II.	" 34 " 8 " 11 "
1189	Richard I., Cœur de Lion,	" 9 " 9 " "
1199	John, Lackland,	" 17 " 6 " "
1216	Henry III.	" 56 " 1 " "
1272	Edward I.	" 34 " 7 " 21 "
1307	" II.	" 19 " 6 " 13 "
1327	" III.	" 50 " 5 " "
1377	Richard II.	" 22 " 3 " 8 "

LANCASTER.

1399	Henry IV.	" 13 " 5 " 20 "
1413	" V.	" 9 " 5 " 11 "
1422	" VI.	" 38 " 6 " 5 "

Reign &
length.

YORK.

1461	Edward IV.	.	.	reigned 22 yrs. 1 mth. 4 dys.
1483	„ V.	.	„	2 „ 2 „
1483	Richard III.	.	„	2 „ 2 „

TUDOR.

1485	Henry VII.	.	.	23 „ 8 „
1509	„ VIII.	.	.	37 „ 9 „ 6 „
1547	Edward VI.	.	.	6 „ 5 „ 8 „
1553	Mary I.	.	.	5 „ 4 „ 11 „
1558	Elizabeth .	.	.	44 „ 4 „ 7 „

STUART—UNION OF ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND.

1603	James I.	.	.	22 „ 0 „ 3 „
1625	Charles I.	.	.	23 „ 9 „ 23 „
1649	Commonwealth,	.	.	4 „ 10 „ 17 „
1654	Oliver Cromwell, Protector,	.	.	4 „ 8 „ 18 „
1658	Richard Cromwell, Protector,	.	.	8 „ 10 „
1659	Commonwealth, Restored	.	.	1 „ 1 „

STUART.

1660	Charles II.	.	.	24 „ 9 „ 3 „
1685	James II.	.	.	3 „ 10 „ 17 „
1689	William III. Prince of Orange, and Mary II., Joint Sovereigns,	.	.	5 „ 10 „ 12 „
1694	William III. alone	.	.	7 „ 2 „ 8 „
1702	Anne .	.	.	12 „ 4 „ 24 „

BRUNSWICK.

1714	George I.	.	.	12 „ 10 „ 10 „
1727	„ II.	.	.	33 „ 4 „ 3 „
1760	„ III.	.	.	59 „ 3 „ 4 „
1820	„ IV.	.	.	10 „ 4 „
1830	William IV.	.	.	6 „ 11 „ 24 „
1837	Victoria,	Still reigning.		

CHRONOLOGICAL LIST

OF THE

PRINCIPAL AUTHORS OF ENGLAND, WITH
THE TITLE OF THEIR CHIEF WORK.

Name.	Principal Work.	Born	Died
Roger Bacon, . . .	<i>Opus Majus,</i> . . .	1214	1292
Sir John Mandevillo, . . .	<i>Travels in the East,</i> . . .	1300	1372
John Gower, . . .	<i>Confessio Amantis,</i> . . .	1320	1408
John Wickliffe, . . .	<i>Translation of the Bible,</i> . . .	1324	1384
Geoffrey Chaucer, . . .	<i>Canterbury Tales,</i> . . .	1328	1400
Sir Thomas More, . . .	<i>Utopia,</i> . . .	1480	1535
Roger Ascham, . . .	<i>The Schoolmaster,</i> . . .	1515	1568
Sir Walter Raleigh, . . .	<i>History of the World,</i> . . .	1552	1618
Edmund Spenser, . . .	<i>Faerie Queene,</i> . . .	1553	1599
Sir Philip Sidney, . . .	<i>Arcadia,</i> . . .	1554	1586
Francis (Lord) Bacon, . . .	<i>Novum Organum,</i> . . .	1561	1626
William Shakspeare, . . .	<i>Hamlet,</i> . . .	1564	1616
Ben. Jonson, . . .	{ <i>Every Man in his</i> <i>Humour,</i> . . .	1574	1637
Thomas Hobbes, . . .	<i>Leviathan,</i> . . .	1588	1679
George Herbert, . . .	<i>The Temple,</i> . . .	1593	1633
Sir Thomas Browne, . . .	<i>Religio Medici,</i> . . .	1605	1682
John Milton, . . .	<i>Paradise Lost,</i> . . .	1608	1674
Samuel Butler, . . .	<i>Hudibras,</i> . . .	1612	1680
Jeremy Taylor, . . .	<i>The Great Exemplar,</i> . . .	1613	1667
Abraham Cowley, . . .	<i>Davidis,</i> . . .	1618	1667
John Bunyan, . . .	<i>Pilgrim's Progress,</i> . . .	1628	1688
John Dryden, . . .	<i>Hind and Panther,</i> . . .	1631	1700
John Locke, . . .	<i>Human Understanding,</i> . . .	1632	1704
Sir Isaac Newton, . . .	<i>Principia,</i> . . .	1642	1727
Daniel De Foe, . . .	<i>Robinson Crusoe,</i> . . .	1661	1731
Jonathan Swift, . . .	<i>Gulliver's Travels,</i> . . .	1667	1745
Joseph Addison, . . .	<i>Spectator,</i> . . .	1672	1719
Alexander Pope, . . .	<i>Essay on Man,</i> . . .	1688	1744
John Gay, . . .	<i>Beggar's Opera,</i> . . .	1692	1732

Name.	Principal Work.	Born	Died
Joseph Butler, . . .	<i>Analogy of Religion,</i> . . .	1692	1752
James Thomson, . . .	<i>The Seasons,</i> . . .	1700	1748
Henry Fielding, . . .	<i>Tom Jones,</i> . . .	1707	1754
Samuel Johnson, . . .	<i>English Dictionary,</i> . . .	1709	1784
David Hume, . . .	<i>History of England,</i> . . .	1711	1776
Laurence Sterne, . . .	<i>Tristram Shandy,</i> . . .	1713	1768
Thomas Gray, . . .	<i>Elegy in a Churchyard,</i> . . .	1716	1771
Tobias George Smollet, . . .	<i>Roderick Random,</i> . . .	1721	1771
Adam Smith, . . .	<i>Wealth of Nations,</i> . . .	1723	1790
Oliver Goldsmith, . . .	<i>Vicar of Wakefield,</i> . . .	1728	1774
William Cowper, . . .	<i>The Task,</i> . . .	1731	1800
Edmund Burke, . . .	<i>The Sublime and Beautiful,</i> . . .	1731	1797
Edward Gibbon, . . .	<i>Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire,</i> . . .	1737	1794
William Paley, . . .	<i>Horæ Paulinae,</i> . . .	1743	1805
Dugald Stewart, . . .	<i>The Human Mind,</i> . . .	1753	1828
Robert Burns, . . .	<i>Cottar's Saturday Night,</i> . . .	1759	1796
Maria Edgeworth, . . .	<i>Moral Tales,</i> . . .	1765	1849
William Wordsworth, . . .	<i>The Excursion,</i> . . .	1770	1850
Sir Walter Scott, . . .	<i>Waverley,</i> . . .	1771	1832
Samuel Taylor Coleridge, . . .	<i>The Ancient Mariner,</i> . . .	1772	1834
Robert Southey, . . .	<i>Curse of Kehama,</i> . . .	1774	1843
Thomas Campbell, . . .	<i>Pleasures of Hope,</i> . . .	1777	1844
Henry Hallam, . . .	<i>Constitutional History of England,</i> . . .	1777	1859
Thomas Moore, . . .	<i>Lalla Rookh,</i> . . .	1779	1852
Thomas De Quincey, . . .	<i>Confessions of an Opium Eater,</i> . . .	1785	1859
George Gordon (Lord Byron), . . .	<i>Childe Harold,</i> . . .	1788	1824
Percy Bysshe Shelley, . . .	<i>Revolt of Islam,</i> . . .	1792	1822
Felicia Dorothea Hemans, . . .	<i>Forest Sanctuary,</i> . . .	1794	1835
Thomas Carlyle, . . .	<i>French Revolution,</i> . . .	1795	Living
John Keats, . . .	<i>Endymion,</i> . . .	1796	1821
Thomas Babington (Lord) Macaulay, . . .	<i>History of England,</i> . . .	1800	1859
John Keble, . . .	<i>The Christian Year,</i> . . .	1800	1866
Hugh Miller, . . .	<i>Testimony of the Rocks,</i> . . .	1802	1856
Edward Bulwer (Lord) Lytton, . . .	<i>The Lady of Lyons,</i> . . .	1803	1873
Elizabeth B. Browning, . . .	<i>Aurora Leigh,</i> . . .	1809	1861
Alfred Tennyson, . . .	<i>In Memoriam,</i> . . .	1810	Living
William M. Thackeray, . . .	<i>Vanity Fair,</i> . . .	1811	1863
Charles Dickens, . . .	<i>Pickwick Papers,</i> . . .	1812	1870
Robert Browning, . . .	<i>The Ring and the Book,</i> . . .	1812	Living

CHRONOLOGICAL LIST

07

DISTINGUISHED PERSONS IN ENGLISH HISTORY.

Name		Born.	Died.
Stigand,	{ Archbishop of Canter-	1008	1072
Nicholas Breakspear,	bury,	1095	1159
Thomas à Beckett, . .	{ Pope Adrian IV., . .	1119	1170
Stephen Langton, . .	{ Archbishop of Canter-	1151	1228
Simon de Montfort, . .	bury,	1206	1265
William of Wykeham,	Earl of Leicester, . .	1324	1404
Edward, Black Prince,	Architect,	1330	1375
William Caxton, . . .	General,	1412	1491
Thomas Wolsey,	Printer,	1471	1530
Stephen Gardiner, . .	Cardinal,	1483	1555
Thomas Cromwell, . .	Bishop of Salisbury, .	1490	1540
Edmund Bonner, . . .	Minister of State, . .	1495	1569
Reginald Pole,	Bishop of London, . .	1500	1558
Sir Thomas Gresham,	Cardinal,	1519	1579
Sir John Hawkins, . .	Merchant,	1520	1595
William Cecil, Lord	Admiral,	1520	1598
Burleigh,	{ Statesman,	1536	1590
Sir Francis Walsingham,	Statesman,	1545	1595
Sir Francis Drake, . .	Admiral,	1552	1594
Sir Martin Frobisher,	Admiral,	1552	1638
Sir Edward Coke, . . .	Lawyer,	1565	1612
Robert Cecil,	Statesman,	1572	1652
Inigo Jones,	Architect,	1592	1628
Geo. Villiers, Duke of	{ Statesman,	1594	1643
Buckingham,	Parliamentary Orator,		
John Hampden,			

Name.		Born.	Died.
Thomas (Lord) Fairfax,	General,	1611	1671
Sir Henry Vane,	Parliamentary Orator,	1612	1662
George Fox,	Founder of Society of Friends,	1624	1690
Robert Boyle,	Natural Philosopher, . .	1626	1691
Sir Christopher Wren,	Architect,	1632	1723
John Churchill, Duke of Marlborough,	General,	1650	1722
Sir Robert Walpole,	Statesman,	1676	1745
George Anson,	Navigator,	1697	1762
William Hogarth,	Painter,	1697	1764
John Wesley,	Founder of Wesleyan Methodism,	1703	1791
William Pitt, Earl of Chatham,	Statesman,	1708	1778
Sir Joshua Reynolds,	Painter,	1723	1792
Robert (Lord) Clive,	General,	1725	1774
James Wolfe,	General,	1726	1759
John Howard,	Philanthropist,	1726	1790
James (Captain) Cook,	Navigator,	1728	1779
Sir Richard Arkwright,	Inventor,	1732	1792
James Watt,	Inventor,	1736	1819
Sir William Herschel,	Astronomer,	1738	1822
Edmund Cartwright,	Inventor,	1743	1823
Charles James Fox,	Statesman,	1749	1806
Horatio (Lord) Nelson	Admiral,	1753	1805
William Pitt,	Statesman,	1759	1806
William Wilberforce,	Philanthropist,	1759	1833
Richard (Marquis) Wellesley,	General,	1760	1842
Sir John Moore,	General,	1761	1809
Arthur Wellesley, Duke of Wellington,	General,	1769	1852
George Canning,	Statesman,	1770	1827
Sir Humphrey Davy,	Chemist,	1778	1829
Henry (Lord) Brougham,	Statesman,	1779	1868
George Stephenson,	Engineer,	1781	1848
Sir John Franklin,	Navigator,	1786	1847
Sir Robert Peel,	Statesman,	1788	1850
Lord Raglan,	General,	1788	1855
Michael Faraday,	Chemist,	1791	1867
Colin Campbell, Lord Clyde,	General,	1792	1863
Sir Roderick Murchison,	Geologist,	1792	1871
Sir John W. F. Herschel,	Astronomer,	1792	1871
Sir Henry Havelock,	General,	1795	1857
Robert Stephenson,	Engineer,	1803	1859
Richard Cobden,	Statesman,	1804	1865

INDEX.

- Abbey, Battle, 52.
Acre, 83.
Addington, Henry, 265.
Adela, 67.
Adelaide, Queen, 274.
Agincourt, Battle of, 127.
Agricola, Julius, 15.
Aix-la-Chapelle, Treaties of, 217, 253.
Albans, St., Battles of, 134.
Albanus, Saint, 18.
Albany, Duke of, 142.
Albert, Prince Consort, 277, 283.
Albigenses, 87.
Albuera, Battle of, 268.
Alden Castle, 246.
Aldhelm, 54.
Alexander III., Pope, 77.
Alexander III. of Scotland, 90.
Alexander IV., Pope, 94.
Alfred the Great, 54, 55.
Alliance, The Triple, 241.
Alma, Battle of, 282.
Alnwick, Battle at, 79.
Alva, Duke of, 176.
Ambleuse, 226.
America, Discovery of, 152.
Amiens, Council of, 94.
Amiens, Peace of, 265.
Amsterdam, 218.
Angles, 20, 22, 24.
Anglia, East, 22, 26.
Anglia, 24, 27.
Anglian Bernicia, 22.
Anglo-Saxons, 23, 26.
Anne Boleyn, 157.
Anne of Bohemia, 115.
Anne of Brittany, 149.
Anne of Cleves, 160.
Anne of Denmark, 191.
Anne, Queen, 239.
Anselm of Canterbury, 64, 66.
Antoninus, Pius, 16.
Argyle, Marquis of, 197.
Argyle, Earl of, 222.
Argyle, Duke of, 247.
Aries, Council of, 19.
Arlington, Henry, Lord, 217.
Armada, Spanish, 178.
Arras, 131.
Arthur, King, 23,
Arthur, Plantagenet, 82.
Arthur, Prince, 151.
Articles, Six, 164.
Ashley, Lord, 217.
Assassination Plot, 238.
Atheistane, 37, 39.
Atterbury, Bishop of Rochester, 243.
Audley, Lord, 151.
Augustine, St., 24.
Augustus, 10.
Austria, Archduke of, 233.
Auverquerque, 237.
Aymer de Valence, 102.

Bacon, Francis, 190.
Bacon, Roger, 96.
Badajoz, Battle of, 268.
Balaclava, Battle of, 282.
Ball, John, 113.
Baliol, John, 100.
Balmerino, Lord, 253.
Baltimore, 270.
Banbury, Battle of, 140.
Bannockburn, Battle of, 105.
Barbour, John, 117.
Barnet, Battle of, 141.
Bartholomew, Massacre of, 176.
Battle Abbey, 52.
Bavaria, Elector of, 238.
Beaton, Cardinal, 161.
Beaufort, Bishop of Winchester, 130.
Beaune, 128.
Becket, Thomas à, 75.
Bede, The Venerable, 88, 55.
Bedford, Duke of, 129.
Belleisle, 256.
Bellerophon, 269.
Benevolences, 149.
Bentick, Earl of Portland, 237.
Beornwulf, 31.
Berengaria of Navarre, 82.
Bericus, 13.
Berkeley, Castle, 106.
Bernicia, 37.
Bertha, 24.
Bible, Translation of, 117.
Black Death, 111.
Blackheath, Battle of, 151.
Black Hole of Calcutta, 255.
Blackwater, 130.

- Blenheim, Battle of, 242.
 Boadicea, Queen, 14.
 Boethius, 33, 103.
 Boleyn, Anne, 157.
 Bolton Castle, 175.
 Bombay, 214.
 Bonaparte, General, 264.
 Boniface, 23.
 Bonnaer, Bishop, 168.
 Boroughbridge, Battle of, 105.
 Boston, 259.
 Bosworth, Battle of, 143.
 Bothwell, Earl of, 174.
 Boulogne, Siege of, 162.
 Bovines, Battle at, 83.
 Boyne, Battle of, 233.
 Breila, Declaration from, 212.
 Breda, Treaty of, 216.
 Brest, Battles of, 153, 254.
 Bretigny, Treaty of, 111.
 Bretwalda, 26.
 Brigantes, 14.
 Bright, John, 280.
 Brittany, Lower, 22.
 Bruce, Robert, 100.
 Brunanburg, Battle of, 39.
 Buckingham, Duke of, 145, 217.
 Bunker's Hill, Battle of, 259.
 Burdett, Sir Francis, 273.
 Burmese War, 274.
 Busaco, Battle of, 267.
 Bute, Lord, 257.
 Byng, Admiral, 243, 249, 254.
 Cabal Ministry, 217.
 Cade, Jack, 133.
 Cadiz, Battles of, 178, 179.
 Caen, 62, 127.
 Calais, 110, 170.
 Calcutta, Black Hole of, 255.
 Calder, Sir Robert, 266.
 Caledonia, 11.
 Caligula, 11, 13.
 Calvin, John, 172.
 Camalodunum (Rochester), 13, 14.
 Cambay, League of, 153.
 Campeggio, Cardinal, 157.
 Camperdown, Battle of, 263.
 Canada, 255.
 Canning, George, 278.
 Canterbury, 25.
 Canute, 45.
 Caractacus, 14.
 Carew, Sir Peter, 167.
 Carisbrook Castle, 203.
 Caribbean Islands, 257.
 Caroline of Anspach, 250.
 Caroline of Brunswick, 271.
 Carpenter, General, 248.
 Carr, Robert, 189.
 Carteret, John, Earl of Granville, 251.
 Cartismandua, 14.
 Cartwright, Thomas, 173.
 Cassiterides Islands, 9.
 Cassivellanna, 10.
 Catesby, Robert, 187.
 Catherine of France, 128.
 Catherine of Aragon, 151.
 Catherine of Braganza, 214.
 Catholic Association, The, 273.
 Catholic Relief Bill, 273.
 Cearls or Ceorls, 27.
 Ceawlin, 26.
 Cecil, William, Lord Burleigh, 170.
 Cecil, Robert, 189.
 Cerdic, 22.
 Charibert, King, 24.
 Charlemagne, Emperor of Germany, 31, 32.
 Charles IV. of France, 103.
 Charles V. of France, 111.
 Charles VI. of France, 126.
 Charles VII. of France, 128.
 Charles VIII. of France, 149.
 Charles XI. of France, 109.
 Charles V. of Germany, 155.
 Charles II. of Spain, 238.
 Charles XII. of Sweden, 248.
 Charles I., 191.
 Charles II., 212.
 Charles Edward, Prince, 252.
 Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz, 256.
 Charlotte, Princess, 270.
 Charter, People's, 278.
 Chartists, 278.
 Chaucer, Geoffrey, 117.
 Chester, 18.
 Chevalier de St. George, 247.
 Chevy Chase, Battle of, 115.
 Cholera, Asiatic, 275.
 Christianity, Diffusion of in Britain, 18.
 Churchill, John, Duke of Marlborough, 241.
 Cintra, Convention of, 267.
 Ciudad Rodrigo, Battle of, 268.
 Clarendon, Constitutions of, 76.
 Clarendon, Earl of (Edward Hyde) 213.
 Claudius, 13.
 Clement VII., Pope, 157.
 Clifford, Sir Robert, 150.
 Clifford, Lord, 217.
 Clive, Robert, 255.
 Clovis, 21.
 Cobham, Lord (Sir John Oldcastle), 126.
 Cobden, Richard, 280.
 Coleraine, 191.
 Columba, St., 42, 54.
 Columbus, 152.
 Commission, Court of High, 171.
 Commons, House of, 117.
 Commonwealth, The, 204.
 Compiegne, 131.
 Comyn, John, 101.
 Couradio, 96.

- Constance, 85.
 Constantine, 18.
 Constantius, 18.
 Constantinople, 20.
 Conventicle Act, 214.
 Conway, Lord, 214.
 Copenhagen, Battle of, 265.
 Corfe Castle, 43.
 Corn Law, Anti-League, 280.
 Cornwallis, Lord, 260.
 Corsica, Island of, 263.
 Corunna, Battle of, 267.
 Covenant, National, 195.
 Coverdale, Miles, 162.
 Coway Stakes, 10.
 Cranner, Thomas, 157, 162.
 Crecy, Battle of, 110.
 Crimean War, 282.
 Cromwell, Thomas, 158.
 Cromwell, Henry, 205.
 Cromwell, Oliver, 197.
 Cromwell, Richard, 211.
 Crusades, Object of, 60.
 Culloden Moor, Battle of, 253.
 Cumberland, 22.
 Cuthbert, St., 36.
 Cymri, 11.
- Danby, Earl of (Sir Thomas Osbourne),
 219, 226.
 Danegelt, 44, 50.
 Darnley, Lord, 173.
 David of Wales, 93.
 David IV. of Scotland, 108.
 David, Earl of Huntingdon, 100.
 Deal, 10, 150.
 Deira, Saxon, 22.
 Derwentwater, Earl of, 248.
 Dettingen, Battle of, 252.
 Devonshire, Earl of, 226.
 De Witt, Admiral, 215.
 Dietum of Kemilworth, 95.
 Dieppe, 236.
 Diocletian, 18.
 Domesday Book, 61.
 Dominica, 257.
 Domremy, 130.
 Douglas, Earl of, 108.
 Dover, Treaty of, 217.
 Dowla, Rajah, 255.
 Downs, Battle of, 207.
 Drake, Admiral, 178.
 Drogheda, 205.
 Druidism, 12.
 Dudley, 153.
 Dunbar, Battles of, 100, 206.
 Dundaik, 234.
 Dundee, Viscount, 234.
 Dunes, Battle of the, 210.
 Dungeness, 252.
 Dunkirk, 210, 214, 236.
 Dunstable, 158.
- Dunstan, 40, 41.
 Duplex, Governor of Coromandel
 Coast, 255.
- Edgar Atheling, 50.
 Edgehill, Battle of, 199.
 Edmund the Elder, 89.
 Edmund Ironside, 50.
 Edmund, Earl of March, 193.
 Edmund, Earl of Suffolk, 151.
 Edred, 40.
 Education Act, Elementary, 281.
 Edward the Elder, 38.
 Edward II., 43.
 Edward the Confessor, 49.
 Edward I., 97.
 Edward II., First Prince of Wales, 103.
 Edward III., 106.
 Edward, Black Prince, 110.
 Edward IV., 137.
 Edward, Prince, 141.
 Edward V., 143.
 Edward VI., 163.
 Edward, Duke of Buckingham, 155.
 Edwin, 60.
 Edwy, 40.
 Egbert, 27, 31, 32.
 Elba, Island of, 269.
 Eleanor of France, 70, 79.
 Eleanor of Provence, 92.
 Eleanor, Daughter of King John, 62.
 Elfrida, 42.
 Elgiva, 41.
 Elizabeth Grey, Lady, 130.
 Elizabeth of York, 148.
 Elizabeth, Queen, 162, 170.
 Elizabeth, Princess, 189.
 Ella, 22, 26.
 Elliot, General, 260.
 Ely, Isle of, 60.
 Emma, 44.
 Empson, 153.
 Enniskillen, 234.
 Eric, King of Norway, 99.
 Ernest, King of Hanover, 277.
 Essex, Kingdom of, 22.
 Essex, Lord, 221.
 Essex, Earl of (Robert Devereux), 180.
 Estaples, Treaty of, 150.
 Ethelbald, 33.
 Ethelbert, 29, 33.
 Ethelred II., the Unready, 43, 44.
 Ethelwulf, 32.
 Eustace, 69.
 Evesham, 95.
- Fairfax, Thomas, Lord, 201.
 Falkirk, 101.
 Farrendon, 39.
 Fawkes, Guy, 187.
 Fenian Conspiracy, 279.
 Ferdinand V. of Spain, 158.
 Feversham, Earl of, 223.

- "Field of the Cloth of Gold," 155.
 Finsterre, Cape, Battle at, 596.
 Fire, The Great, 215.
 First Crusade, Principal Heroes of, 64.
 Five Mile Act, 214.
 Fleetwood, Charles, 205.
 Flodden, Battle of, 154.
 Folkland, 27.
 Fontenoy, Battle of, 252.
 Foster, Mr., 245.
 Fotheringay Castle, 177.
 Fox, Henry, Lord Holland, 254.
 Fox, Charles James, 259.
 Framlingham Castle, 167.
 Francis I. of France, 155.
 Francis II. of France (Dauphin), 172.
 Frederick, Elector Palatine of the Rhine, 199.
 Frederick the Great, 246.
 Frederick, Prince of Wales, 250.
 Free Trade, 250.
 Frisians, 20.
 Frobisher, Martin, Admiral, 173.
 Frost, Williams, and Jones, 273.
 Gael, 11.
 Gage, General, 259.
 Gama, Vasco de, 152.
 Galba, 15.
 Gardiner, Bishop, 163.
 Gaveston, Piers de, 103.
 Geoffrey of Anjou, 67.
 Geoffrey Plantagenet, 75.
 George, Duke of Clarence, 139.
 George of Denmark, 239.
 George I., 246.
 George II., 250.
 George III., 256.
 George IV., 271.
 Geneva, 172.
 Germans, St., 226.
 Ghent, Peace of, 270.
 Ghibellines, 68.
 Gibraltar, Siege of, 242.
 Gildas, 64.
 Gisors, Peace of, 65.
 Glennoe, Massacre of, 236.
 Glendower, Owen, 123.
 Gloucester, Earl of, 95.
 Gloucester, Diet of, 97.
 Goderich, Viscount, 273.
 Godwin, Earl, 50.
 Good Hope, Cape of, 152, 265.
 Goodwin Sands, 207.
 Gordon, Catherine, 150.
 Gordon, Lord George, 261.
 Goree Island, 254.
 Gravesend, Battle of, 216.
 Greece, Independence of, 274.
 Gregory I., Pope, 24.
 Gregory VII., Pope (Hildebrand), 52, 60.
 Granada, 257.
 Greenville, George, 257.
 Grey, Sir John, 139.
 Grey, Lady Jane, 166.
 Grey, Lord, 156.
 Grey, Lord, 223.
 Guiana, Pope's Legate, 91.
 Guelpcha, 63.
 Guiana, 180.
 Guipuscoa, 153.
 Guise, Duke of, 160.
 Guisnes, 155.
 Guthred, 37.
 Guthrum, 36.
 Habeas Corpus Act, 220.
 Hadrian, Emperor, 16.
 Hadrian IV., Pope, 74.
 Halifax, Marquis of, 224.
 Hamilton, Duke of, 224.
 Hampden, John, 198.
 Harfleur, 127.
 Hardicanute, 43.
 Harold, 43.
 Haalerig, 199.
 Hastings, Lord, 144.
 Hastings, Battle of, 52.
 Hastings, John, 100.
 Havannah, 257.
 Havre, 236, 254.
 Hawkins, Admiral, 178.
 Helena, St., Island of, 269.
 Hengist, 21, 22.
 Henrietta Maria, of France, 191.
 Henry I., 65.
 Henry II., 74.
 Henry III., 91.
 Henry IV., 123.
 Henry V., 125.
 Henry VI., 129.
 Henry VII., 143.
 Henry VIII., 132.
 Henry V. of Germany, 66.
 Henry of Anjou, 69.
 Henry VI. of Germauy, 83.
 Henry, Earl of Lancaster, 107.
 Henry of Castile, 111.
 Henry, Earl of Derby, 115.
 Henry, Prince, 79.
 Henry, Earl of Richmond, 144.
 Henry, Prince, 139.
 Henry, Cardinal York, 253.
 Heptarchy, 20, 22.
 Hereward, 60.
 Hertford, Earl of, 163.
 Hildebrand (Pope Gregory VII.), 52.
 Hill, 243.
 Hoche, General, 263.
 Holbeach, 188.
 Hollis, Lord, 199.
 Holmby House, 202.
 Honorius, 17.
 Honorius, III., Pope, 92.

- Hood, Admiral,
 Hooper, John, 163.
 Hope, Cape of Good, 153, 265.
 Horsa, 21.
 Hounslow Heath, 224.
 Howard, Sir Edward, 153.
 Howard, Catherine, 161.
 Howard, Lord, of Effingham, 178.
 Howe, Lord, 263.
 Hubert of Canterbury, 85.
 Huguenots, 176.
 Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, 129.
 Huntingdon, 74.
 Hyde, Anne, 221.

 Icen, 14.
 Ina of Wessex, 28, 29.
 Independents, 200.
 India, East, Company, 191, 276.
 Indian Mutiny, 283.
 Indulgence, Declaration of, 218.
 Inkerman, 282.
 Innocent III., Pope, 86, 90.
 Interdict, England under, 87.
 International Exhibition, 283.
 Interregnum, 226.
 Investiture, Right of, 66.
 Ipswich, 233.
 Ireland, Conquest of, 75.
 Ireton, Henry, 205.
 Irish Brigade, 235.
 Irish Rebellion, 279.
 Irish Church Disestablished, 281.
 Ironsides, The, 200.
 Isabella of France, 103.
 Isabella of Scotland, 107.
 Isabella of France, 118.
 Isabella of France, 123.
 Itius, Port, 10.

 Jacobites, 235, 248.
 Jacqueline, Countess of Hainault, 120.
 Jacqueline of Luxemburg, 181.
 James I. of Scotland, 124.
 James IV. of Scotland, 150.
 James VI. of Scotland and I. of Eng-
 land, 174.
 James II., Duke of York, 215.
 Jeffreys, Judge, 223.
 Jennings, Sarah, Duchess of Marl-
 borough, 241.
 Jervis, John, 263.
 Jews, 81, 99.
 Joan of Arc, 130.
 John II. of France, 111.
 John of Gaunt, 115.
 John, Duke of Burgundy, 120.
 John, Duke of Bedford, 129.
 John, Knights of St., 265.
 John, Prince, afterwards King, 80, 85.
 Joseph, King of Spain, 267.
 Julian Year, 256.

 Julius Cæsar, 9.
 Julius II., Pope, 153.
 Jury, Trial by, 79.
 Jutes, 22.
 Juxon, Bishop of London, 204.

 Kelts, 11.
 Ken, Bishop, 225.
 Kenmure, Lord, 248.
 Kent, Edward, Duke of, 270, 277.
 Kenilworth Castle, 94, 106.
 Kenilworth, Dictum of, 95.
 Killiecrankie, Pass of, 234.
 Kilmarnock, Lord, 253.
 Kimbolton, Lord, 198.
 Kinsale, 180.
 Kirk of Field, 174.
 Kirke, Colonel, 223.
 Kirpatrick, 102.
 Knights Templars, 68.
 Knights of St. John, 68.
 Knox, John, 172.
 Konigsmark, Count, 246.

 Lafayette, General, 260.
 La Hogue, Battle of, 236.
 Lake, General, 204.
 Lake, Bishop, 225.
 Lambert, General, 211.
 Langland, William, 117.
 Langside, Battle of, 175.
 Lanfranc, 60, 63.
 Langton, Stephen, 86.
 Latimer, Hugh, 168.
 Laud, Archbishop, 194.
 Lauderdale, Duke of, 217.
 Leake, Admiral, 242.
 Leighton, Dr., 194.
 Leipzig, 268.
 Leo IV., Pope, 83.
 Leo X., Pope, 154.
 Leopold, Duke of Austria, 83.
 Leopold, King of the Belgians, 270.
 Leslie, Sir David (Earl of Leven), 196.
 Leven, Loch, 175.
 Leven, Earl of (Sir David Leslie), 197.
 Lewes, Mise of, 94.
 Lexington, 259.
 Limerick, 205.
 Limerick, Treaty of, 235.
 Limoges, 112.
 Lincoln, 18.
 "Lion of Justice," 67.
 Lionel, Duke of Clarence, 125.
 Liverpool, Lord, 268.
 Llewellyn, Prince of Wales, 95.
 Lloyd, Bishop, 225.
 Lollards, 125.
 Lombards, 21, 59.
 Londinium, 14.
 Londonderry, 191, 234.
 Louis VI. of France, 66.

Ionis VII., 70, 74.
 Louis VIII. of France, 91.
 Louis IX. of France, St., 94.
 Louis XI., 142.
 Louis XII. of France, 154.
 Louis XVI. of France, 260, 262.
 Louis XVIII. of France, 268.
 Lovat, Lord, 253.
 Lovel, Lord, 148.
 Lowestoft, 215.
 Lucia, St., Island of, 257.
 Ludlow, 134.
 Luther, Martin, 158.
 Lutterworth, 117.
 Lyme Regis, 223.

 Macbeth, 50.
 Magdalene College, 224.
 Magna Charta, 89.
 Mahommedan Era, commencement of, 28.
 Maitland, Captain, 260.
 Malaga, 241.
 Malcolm III., Kenmore, of Scotland, 60.
 Malcolm IV. of Scotland, 100.
 Malo, St., 230.
 Malta, Island of, 264.
 Man, Isle of, 132.
 Mandeville, John, 117.
 Manning, Robert, 117.
 Mantua, 92.
 Mar, Earl of, 247.
 Margaret, Maid of Norway, 90.
 Margaret of Anjou, 132.
 Margaret of Burgundy, 149.
 Margaret Tudor, 151.
 Maria Theresa, 252.
 Marlborough, Duke of (John Churchill), 241.
 Marston Moor, Battle of, 200.
 Martel, Charles, 28.
 Martinico, Island of, 257.
 Mary, daughter of Henry VII., and wife of Louis XII. of France, 154.
 Mary I., 162, 196.
 Mary II., 207, 287.
 Mary, Queen of Scots, 173.
 Mary of Guise, 178.
 Marie d'Este, 221.
 Masham, Mrs., 241.
 Massachusetts, 259.
 Massena, General, 207.
 Matilda, 66.
 Matilda of Anjou, 66, 69.
 Maximilian I., Emperor of Germany, 153.
 Meian, 236.
 Mehemet Ali, 281.
 Melbourne, Viscount, 276.
 Mercia, Kingdom of, 23.
 Merovingians, 24.
Military Petition, 187.

Milton, John, 204.
 Minorca, 243.
 Miss of Lewes, 94.
 Mona, Island of (Anglesea), 13.
 Monk, General, 211.
 Monmouth, Duke of, 220.
 Montacute, Lord, 138.
 Monteith, John, 102.
 Montereau, 123.
 Montfort, Simon de, 92.
 Montfort, Countess de, 102.
 Monument, The, 216.
 Moore, Roger, 197.
 Moore, Sir John, 267.
 Morcar, 60.
 More, Sir Thomas, 156, 153.
 Mortimer, Edward, 124.
 Mortimer's Cross, 135.
 Mortimer, Roger, 106.
 Mortmain, Statue of, 98.
 Montrose, Earl of, 201.
 Mountjoy, Lord, 180.
 Murray, or Moray, Earl of, 175.
 Mutiny Act, 233.

 Namur, 236.
 Nantes, Edict of, 224.
 Nantwich, 200, 211.
 Napier, Sir Charles, 282.
 Napoleon I., 269.
 Naseby, Battle of, 201.
 National Covenant, 195.
 Navarino, Battle of, 274.
 Navigation Act, 207.
 Neath Abbey, 106.
 Nelson, Horatio, Lord, 263.
 Nennis, 54.
 Nero, 14.
 Neville's Cross, 110.
 Newark, 90.
 Newcastle, 196.
 Newcastle, Duke of, 253.
 New England, 191.
 New Forest, 64, 151.
 New Orleans, 270.
 New Plymouth, 191.
 Nicosa, Council of, 13.
 Nile, Battle of the, 264.
 Nonconformists, 171.
 Norfolk, Duke of, 176.
 Northam Castle, 100.
 Normans, The (Northmen), 82.
 North, Lord, 269.
 Northampton, 70.
 Northumbria, Kingdom of, 22, 37.
 Nottingham, Earl of, 115.
 Nottingham, 94.

 Oates, Titus, 219.
 O'Connell, Daniel, 273.
 O'Connor, Fergus, 278.
 Oña, 22.

- Olav, 45.
 Olav, Triggvason, 44.
 Oldcastle, Sir John, Lord Cobham, 126.
 O'Neal, Shan, Earl of Desmond, 180.
 O'Neal, Hugh, Earl of Tyrone, 147, 180.
 O'Neill, Sir Philem, 197.
 Opdam, Admiral, 215.
 Ordainers, 104.
 Orleans, Duke of, 126.
 Orleans, Siege of, 130.
 Ormond, Marquis of, 205.
 Orosius, 88.
 Orthez, Battle of, 268.
 Osborne, Sir Thomas, Earl of Danby, 218.
 Osburga, 34.
 Ostrogoths, 21.
 Oslph, 40.
 Otho, 15.
 Otterbourne, 114.
 Overbury, Sir Thomas, 180.
 Oxford Statutes, 93.

 Paris, Peace of, 260.
 Pandolf, 87.
 Parker, Archbishop of Canterbury, 171.
 Parliament, Institution of, 92.
 Parliament, Mad, 93.
 Parliament, Long, 196.
 Parliament, Rump, 204.
 Parliament, Barebones, 208.
 Parliament, The Convention, 212.
 Parliaments, Union of Scottish and English, 240.
 Parliaments, Union of Great Britain and Ireland, 264.
 Parliaments, Septennial, 248.
 Parma, Duke of, 179.
 Farr, Catharine, 161.
 Pascal II., Pope, 66.
 Passaro, Cape, 249.
 Pavia, Battle of, 156.
 Pecquigne, Treaty of, 142.
 Pedro the Cruel, 111.
 Peel, Sir Robert, 273.
 Pembroke, Earl of, 91.
 Penrith, 253.
 Percy, Henry Hotspur, 124.
 Percy, Earl of Northumberland, 124.
 Percy, Earl of Worcester, 124.
 Petellius Cerialis, 15.
 Peter, Bishop of Winchester, 91.
 Peter's Pence, 33.
 Petronius Turpilianus, 14.
 Pevensey, 52.
 Peterhead, 248.
 Philip Augustus of France, 82, 85.
 Philip VI. of Valois, 108.
 Philip the Fair of France, 151.
 Philip II. of Spain, 167.
 Philip V. of Spain, 241, 248.
 Philippa, Queen, 106, 110.

 Philippine Islands, 257.
 Phoenicians, 9.
 Picts, 16, 20.
 Picts' Wall, 16.
 Pilgrim Fathers, 191.
 Pilgrimage of Grace, 159.
 Pinkie, Battle of, 164.
 Pitt, William, Earl of Chatham, 250, 254.
 Pitt, William, 261.
 Plague, Great, 215.
 Plantagenet, 72.
 Plassey, Battle of, 255.
 Plautius, 13.
 Poitiers, Battle of, 111.
 Pole, Michael de la, 114.
 Pole, Cardinal, 168.
 Pontefract Castle, 116.
 Poor Law Amendment, 276.
 Porteous, Captain, 251.
 Portsmouth, Battle of, 162.
 Poyer, Colonel, 203.
 Pragmatic Sanction, 251.
 Presbyterians, 195.
 Preston, 203, 248.
 Prestonpans, Battle of, 252.
 Pretender, The Old, 248.
 Pride, Colonel, 203.
 Prynne, 196.
 Pym, John, 198.

 Quadruple Alliance, 248.
 Quebec, 254.
 Quentin, St., Battle of, 169.
 Quiberon, 254.

 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 187.
 Ravenspur, 141.
 Reform Bill, 275, 281.
 Reformation, English, 158, 161.
 Rennes, 149.
 Revolution, French, 262.
 Rheims, 131.
 Richard Strongbow, 78.
 Richard I., Cœur de Lion, 81.
 Richard II., 113.
 Richard III., Duke of Gloucester, 144.
 Richard, Earl of Pembroke, 92.
 Richard of Cornwall, 92.
 Richard, Duke of York, 144.
 Richmond, Sheen, 112.
 Ridley, Nicholas, 163.
 Right, Petition of, 193.
 Rights, Declaration of, 227.
 Ripon, 196.
 Rising Castle, 108.
 Rizzio, David, 173.
 Robert, Duke of Normandy, 61.
 Robert, Duke of Gloucester, 69.
 Robert de Vere, 114.
 Rochester (Camalodunum), 13, 14.
 Rochelle, Siege of, 193.

- Rockingham, Marquis of, 258.
 Rodrigo, Ciudad, Battle of, 263.
 Roger, Earl of March, 115.
 Rogers, John, 163.
 Romulus Augustulus, 20.
 Rothe, Admiral, 242.
 Roisin, 101.
 Ross, General, 270.
 Rudolph of Hapsburg, 95.
 Runnymede, 50.
 Rupert, Prince, 215.
 Russell, Lord, 221.
 Russell, Admiral, 226, 235.
 Ruyter, de, Admiral, 216.
 Rye House Plot, 221.
 Ryswick, Peace of, 236.
 Sackville, Lord George, 251.
 Saladin, 83.
 Salamanca, Battle of, 268.
 Salic Law, 67, 277.
 Sancroft, Archbishop, 225.
 Saracens, 81.
 Saratoga, Battle of, 260.
 Sardinia, Island of, 243.
 Sarum, 61.
 Savoy, Duke of, 210.
 Saxons, 16, 20.
 Scarborough Castle, 137.
 Schomberg, Marshal, 237.
 Scone, 206.
 Scots, 16, 20.
 Scrope, Archbishop of York, 124.
 Sebastopol, Siege of, 282.
 Security, Act of, 239.
 Sedgemoor, Battle of, 223.
 Selkirk, Battle of, 201.
 Senlac, 52.
 Sepoys, 255.
 Seven Years' War, 253.
 Seymour, Jane, 160.
 Seymour, Lord, 164.
 Sheerness, 216.
 Shelburne, Lord, 262.
 Sherifmuir, 247.
 Ship-money, 45.
 Shrewsbury, 124.
 Shrewsbury, Earl of, 226.
 Sicily, 178, 249.
 Sidonia, Medina, 178.
 Sidney, Algernon, 221.
 Sidney, Henry, 226.
 Silures, 14.
 Simmel, Lambert, 148.
 Simons, Priest, 149.
 Seward, 50.
 Sixtus V., Pope, 177.
 Slavery, Abolition of, 276.
 Sluys, 109.
 Solway, Rout of, 161.
 Sophia of Hanover, 238.
Sophia Dorothea of Zell, 246.
 Sophia of Prussia, 246.
 Soult, Marshal, 267.
 South Sea Company, 249.
 Southwold Bay, Battle at, 218.
 Spanish Succession, War of the, 233.
 Spenser, Hugh de, 105.
 Spurs, Battle of the, 154.
 Stair, Earl of, 252.
 Stamford Bridge, 52.
 Stamp Duties, 258.
 Stanhope, General, 247.
 Stanley, Sir William, 150.
 Star Chamber, 152.
 Stephen of Blois, 67, 68.
 Stigand, 50, 60.
 Stoke, Battle of, 149.
 Stonehenge, 12.
 Stratford, Stony, 143.
 Strongbow, 78.
 Stuart, Lady Arabella, 155.
 Suetonius Paulinus, 14.
 Suffolk, Duke of, 167.
 Sunderland, Earl of, 237.
 Surrey, Earl of, 154.
 Sussex, Kingdom of, 22.
 Sweyn of Denmark, 44.
 Tacitus, 11, 15.
 Talavera, Battle of, 267.
 Tangier, 214.
 Temple, Sir William, 219.
 Tenchebray, 65.
 Terouanne, Siege of, 154.
 Test Acts, 224, 273.
 Tewkesbury, Battle of, 141.
 Thanet, 27.
 Thanet, Isle of, 21.
 Theobald of Blois, 67.
 Theodoric, 21.
 Third Crusade, 80, 83.
 Thomas à Becket, 75.
 Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, 104.
 Thomas, Duke of Clarence, 125.
 Thrall, 27.
 Tilsit, Peace of, 267.
 Tobago, Island of, 257.
 Toleration Act, 233.
 Tooke, Horne, 261.
 Toronto, 270.
 Torres Vedras, 268.
 Toulon, 263.
 Toulouse, Battle of, 268.
 Tower Hill, 155.
 Townshend, Lord, 247, 253.
 Trafalgar, Battle of, 266.
 Trelawny, Bishop, 225.
 Triple Alliance, 217.
 Tromp, Van, 207.
 Trouville, Admiral, 236.
 Troyes, Treaty of, 128.
 Tudor, Jasper, Earl of Pembroke, 135.
 Turner, Bishop, 225.

- Tyler, Wat, 113.
 Tyndal, William, 162.
 Tyrconnel, Governor of Ireland, 234.
 Tyrrel, Walter, 64.
 Ulster, King of, 78.
 Uniformity, Act of, 213.
 Universities thrown open, 231.
 Ushant, 263.
 Utrecht, Peace of, 243.
 Uxbridge, 201.
 Vers, Robert de, 114.
 Verulamium (St. Alban's), 14.
 Vespasian, 14, 15.
 Victoria of Saxe-Coburg, 270.
 Victoria, Queen, 277.
 Villeneuve, Admiral, 266.
 Villiers, Duke of Buckingham, 189.
 Vincennes, 128.
 Vincent, Cape St., Battle of, 263.
 Vinegar Hill, 264.
 Vitallius, 15.
 Vittoria, Battle of, 263.
 Vortigern, 20, 21.
 Wakefield, Battle of, 135.
 Wat Tyler, 113.
 Walcheren, 267.
 Waldenses, 210.
 Walhalla, 23.
 Wallace, William, 101.
 Walpole, Sir Robert, 249.
 Walsingham, Sir Francis, 177.
 Walter, Archbishop, 83.
 Warbeck, Perkin, 150.
 Warenne, Earl of Surrey, 100.
 Warwick, Earl of, the King-Maker, 130.
 Washington, George, 259.
 Waterloo, Battle of, 269.
 Wellington, Duke of, 267.
 Wentworth, Earl of Strafford, 104.
 Wessex, Kingdom of, 22, 31.
 Westminster Abbey, 59, 63.
 Westminster, Treaty of, 207.
 White, Bishop, 225.
 Whitehall Palace, 204.
 Whirlife, John, 117.
 Wilkes, John, 257.
 William, Duke of Normandy, 51.
 William I., The Conqueror, 58, 62.
 William II., Rufus, 63.
 William III. of Orange, 232, 237.
 William IV., 274.
 William, Prince, 66.
 William the Lion, 79.
 William Longchamp, Bishop of Ely, 82.
 William, Augustus, Duke of Cumberland, 250.
 William, Duke of Gloucester, 239.
 Windsor, 88.
 Witenagemot, 27, 28.
 Winfred, 28.
 Wodan, 28.
 Wolfe, General, 254.
 Wolsay, Thomas, Cardinal, 154.
 Woodville, Richard, Earl of Rivers, 130.
 Worcester, Battle of, 207.
 Worms, Diet at, 85.
 Wriothesley, Chancellor, 163.
 Wyatt, Sir Thomas, 167.
 York, Duke of (James II.), 215.
 York, Duke of, 263.
 York Town, 260.

1

2

3

4

In Fcap. 8vo, Illustrated, cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

FOR JUNIOR CLASSES.

By L. SCHMITZ, LL.D.

In Fcap. 8vo, 192 pp., cloth, 1s.

HISTORY OF SCOTLAND

FOR JUNIOR CLASSES.

WITH MAP AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

LANDMARKS OF GENERAL HISTORY.

By REV. C. S. DAWE, B.A.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.

HISTORY OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE,

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND COLOURED MAPS.

In Fcap. 4to, cloth limp, 1s.

TABLES OF ENGLISH HISTORY,

CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL.

By THEODORE JOHNSON.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth limp, 1s.

HANDBOOK OF ENGLISH HISTORY.

By REV. CANON RIDGWAY.

LONDON AND GLASGOW:

WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF GREECE.

By L. SCHMITZ, LL.D.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF ROME.

By L. SCHMITZ, LL.D.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.

HISTORY OF GERMANY.

By SUTHERLAND MENZIES.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.

HISTORY OF FRANCE.

By SUTHERLAND MENZIES.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.

HISTORY OF INDIA.

By W. C. PEARCE.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

In Fcap. 8vo, cloth, 1s. 6d.—In the Press.

HISTORY OF AMERICA,

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAP.

LONDON AND GLASGOW:

WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 254 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.
HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

By F. A. LAING.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 250 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

READINGS

IN

ENGLISH LITERATURE—PROSE:

BEING

SELECTIONS FROM THE BEST ENGLISH AUTHORS

FROM THE 14TH TO THE 19TH CENTURIES.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 264 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

EMINENT ENGLISH WRITERS,

WITH A BRIEF ACCOUNT OF THEIR WORKS.

By WILLIAM LAWSON, ST. MARK'S COLLEGE, CHELSEA.

In Extra Fcap. 8vo, 256 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

ELOCUTION:

IN

THEORY AND PRACTICE.

By COMSTICK & MAIR.

LONDON AND GLASGOW:
WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY.

In Fcap. 8vo, 160 pp., cloth, 1s.

LESSONS

IN

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR SCHOOLS.

By A. H. DICK, D.Sc., M.A., LL.B.

In Fcap. 8vo, 192 pp., Illustrated, cloth, 1s.

OUTLINES OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

By B. SIMPSON.

In Fcap. 8vo, 192 pp., Illustrated, cloth, 1s. 6d.

OUTLINES OF NATURAL HISTORY.

By A. H. DICK, D.Sc., M.A. LL.B.

In Fcap. 8vo., Illustrated, cloth, 1s.

OUTLINES OF CHEMISTRY.

By G. CHALONER, LONDON.

In Fcap. 8vo, 150 pp., cloth, 1s.

LESSONS

IN

DOMESTIC ECONOMY FOR GIRLS.

By J. HASSELL.

LONDON AND GLASGOW:
WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY.

In Post 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

**GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE,
FOR MIDDLE AND HIGHER CLASS SCHOOLS.**

BY LEONHARD SCHMITZ, LL.D.

In Post 8vo, cloth. 2s. 6d.

**EXERCISES IN
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.**

BY LEONHARD SCHMITZ, LL.D.

In 12mo, cloth, 2s.

**LATIN RUDIMENTS,
WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES IN READING AND COMPOSITION.**

In 12mo, 232 pp., cloth, 2s.

**LATIN DELECTUS,
WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES AND COPIOUS VOCABULARY.**

In 12mo, 184 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

**CÆSAR,
WITH IMITATIVE EXERCISES, NOTES, QUESTIONS, AND VOCABULARY.**

In 12mo, cloth, 2s.

**VIRGIL,
Books I., II., III., and IV. of the Æneid,
WITH NOTES, QUESTIONS, AND VOCABULARY.**

In 12mo, cloth, 2s.

**RUDIMENTS OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE,
WITH EXERCISES AND VOCABULARY.**

LONDON AND GLASGOW:

WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS, & COMPANY.

In 18mo, sewed, 4d.

Manual of English Pronunciation, in Classified Lists.

In Fcap. 8vo, 126 pp., cloth, 1s.

The Scholar's Word Book and Spelling Guide.
By WILLIAM RICE, F.R.G.S.

In Fcap. 8vo, 64 pp., cloth limp, 6d.

Analysis of Sentences, with Illustrated Examples and Numerous Graduated Exercises.

In Fcap. 8vo, 148 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

Handbook of the Analysis of Sentences. By
W. M'LEOD, F.C.P., F.R.G.S.

In Fcap. 8vo, 72 pp., cloth limp, 8d.

Elementary Lessons on English Composition.
By JAMES LEITCH, Principal, Normal College, Glasgow.

In Post 8vo, 160 pp., cloth, 1s. 6d.

Text-Book of English Composition, with Exercises.
By THOMAS MORRISON, A.M., Rector, Free Normal College, Glasgow.

In Post 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

Practical Grammar of the English Language, with Analysis and Parsing, for Advanced Classes. By
Rev. C. H. DASENT, High Cross College, Tottenham, London.

LONDON AND GLASGOW:
WILLIAM COLLINS, SONS. & COMPANY.

London, Edinburgh, and Herriot Hill Works, Glasgow.

SCHOOL AND COLLEGE CLASSICS.

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES, Fcap. 8vo.

		s.	d.
Shakespeare,	RICHARD II., sewed 9d; cloth,	1	0
"	RICHARD III., sewed 9d; cloth,	1	0
"	MERCHANT OF VENICE, sewed 9d; cloth,	1	0
"	KING LEAR, sewed 9d; cloth,	1	0
"	HENRY VIII., sewed 9d; cloth,	1	0
Milton, . . .	PARADISE LOST, Bks. I. and II., &c., sewed 9d; cl.,	1	0
Spenser, . . .	FÆBRY QUEEN, Bk. I., Cantos I. to V. sewed 9d; cl.,	1	0
Thomson, . . .	SEASONS—Summer, and CASTLE OF INDOLENCE,	1	0
Scott,	LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL, sewed 9d; cloth,	1	0

SCHOOL CLASSICS, with Introduction and Notes.

Coleridge, . .	ANCIENT MARINER, &c.,	0	2
Wordsworth,	LYRICAL BALLADS,	0	2
"	EXCURSION, Book I.,	0	2
Milton, . . .	PARADISE LOST,	0	2
"	COMUS,	0	3
Campbell, . .	PLEASURES OF HOPE,	0	2
Pope,	ESSAY ON MAN,	0	3
"	ESSAY ON CRITICISM,	0	2
Goldsmith, . .	THE TRAVELLER AND THE DESERTED VILLAGE,	0	2
Cowper, . . .	TASK, Books I. and II.,	0	2
Gray,	ODES AND ELEGY,	0	2
Scott,	LADY OF THE LAKE, Cantos I. and II.,	0	2
"	LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL, Cantos I. and II.,	0	2
Thomson, . . .	THE SEASONS—WINTER,	0	2
Hemans, . . .	SONGS OF THE AFFECTIONS,	0	2

GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION.

NEW ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR.	48 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth,	0	4
PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE, including	Analysis of Sentences, &c. 144 pp., 18mo, cloth,	0	9
YOUNG SCHOLAR'S SPELLING AND WORD BOOK.	By Wm. Rice. 128 pp., Fcap. 8vo, cloth limp, 9d; cloth,	1	0
TEXT-BOOK OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION, with Exercises.	By THOMAS MORRISON, A.M. 160 pp., Post 8vo, cloth,	1	6
ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.	By WALTER M'LEOD, F.C.P., F.R.G.S., Chelsea. Post 8vo, cloth,	1	6

GEOGRAPHY.

MY FIRST GEOGRAPHY,	64 pp., 18mo, cloth,	0	4
OUTLINES OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY,	4 Maps, 12mo, cloth,	1	0
COUNTY GEOGRAPHIES OF ENGLAND AND WALES, each	0	2
COUNTY GEOGRAPHIES OF SCOTLAND, each	0	2
GEOGRAPHY for Standards IV., V., and VI., New Code.			
PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY for Stands. IV., V., and VI., New Code, ea.		0	2
OUTLINES OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY,	12mo, cloth,	1	0

COLLINS' SERIES OF SCHOOL ATLASES,

Carefully Constructed and Engraved from the best and latest Authorities, and Beautifully Printed in Colours, on Superfine Cream Wove Paper.

MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Crown Series.

	s. d.
THE PRIMARY ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, 4to, Stiff Wrapper, - - - - -	0 6
THE JUNIOR, OR YOUNG CHILD'S ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, 4to, with 16 pp. of Questions on the Maps, in Neat Wrapper, - - - - -	1 0
THE STANDARD SCHOOL ATLAS, consisting of 24 Maps, Crown 4to, in Neat Wrapper, - - - - -	1 0
THE PROGRESSIVE ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, 9 inches by 7½ inches, 4to, cloth lettered, - - - - -	2 0
THE NATIONAL ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, 4to, with a Copious Index, cloth lettered, - - - - -	2 6

MODERN GEOGRAPHY—Imperial Series.

THE SELECTED ATLAS, consisting of 16 Maps, Imperial 4to, 13 by 11 inches, Stiff Cover, - - - - -	1 6
THE ADVANCED ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, cloth lettered, - - - - -	3 6
THE ACADEMIC ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, Imperial 4to, with a Copious Index, cloth lettered, - - - - -	5 0
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS, consisting of 32 Maps, and 6 Ancient Maps, with a Copious Index, Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, - - - - -	6 0
THE COLLEGIATE ATLAS, consisting of 32 Modern, 16 Historical, and 2 Ancient Maps, mounted on Guards, with a Copious Index, Imperial 8vo, cloth lettered, - - - - -	7 6

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY—Imperial Series.

THE JUNIOR ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 10 Maps, 13 by 11 inches, Stiff Cover, - - - - -	1 0
THE PORTABLE ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20 Maps, on Guards, Imperial 8vo, cloth, - - - - -	3 6
THE STUDENT'S ATLAS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 20 Maps, with Descriptive Letterpress, by JAMES BRYCE, LL.D., Imp. 8vo, - - - - -	5 0

HISTORICAL AND CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

POCKET ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, Imp. 16mo, - - - - -	1 6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHY, 16 Maps, with Letterpress, by WM. F. COLLIER, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth, - - - - -	2 6
POCKET ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, Imp. 16mo, cl., - - - - -	1 6
THE CROWN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY, 15 Maps, with Letterpress, by LEON. SCHMITZ, LL.D., Imperial 16mo, cloth, - - - - -	2 6

SCRIPTURE

THE ATLAS OF SCRIPTURE GEOG	
on each Map, Stiff Cover, -	

London, Edinburgh, and

